



Charles the Grete.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. XXXVII.

1881.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 53 MOHRENSTRASSE.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

~~P~~
~~H~~
~~E~~
Early English Text
Society
THE
No. 36227

ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

PART III.

The Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prince,

Charles the Grete,

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH BY WILLIAM CAXTON
AND PRINTED BY HIM 1485.

EDITED NOW FOR THE FIRST TIME, FROM THE UNIQUE COPY
IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM,

with Introduction, Notes, and Glossary,

BY

SIDNEY J. H. HERRTAGE, B.A.,

EDITOR OF "GESTA ROMANORUM," "SIR FERUMBRA'S," ETC.

38074
7/1/996

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXXI.

PR.

WIE

EE

NO 2 - 27

Extra Series,

XXXVII.

BUNYAN, CLAY AND TAYLOR, THE CHAUCER PRESS.

INTRODUCTION.

THE present volume, completing Part III. of the English Charlemagne Romance series, requires but little introduction. I have already referred to it in my edition of *Sir Ferumbras*, Introd. pp. viii, ix. It contains the whole life of Charlemagne, with a brief sketch of the early kings of France, and includes all the incidents narrated in *Sir Ferumbras*, *The Sowdone of Babyligne*, *Roland and Veruagu*, and the *Song of Roland*.

Caxton's "Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce, Charles the Grete" survives only in the unique copy preserved in the British Museum (Press Mark c. 10, b. 2). It is a folio volume, containing 96 leaves, the signatures running from A ij to M viij, and is perfect, but without title-page. The colophon tells us that the "werke was fynysshed in the reducyng of hit in to Englysshe the xvij day of Juyn, the second yere of kyng Rychard the thyrde, and the yere of our lord MCCCLXXXV, and enprynted the fyrist day of decembre the same of our lord, & the fyrist yere of kyng Harry the seventh."

The type is that classed by Mr. Blades as 4*. The pages have two columns, each containing 39 lines, and each line measuring $2\frac{1}{8}$ inches. There are neither folios nor catchwords. The initial wood-cut letters are 3 lines deep.

In 1743 the volume was sold by R. Harley to Osborne the bookseller, the price not mentioned. In 1773 it became the property of J. Ratcliffe at a cost of £13, and in 1776 it was sold by him to George III for £4. 4. 0.

As Caxton himself tells us, the work here reprinted is a translation of the French prose romance of Fierabras, itself a compilation

partly from the *Speculum Historiale* of Vincent de Beauvais, and partly from the old French romance of Fierabras. The exploits of Charlemagne were related in numerous histories and romances, both in French and Latin, in prose and in verse, as early as the 12th and 13th centuries. From the envoy of the anonymous author of the original French version we learn how Henry Belomyer, a canon of Lausanne, induced him to gather together into one connected narrative these disjointed fragments. A comparison of his work with that of Vincent of Beauvais shows clearly that his researches were by no means confined to the *Speculum Historiale*. I have already given a short account of the original French work.¹ One version in the Grenville Library, 10531, is doubly unique, being not only the only copy of that particular version known to be in existence, but also the only production of the press of Symon du Jardin, at Geneva, which has come down to us. Brunet had heard of it, but doubted its existence (*Suppl.* II. p. 231). It is undated and without signatures, pagination, or illustrations.

A second version of the original French is also preserved in the same library, No. 10532. It also is a folio volume of 65 leaves, signatures running from A j to L v. On L v b is a woodcut similar to that at the end of the copy already described. This also is unique, and has the following colophon: "Cy finist Fierabras imprime a Lyon lan de grace mil qualtre cens quatre vingt et seize. Le xx iour de nouembre." There are numerous woodcuts throughout the work, evidently copied from the same source as those in the Royal *Fierabras* described below, but much coarser and plainer. They are also frequently reversed, and, as in the royal copy, the same woodcut is at times made to serve for two or more incidents of a similar character.

In the library of the late Mr. Huth is a version, undated, in folio, black letter, with woodcuts, and the colophon: "Cy finist Fierabras. Imprime a Lyon par maistre Guillaume le roy. Le cinequiesme Jour du moys de Juillet. Deo gracias." It contains 108 leaves, and is the copy described by Brunet. It appears to have belonged originally

¹ Introd. to *Sir Fierabras*, pp. vi, vii.

to the library of the Academy at Lyons. In the same library is a version in German containing 53 leaves, of which another copy is in the British Museum.¹

The copy of the French *Fierabras* which I have used for comparison with the English translation, is that preserved in the Royal Library (Press mark, C. 6, b. 12). It is a folio volume of 115 leaves, without title-page. Woodcuts are freely introduced. On the back of sign. A i. is a large one representing Fierabras on horseback, and another on O 5 representing Charlemagne on his throne, and surrounded by his douzeperes. The preface begins on A ij, the index on A ij b, and the text on A vj. The colophon runs: "Cy finist Fierabras. Imprime a genesue Par maistre Loys Garbin bourgeois de la dicte cite. Lan mil cccc. lxxij. et Le xijij iour de moys de Mais. Deo gracias. Amen." The woodcuts are in many cases most comical: perhaps the most ludicrous are those which are intended to represent Floripas killing Britamont, and Richard swimming the torrent of Flagot. In one in which the sacred relics are shown, only three nails appear, and in two others the Saracens are represented as bombarding the tower of Aigremont with cannons.

In a few instances the same cut is employed to represent two incidents of a similar character. Thus that representing Oliver before Balan is also used for Guy before the Sultan.

In his translation, Caxton has followed his original so closely and even slavishly, that at times it is difficult, if not impossible, to understand his meaning without a reference to the language of the original. Frequently he has used the very words of the French author, and still more frequently he has merely given them an English dress. Caxton probably is responsible for the introduction of more French words into our language than any other writer.

In his epilogue Caxton tells us that he undertook the rendering into English of this Lyf of Charles the Grete at the instigation of "a good and synguler frend, Maister wylliam daubeny, one of the tresirers of the Iewellys of the noble and moost crysten kyng, our naturel and souerayn lord late of noble memorye kyng Edward the fourth." I have endeavoured to identify this Sir William Daubeny,

¹ See *Sir Ferumbras*, Introd. p. vii.

and to ascertain the nature of the duties pertaining to his office as keeper of the jewels. As to the latter—

The copy of the *Liber Niger Domus Regis Anglie*, believed to be that of Edward IV. in the Harleian MS 642, has the following section on leaf 49, &c. on the Keeper of the Jewels, his clerk, yoman, groom, chariot, &c.

Office of Jewelhouse

hath an Architector callid Clarke of the Kinges or keeper of Joyalx, or Theasaurer of the Chambre: this officer taketh bui Indenture betwixt him and the Kinge, all that he findes in his office of gold, siluer, pretious stones, and the markes of euery thinge. Alsoe he receaueth the yearely guiftes by Record of the Chamberlaine. Item he receaueth by Indenture of the Thesaurer of England, And by ouersight of the Chamberlaine sitting in the Kingis Chambre or in the hall with a person of like seruice, And for his Chambre at night dimidium cheate loafe, one quart wyne, one gallon of ale; And for winter Liuerey, one perche de wax, one candle wax, two candels paris, one dimidium tallwood, and present in Court vij^{d.} ob. [leaf 49 back]. In Checkerolle and cloathing with howsold for winter and sommer, or of the Countinghouse xl^{s.}: his Liuerey is as Knightes, and if he be sike, he taketh in eating daies like the Squires for the bodie when they bin lett blood or sike, &c. Also in this offise is a clarke vnder him in the hall eatinge, taking for his liuerey at night, dimidium gallon ale, one candle paris, dimidium tallwood, shide and cloathing by the Countinghouse, or yerely twentic shillinges. And if he be sike, he taketh for all day one loafe of bread, one messe of gret meate, dimidium gallon ale. And for this office a yoman eating in the hall with yomen of Chambre, taking for his wages in the Countinghouse, if he be present, allowed by the Checkerolle, threepence; And cloathing with the housold winter and summer for chances and all other part, or eighteene shillinges, besides his reward of the Jewelhouse for sure and diligent keeping of the Kinges Joalxe yerely &c. And if he be sike, he taketh such Liuerey as doth the Clerke. Also in this office a groome eating dayly in the office, taking for his liuerey one loafe, one messe of grete meate, dimidium gallon ale: And he setteth in the Liueries [leaf 50]. For this office in season, one candle wax, two candles paris, one tallwood dimidium, And Rushes and litter for this office all the yeare of the Sergeant Vsher of hall and Chambre. Also this groome fettyngh nightly for this office one gallon of ale: he helpeth to trusse and beare to the Charriott, and awaiteth theryon the safeguard; and the yoman also to attend vpon this carriage. And this office hath also lodeinge in the Countrie towne for all these horses and seruantes

suffisauntly by the herbergier. And the chiefe of this office to haue into this Court two waiters, and the Clerke one honest servant. The remenant goo to theire lodgeing in the Countrey. And the yoman and groome haue one servant. And for this office is assigned a Charriott with seauen horses and all there apparell, horse-meate, shooeing, and the yomen and groomis wagis therfore, foundyn of the charge of Thesaurer of housold to carrie the stuff of the Kinges in this office, and none other mans, by the ouersight of the Controller, betwixt the Thesaurer of housold, and this officer, be many interchaunges of siluer vessell, hoole and brooke, receaneed or deliuereed by officers by Indentures &c. As it will appeare in [leaf 50, back] The Aecompt of housold. And as for oþir thinges touching this office, behold in the title *De Oblationibus Regis* capitulid before. all thinges of this office inward or outward, cometh and goeth by the knowledge of the Kinge, and by the Chamberlaines Record. Also if any Knight or Squire presume to weare the Kinges livery, but if he come ther by authoritie, or ellys by record in this office./

Thanks to the kindness of Mr. Selby of H.M. Record Office and Mr. Furnivall, I have been enabled to identify Sir W. Daubeny, and to give some interesting particulars relating to him. We first meet with his name in 1480-1, when he was appointed Searcher in the Port of London.² The substance of the Patent Roll is as follows :

¹ Vide de hoc antea : folio, 15. b. [On Gifts by the King in charity, &c.]

² The following note is derived from a bundle of Searchers' Accounts for the period :—

[*Ancient Miscellanea.* (Exch. Q. R.) Searchers' Accounts. Bundle 692. J. P. R. 2110.]

1—6 } London.—Aeeount by John Lyn who was appointed by
Hen. VII } letters patent dated 22 Sept. 1 Hen. VII. Searcher in the
port of London, to wit, from 22 Sept. / to Mich. 6 Hen.
VII., William Dawbeny late Searcher. / membrane.

This Account extending over five years and 8 days gives the sum received as *nil*.

This record states the duties to be—"ad explorandum per se in propria persona sua, et non per substitutum, omnes naves et batellas extra regnum Anglie transeuntes, et ad idem regnum venientes in portibus et locis predictis [*i. e.* in portu Civitatis Londonie], et ad scrutinium faciendum de omnibus navibus et batellis hujusmodi, et de personis de quibus sinistra suspicio haberi poterit, quod lane, pelle, lanute, coria, panni, aut mercimonia custumabilia non cokettata nec custamata in eisdem navibus, aut aurum vel argentum in pecunia numerata, aut masa vel plata seu focalia careata seu posita fuerunt; vel si aliique persone bullas litteras instrumenta vel processus vel aliqua alia Regi vel suditis Regis prejudicialia infra vel extra regnum Regis predictum, detuleri contra proclamaciones et inhibuciones ex parte Regis inde factas, Habendum et occupandum officium predictum quamdiu Regi plauerit, una cum medietate forisfaucte prediete."

9 Novr, 20 Edw. IV, 1480. Memb. 21. Appointment of Wm. Daubeny as Searcher in the Port of London & other places adjoining the same, with the usual fees & emoluments, & also the half of all forfeit, was seized to the King's use. His substitute or substitutes may act for him.

About the same time in a "Roll of Accounts, Michaelmas, 20 Edw. IV," there is an entry that John Barker of London, Goldsmith, had received 100*l* from *William Daubeny* in part payment of 80 butts of malmsey purchased by him for the use of the King's army.¹

In 1483-4 he was re-appointed to the office of Searcher of the Port to Richard III. In the Patent Roll his previous appointment to the same office under Edward V. is referred to, and he is further described as Clerk of the Jewels. In the Calr. of the Patent Rolls, Ric. III. Appx. to 9th Report of Deputy Keeper of Records, p. 34, the following particulars relating to Sir W. Daubeny are given :

1 Ric. III., p. 2, 1483-4. Membrane 20 (4) 16 Dec. Appointment of *William Daubeny*, clerk of the jewels, as searcher in the port of London, with a grant of half of all the forfeitures, in as full a manner as William Merston, esq. enjoyed the same : which office the said *William Daubeny* fills by virtue of a patent of Edward V. the bastard [entry 39], *ib.* p. 39, Membrane 7 (19).

11 Mar. Release to *William Daubeny* (or Dabney), searcher in the port of London, of all arrears of accounts, &c. to 6 March last [entry 133].

ib. p. 42, Membrane 2 (24).

8 April. Appointment of John Wode, knt, Treasurer of England, Robert Brakenbury, Constable of the Tower of London, Master William Lacy, Master *William Daubeny*, and Master *Robert Rydon*, as Commissaries General in the office of the Admiralty in England. . . .

ib. p. 67, Memb. 17 (9). 1 Ric. III., p. 4, 1483-4.

24 April. Grant to William Dawbeny, clerk of the jewels to Edward IV., of an annuity of 10*l*. out of a farm in Watford (Northampton), (2) by the hands of Eustace of Burneby and Matill his wife, to hold the same until the gift, for life, of an office of 20*l*. yearly value ; further grant in survivorship to the

¹ Exchequer Issue Roll, Hen. III. to Edw. VI. ed. F. Devon, Appendix, p. 500

said *William Daubene* and Joan his wife of an annuity of 20 marks, the former patents of 22 June, 21 Edw. IV. (p. 2, m. 12), and 1 May,¹ 21 Edw. IV. (p. 1, m. 6), granting to them the said annuities, having been surrendered.

An order under the Privy Seal of Henry VII. in 1485 to the Treasurer and Chamberlaine of his Exchequer orders them to allow to his "beloved cousin John, arl of Oxenford," the sums of 100 marks and 100£ out of his purchase-money of 800 marks for the manors of the late Wm. Alyngton during his son's minority, and the marriage of this son: This, because the Earl had paid 100 marks to Rich. Gardynere, alderman of London, "for so moche money by the said Richard Gardynere late lent unto Richard, due of Gloucester, late, in dede and not of righte, kind of England, upon plege of a salt of gold with a cover. . . . the which salt . . . was delivered unto the said Richard Gardynere by one, *William Daubene*, knight, keeper of the juelx with the foresaid pretensed king . . . and also the summe of c. ti. parcell of xxiiij^o. ti by the said late pretensed king borowed of the maire and aldermen of our sayl citie of London . . . and for suertie and contentaciom of the said xxiiij^o. ti. the said late pretensed king laide in plege to the said maire and aldermen a coronalle gold garnished with many other grete and riche juelx, as by a bille endented betwix the said maire and aldremen, on that one partie, and the foresaid William Daubene, then keper of juelx of the said pretenused king on that oþre partie therof made, more plainly doth appere.²

In Sept. 1484 we find the following orders: "Parcilles of clothing [&c.] to be delivered by the said bishop to the said erle [of Desmonde]. . . . Item, a nother lettre direct to Mr. *William Daubene*, clerk of the kinges juelles, to delivere unto the said bisshop for the said erle of Dissemont, a color of gold of xxii^o. oz., xxxii^o ti.—Letters and Papers t. Rich. III. & Hen. VI, ed. Gairdner, Rolls Series, 1861, p. 713.

There is no William Daubeny's will of Caxton's time at the Probate Office, but the following items culled from various sources appear to refer to Caxton's friend, and his family:

Dame Joan Dawbeny, wife of Sir Wm. Dawbeny, was buried at the Augustine Friers Church, Broadstreet Ward, London, [no date given].³ John, son and heir of Sir Giles Dawbeny, is buried in the same church.

¹ 1 March: in the patent roll of 21 Edw. IV.

² *Memorials Illustrative of the Reign of Henry VII*, p. 214. (Rolls Series.)

³ Stowe's *Survey of London*, 1633, p. 186, col. 2.

Sir Wm. Stanley, William Dawbene late of London, gentleman, & others were attainted of treason for rebelling against Henry VII. Act of Attainder in the *Rolls of Parliament*, vol. 6, p. 503.

Mr. Walter Rye says that this may be the same man as Sir William, because, in an official document like the above, the title of Knight conferred by the usurper, Rich. III, would probably not be acknowledged. (But compare the order under the Privy Seal in 1485, on the preceding page.)

Mr. Rye also thinks our Wm. D. was connected with the Norfolk Dawbeneys. In Blomfield's *Norfolk*, Wm. Dawbene, of North Burlingham, after 1428 bought a property which his grandson Thomas sold in 1528.

The Series of English Charlemagne Romances will be completed by the issue next year of the romances of *Roland and Vernagu* and *Sir Otuel*, from the Anchinleck MS., and the curious poem of *Rauf Coilzcar* from the unique printed copy.

SIDNEY J. HERRTAGE.

Mill Hill, N.W., October 1881.

The Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce,
Charles the Grete.

[CAXTON'S INTRODUCTION.]

¹ Aynt Poule, doctour of veryte, sayth to vs that al
Sthynges that ben reduced by wrytyng ben wryton
 to our doctryne, And Boece maketh mencion that the
 4 helthe of euery persone procedeth dyueredly. Thenne
 sythe it is soo that the cristen feyth is affermed and
 corrobored by the doctours of holy chyrche, Neuertheles
 the thynges passed dynersley reduced to remembraunce
 8 engendre in vs correction of vnlauful lyf. For the
 werkes of the auncient and olde peple ben for to gyne
 to vs ensaumple to lyue in good & vertuous operacions
 digne & worthy of helth, in folowyng the good and
 12 eschewyng the euyl. And also in recountyng of hye
 hystoryes the comune vnderstanding is better content
 to the ymagnacion local than to symple auctoryte to
 which it is submysed. I saye this gladly, For oftymes
 16 I haue been excyted of the venerable man messire henry
 bolomyer, chanonne of lausazine, for to reduce for his
 playsyr somme hystoryes as wel in latyn & in romauzee
 as in other facion wryton, that is to say of the ryght
 20 puyssaunt, vertuous, and noble charles the grete, kyng
 of fraunce and emperor of Rome, Some of the grete
 Pepyn: And of his prynces & barons, As Rolland,
 Olyuer, and other, touchyng² somme werkes haultayne
 24 doon & commysed by their grete strength & ryght
 ardaunt courage, to the exaltacyon of the cristen fayth

Since, as St Paul says, "all scriptures are written for our learning,"

and the lives of
the ancients give
us an example
how to live,

I have, at the per-
suasion of the
venerable Canon
Henry Bolomyer,

translated this
history of
Charlemaine and
his douzeperes

¹ sign. A ij.

² col. 2.

and to the confusyon of the hethen sarazyns and myseraunts, whiche is a werk wel contemplatyf for to lyue wel. And bycause the sayd henry Bolomyer hath seen of thys mater and the hystoryes dysioyne^d wythoute 4 ordre, therfore at his request, after the capacyte of my lytel entendement, And after thy storyes and mater that I haue founden, I haue ordeyned this book folowyng.

to the best of my ability, chiefly
from the *Speculum Historiale*.

And it myght soo haue ben that yf I had ben more 8 largely enformed and al playn I had better made it, For I haue not sayd ony matere, but I haue therof ben enformed, Fyrst by an autentyke book named myrrour hystoryal, as by the canones and somme other booke^s 12 whiche make meneyon of the werke folowyng. And by cause I may haue a lytel parte of honomable founde-^mment I shal touche of the first cristen kyng of fraunce. For the moste parte of this book is made to thonour of 16 the frenssh men and for prouffyte of euery man, and after the desyre of the redar and herer there shalle be founden in the table all playne the mater of whyche the persone shal haue desyre to here or rede wythoute 20 grete ate[n]dacyon, by ¹the playsyr of god, to whome I submytte al myn entente to write no thyng^t that ought to be blamed ne but that it be to the helthe & sauacion of euery persone. 24

As I have before
printed the Lives
of Arthur, and of

Godfrey of
Boulogne,

I now print this
that all may be
able to read it in
our mother-
tongue.

Henne for as moche I late had fynysshed in en-
Prynte the book of the noble & vctoryous kyng^t Arthur, fyrst of the thre moost noble & worthy of crysten kynges, and also tofore had reduced into englishe the 28 noble hystorye & lyf of Godefroy of boloyn kyng^t of Hierusalem, last of the said iij worthy, Somme personnes of noble estate and degree haue desyred me to reduce thy storye and lyf of the noble and crysten prynce 32 Charles the grete, kyng of fraunce² & emperour of Rome, the second of the thre worthy, to thende that thy storyes, actes, & lynes may be had in our maternal tongue, lyke as they be in latyn or in frensshe. For the moost

¹ A ij. back.

² Ed, fraunce.

quantyte of the people vnderstonde not latyn ne frensshe
here in this noble royme of englond. And for to
satysfye the desyre & requeste of my good synguler
4 lordes & specyal maysters and frendes I haue emprysed
and concluded in my self to reduce this sayd book in to
our englysshe, as all alonge and playnely ye may rede,
here, and see in thy book ¹ here folowyng, besechyng And I ask all my
8 al them that shal fynde faute in the same to correcete and
amende it, And also to pardon me of the rude & symple
reducyng, and though so be there be no gaye termes,
ne subtyl ne newe eloquence, yet I hope that it shal be
12 vnderstonden, & to that entente I haue spechyally
which I have done
reduced it after the symple connynge that god hath lente
after my simple
learning,
to me, wherof I humbly & wyth al my herte thanke
hym, & also am bounden to praye for my fader and
16 moders soules that in my youthe sette me to scole, by
whyche, by the suffraunce of god, I gete my lyuyng^d I
hope truly. And that I may so do & contynue I byseche
hym to graunte me of his gracie, and so to laboure and
20 occupye my self vertuously that I may come out of dette
& dedely synne, that after this lyf I may come to hys
blysse in heuen. AMEN.

for which I bless
my f ther and
mother, who sent
me to school.

24 ¶ ²Here begynnen the chapytres & tytles of this The contents of
book folowyng^t nombred for to fynde the more lyghtly
this book.
the mater therin comprised.

¶ Here begynneth the first book whyche conteyneth of book I.
28 thre partyes by the chapytres folowyng declared.

¶ The fyrist partye of the fyrist book conteyneth v pt I contains v
chapytres & speketh of the begynnyng^t of fraunce and chapters.
of kyng Cloys.

32 Of the kynges of fraunce paynyme vnto kyng cloys of the first kings
the first crysten kyng^t: capitulo primo of France.

How kyng cloys beyng a paynym had to wyf of King Cloys,
clotildis daughter of the kyng of bourgoyne & meruayl-
lously : capitulo ij

4 THE CONTENTS OF THE FIRST BOOK. PT. I, CH. II—PT III, CH. I.

Of the conversion of Cloys by his wife,	How the kyng was admonested of the quene clotildis affectionously that he shold byleue in the cristen fayth & other maters : ea.	ijj
and of his baptism.	How kyng Clois was vyctorious on his enemyes by- cause he byleued in Ihesu Cryst : ea.	ijj
Pt II contains v chapters.	How the kyng was baptysed by saynt remyge, & in his baptesme was brought by myracle the holy ampulle by an aungel fro henen wyth whyche all kynges of 8 fraunce ben enoynted at Raynes : capitulo.	v.
Of King Pepin.	¶ The second partye of the book conteyneth v chapytres & speketh fyrt of kyng pepyn & of Charle- mayn hys sone.	12
How Charles was made Emperor of Rome.	How Pepyn by hys prudence ¹ was chosen kyng of frau[n]ee whan the lygne of Cloys fayllede in sucession : capitulo	primo
Of his figure, children, and pursuets.	Of kyng Charles whyche made many constytucyons wylle the pope Adryan and how he was made emperour of Rome : ea.	16 ijj
Pt III contains m chapters.	Of the corpulence of kyng charles and of the manere of his lyuyng : capitulo	ijj 20
How Charles helped the Patriarch of Jerusalem,	To whome the kyngt Charles & his chyldren sones & doughters were dedyed : capitulo	ijj
and brought home the holy reliques.	Of the studye of kyng Charles, & hys lyuyng and charytable werkes, and other maters : ea.	v 24
	¶ The thyrd partye of the fyrt book conteyneth ijj chapytres, & telleth how by denyne renelacyon Charles delyuered the holy londe from the hondes of the hethen and myscreauntes, and conteyneth thre chapytres.	28
	How the patryareke of Iherusalem sente to charles that he shold gyne to hym socours after that he was easte oute by the turkes : capitulo	primo
	How Charles with a grete companye went for to 32 conquere the holy londe & other maters : ea.	ij
	Of the reliques whyche thempерour Charles brought fro constantynoble & fro the holy londe, & of myracles there doon : [ea.]	ijj

¹ col. 2.

¶ Here begynneth the ij book whyche conteyneth thre partyes by chapytres ensyewyng declared.	Book II containing iii parts.
¶ The first partie of the second ¹ book conteyneth 4 xvij chapytres and speketh of the bataylle bytwene Olyuer and Fyerabras, a mernayllous gyaunt.	Pt I contains xvij chapters,
¶ How in a place named Mormyonde Charles ensyewed his warre ayenst the paynmys, after a lytel of 8 the prologue : ea.	primo
Of fyerabras how he came to exercyte charles : capitulo	of Fierbras [Ferumbra]. ij
How Rychard of Normondye sayd to themperour 12 what maner man was Fyerabras : capitulo	ijj
The answer of Rolland to themperour ouer soleynly : ca.	dispute between iiiij
How kyng charles & Rolland ben repreysed by 16 thanetour & excused somwhat vpon the debate afor- sayd : capitulo	charles and Ro- land. v
How Olyuer was dysposed to fight ayenst fyerabras notwythstondyngt that he was hurt : [ca.]	How Oliver, against the wish of his father, undertook to fight with Fierbras. vj
20 How Olyuer was requyred by hys fader that he shold not fyȝt with the geaunt, but for al that he went forth : capitulo	vij
How Olyuer spake fyrist to fyerabras, whych set no 24 thyng by hym, with other desputacions.	vijj
How after many dysputacions olyuer ayded fyerabras to arme hym, and of the ix meruayllus swerde, & how Olyuer named hym self by his propre name : [ca.]	ix
28 How Olyuer & fyerabras began to fyght, and of the prayer of Charles for Olyuer, and other maters : capitulo x	of the fight, x
How Olyuer made hys prayer ² to god whan he felte hym hurte : Capitulo	xij
32 How after a grete bataylle Olyuer gate the bame & dranke at his ease, & how he dyd whan his hors was slayn : capitulo	and of the bottles of holy balm. xij
How fyerabras & olyuer fouȝt togyder on fote mer-	

¹ A iij. bk.² col. 2.

6 THE CONTENTS OF THE SECOND BOOK. PT I, C. XIII.—PT II, C. VII.

uaylously, & the prayer that charles maad for Olyuer : capitulo	xij
How Oliver overcame Fierabras,	
How at this bataylle fyerabras was vaynquysshed by Olyuer after that he had recouerd one of the swerdes of Fyerabras. [ea.]	4 xijij
How Fyerabras beyng vaynquysshed byleued in god, and how he was borne by Olyuer, & how Olyuer was assayled of the sarasyns & tormented : ea.	xv 8
How Olyuer was taken & hys eyen blynfeld pyetously, which coude not be socoured by the frensshe men : capitulo	xvj
¶ The second partye of the ij book conteyneth chapytres, & speketh of the torment of the barons of fraunce & how they that were not taken went for to speke to ballant thadmyral.	xvij 12
¶ How fyerabras was founde by Charles and after baptysed & heled of his woundes : ea.	j
How Olyuer and hys felowes were presented to ballant thadmyral and cruelly passyoned by pryon : capitulo ij	
Of the pryon where the frensshe men were lodged and how they were vysyted by fayr Florypes, ¹ doughter of thadmyral, & of the beaulte of hyr : capitulo ²	20 iij
How the frensshe men were had oute of pryon and vysyted by the fayr floripes, & of the beaute of hyr chambre : capitulo	24 iij
How kyng charles sent to ballant thadmyral viij peres of fraunce, whye he wold not gladly haue goon thyder : capitulo	v 28
How thadmyral sent xv kynges sarasyns to charles to haue ageyn Fyerabras, the whyche were recounted by the peres of fraunce & put to deth : ea.	vj
Of the mernayllous brydge of mantryble, of the tribute that must be there payed for the passage, & how with fayr wordes the frensshe men passed ouer. [ea.]	32 viij
How the barons cam & spake to thadmyral, and what message they made to hym : capitulo	vij
but was himself taken by the Saracens.	
Pt II contains xvij chapters.	
How Oliver was thrown into prison,	
and after released by Floripas.	
Of the messengers sent by Charles and Balam.	
Of the Bridge of Mantrible.	

¹ A iiiij.

² Ed. capitulo.

How by the moyen of Floripes al the frensshemen were saued & lodged to-gyder & knownen by her, & resouned & of the reliques shewyd to them, & other 4 maters: capitulo	ix	How Floripes saved the French knights.
How lucafer, neuewe of thadmyral, vyolently entred in to the chambre & after was slayne by due naymes in blowynge of the cole: capitulo	x	
8 How by the councely of floripes the frenssh men dyslodged thadmyral fro his paleys strongely by grete bataylle, & how by enchauntment a gyrdel was taken 1 fro his doughter: capitulo	xij	of the death of Lucifer, and the capture of the castle of Aigremont,
12 How the barons were assyeged in that toure with floripes and her maydens whiche suffred grete hungre, & how the goddes were by them confounded: ea.	xij	
16 How the peres of fraunce came oute of the toure, & what grete batayll they made in which they mette & recountred xx somnyers with vytaylle: capitulo	xij	which was be- sieged by Balan,
20 How guy of burgoyne was taken with the sarasyns, beten vylainously & examyned of ballant thadmyral, & the complayntes that floripes made for hym, & other maters: capitulo	xiiiij	
24 How the paynems had purposed to haue hanged guy of burgoyn, seyngt the crysten men, whyche socoured him puissantly. [ea.]	xv	of the capture of Guy, and his rescue.
28 How the peres of fraunce tofore sayd were purueyed of vytayl, & after restored, & after assyeged, & fougȝt with the paynmys	xvj	
32 Here begynneth the thyrȝ part of the second book the which conteyneth xvij chapytres & speketh how the barons of fraunce ² made to them socours, and the pay- nems confused & destroyed.	xvij	of the burning of the tower by Balan. Pt III contains xvj chapters.
Of the moyon of the peres of fraunce for to sende ¹ col. 2.	2 Ed. fraunce.	

How the French determined to send Richard to Charles for help,	and shewe ¹ theyr assayres vnto kyng Charles, & how rycharde of Normondye was ordeyned for to goo to hym: capitulo	primo
Of the death of Clarion.	How after that Rycharde was departed the kyng claryon, the ryght puyssaunt kyng, rode after hym, the whiche was slayn by the sayde rycharde valyauntly, & other maters: capitulo	ij
How Richard passed the river Flagot,	How the hors of rycharde cam & retorneled through the excesynte of thadmyral & was seen & knownen of the peres of fraunce, in so moche that they supposed he had ben dead, & how the brydge of mantryble was kept: ea.	viii 12
and reached Charles.	How rycharde of Normandye passed the ryner of flagot by myracle by the meane of a whyte herte: capitulo	iiij
How the French army passed the bridge of Mantryble.	How Charles was in purpoos for to haue retorneled wythoute goyng ony ferther, by the conneeyl of the traytre ganellon & other his felowes: ea.	v
Of Amyot the giantess.	How after the complayne of Charles rycharde of normandye came to hym, which recounted the grete necessytees of the peres of fraunce & in what fere they were in: capitulo	vj
	How by the moyen & conneeyl of rycharde of Normandye with iij other barons the stronge brydge of mantryble was wonne, not wythoute payne, & what manere man was galafre: ea.	vij
	How by force of mortalyte & of batayll Charles entred into mantryble after that Galafre was dead, not-withstanding that alorqe the traytre was contrarye to hym, & many other maters. [ea.]	vij
	How amyot the geantesse wylth an huge grete sythe dyd gretely hyr denoys ayenst the eristen men, & how hyr ij sones were baptysed, & of ballant thadmyral whan he knewe the tydynge: ea.	ix
	How the peres of fraunce were assayled more	

¹ A iiij, bk.² col. 2.

strongely than euer they were, and how the toure was qnaesi smyten down to the erthe & after recomforted by the holy relyques by them adoured, and other maters :	of the fortunes of the knights besieged by Balan,
4 capitulo	x
How the frenssh men in the toure had tylynges of the hoost of Charles & thadmyral also, and how Ganel- lon bare hym meruaylously whan he was sent forth 8 allone & what he dyd : [ea.]	and how they saw Charles coming to their aid.
How charles themperour ordeyned x bataylles, & how they recountede the bataylles of puyssancee of Ballant thadmyral, whereas themperour dyd meruaylles, 12 & other maters : ea.	xij
How in this bataylle folowyng Sortybrant the kyng was slain by Reyner fader of Olyuer, and how after- ward thadmyral dyd meruaylles and grete ennoye to the 16 frensse men : capitulo	xij
How the peres of fraunce that were in the toure cam oute whan they sawe thoost of Charles, & how thad- myral was taken and holden prysoner : ea.	xijij
20 ¹ How ballant thadmyral for all the admonyeion that was made to hym he wold not be baptysed but was slayn, & Floripes hys daughter was baptysed & after wedded to guy of burgoyne, & guy crowned kyng &	of the capture of Balan, and his death, and of the baptism and marriage of Floripes.
24 she quene of that contre : capitulo	xv
How Florypes gaf the reliques to themperour, & how they were assayed & proued by myracle, & of the retournyng of charles & the ende of this book : ea. xvij	
28 ¶ Here begynneth the iij book whiche conteyneth ij partyes by the chapytres folowyng declared.	Book III contains ij parts.
¶ The first partie of the iij book conteyneth xijij chapytres & speketh of the warres in spayne & of two	Pt I contains xij chapters.
32 grete geantes.	
How saynt Iames appyered to Charles, & how by the moyen & by the conduyte of the sterres he went in to Galice, & what citees he there subdued : ea. primo	How at the bid- ding o St James Charles invaded Spain,

Of cytees gotten in spayne by Charles, & how somme of theym were by hym cursed : capitulo	ij
Of a grete ydolle whyche was in a cyte that myght not be beten doun, and of the sygnes & condycyonis therof : capitulo	iiiij
Of the chyrche of saynt Iames in Galyee, & of other chyrches that he dyd there do founde: [ea.]	iiij
How after that Aygolant the geaunt had taken 8 spayne & destroyed and put to deth the cristen men Charles recouerd it, & other maters : capitulo	v
<small>How Aigoland challenged Charles,</small>	
1 How aygoland sent to Charles that he shold feably come to hym with lytel peple to make Iuste warre, & 12 how Charles in habyte dissimyled spake to hym, & other maters : capitulo	vj
How charles accompanyyed with moche peple retorne to the place forsaide & took the eite of agene, & other 16 maters : capitulo	vij
Of the vertuous operacions that charles dyd whan he was retorne in to fraunce, & what barons he had in his companye, and of theyr puyssancee : capitulo	vij
<small>by whom he was vanquished.</small>	
Of the tryewes of charles & of aygolant & of the deth of his peple, & wherfore aygoland was not bap- tysed : ea. ix ¶ Of the deth of aygolant & of his peple, & how moche people of the cristen men were dede by 24 concupiscence of money, & the cristen founeden dede by myracl : ea. x ¶ Of ferragus the mernayllous geant, how he bare awaye the barons of fraunce with out daunger, & how afterward rolland fouḡt ayenst hym : 28 ea.	xj
<small>Of Ferragus the giant,</small>	
How on the morne rolland and ferragus foughten to gyder, and of their desputyng of their fayth, and by what meane Ferragus was slain by rolland : ea.	xij
<small>and his duel with Roland.</small>	
How Charles went to cordube where as the kyng of that place & of cibylle abode hym, & of their destruc- tyon : ea.	xij

How the chirche of saint James was halowed & sacred by turpin tharchebishop, & thother chirches ¹ of spayne subgettes to the same, & of y ^e pryncipal 4 chyrches : [ea.]	xiiij	of the church built by Charles to St James.
¶ The second ^l partye of the iij book conteyneth x chapytres & speketh of the trayson doon and made by Ganellon & of the deth of the peres of fraunce.		Pt II contains x chapters.
8 How the trayson was comprysed ^l by Ganellon of the deth of the crysten men, & how ganellon is repreue ^l by thauctour : ea.	j	of the treason of Ganelon.
12 Of the deth of kyng marsuryus, and ^l how Rolland ^l was hurte wyth foure speres mortally after that al his peple were slain and ^l deed ^l : capitulo	ij	
16 How Rolland ^l deyed ^l moche holylly after many maters & orysons made, and ^l prayed ^l to god ^l moche deuoutely, and of the complaynte made vpon hys swerde durandal: capitulo	ijj	of the death of Roland,
20 Of the vysion of the deth of rolland ^l shewed ^l to tharchebishop Turpyn, & of the sorowe of charles, & how he complayned hym ptyeously, & other maters. iiiij		and how Turpin saw it in a vision.
24 How olyuer was foun ^l den slain, and ^l of the deth of the sarasyns, & of the deth of ganellon whyche was hydous : capitulo	v	of the deaths of Oliver and Ganelon.
28 How after the thynges aforesay ^l Charles gaf thankynge ^l and ^l preysynges to god ^l and ^l to Saynt Denys : And ^l of the constitucions that he made in fraunce : capitulo	vij	
32 How Charles wente into Almayn where as he deyed ^l holylly, ² and ^l of his deth shewed ^l to tharchebishop Turpyn, and ^l of his buryeng ^l Imperyally : ea.	vij	of the death and burial of Charles.
32 Of the recapitulacion of al this werke, and ^l of hys deth at acon, & of his sepulture : capitulo	vij	
Thexcusaeyon of thauctour. [ea.]	ix	
Thenuoye of thauctour : ea.	x	
¶ Explicit		

¹ A v, bk.² col. 2.

[Of the kynges of fraunce paynyme vnto kyng'
cloys the first cristen kyng : capitulo
primo]

Of the colonisa-
tion of France
by Francus, a

companion of
Æneas,

and of the kings
of France after
him.

AS it is redde in thystoryes of the troians 4
After the destruetyon of the noble eyte of
Troye there was a kyng^t moche noble named^k
francus, the whyche was felowe of Eneas, which,
whan he departed fro Troye came in to the regyon of 8
fraunce & began to regne in grete prospereyte : & for
the felyeyte of his name he dyd compose & do edyfye a
eyte whiche he named^k fraunce, & so folowynge all the
regyon was called fraunce : & after, whan fraunce was 12
enhaunceed & reduced to mageste ryal Priamus was the
fyrst that regned vpon the frensshe men v yere. The
second was marcarius xxxij yere ; The iij pharamundus
regned xj yere ; The iiiij elodius xiiiij yere ; The v 16
Meroneus x yere ; The vj hildericus xxvij. yere, & the
vij was Clodoneus, the fyrst cristen kyng^t whyche
regned vpon the frensshe men after thyneacion of
our lord eeclxxxij yere, of whome I entende to make 20
a ltel meneyon vpon hys merueylous conuersacyon.

¶ How the kyng clodoneus paynym had' to
wyf the noble doughter of the kynge of
burgoyne : capitulo ij 24

Of Guidengus,
King of Bur-
gundy, and his
four sons.

IN that tyme was kyng^t of the burgoynons guy-
dengus, the whiche had^k iiiij sones al of good
aege, that is to wete, Agabondus, the ij ²godog-
gesylus, the iij. Hyspericus, & the fourth Godamarus. 28
The fyrst agabondus replenysshed of al inyquyte
put to deth by swerd his broder hispericus and after

henge his wyf, & put a stone aboute hyr necke & drownede^t hyr. This hyspericus had two fayre doughters, theldest was named^t throne whom agabondus her vncle
 4 bannysshed fro hys contrey & sent hir forth in habyte dyssymyled. The yonger of these ij doughters was named clotildis, whom he reteyned for hir beaute wyth hym in his hous. duryng^t thys the kyng elodoneus, or

of Clotildis,
daughter of
Hyspericus,
and of her great
beauty.

8 Cloys in frensshe, beyng a paynym whyche bylued with his subgettes but vpon ydolles, oftymes for hys affayres sent his messagers in to burgoyne. clotyllys this fayr mayde was ofte seen of the messagers of the kyng

12 Cloys & by-holden affectuously, and for hir grete beaulte & dyscrecyon the sayd messagers notysyed it to the kyng cloys, and whan thys kyng Cloys was ynough informed of the grete beaute & wysdom of this mayde,

16 whyche was crysten, he was moche enryous to sende his herawdes vnto agabondus vncle of thys doughter for to haue hyr to maryage. Duryng^t those dayes the kyng^t Cloys had^t a subtyl man wthy hym named

20 aurelyanus, which by comaunement of hys lord wente to the place where as was thys mayde & put hym self in habyte moche poure and dyssymyled, & left his good habties with his felowes in a wode & went moche

Cloys sends
Aurelian in dis-
guise to see
Clotildis.

24 holyly tofore the moder chyrehe of that place the day of a grete feste, & set hym self in the myddes of the poure peple for to receyue almesse lyke as other dyden. whan thoſſyee was accomplysshed this mayde Clotildis,

28 like as ſtie was acenstomed, atte departyng^t fro the chyrehe began to gyue almesse to the poure peple, & whan ſhe came to Aurelian she gaf to hym in his honde a pyeēe of golde, & anone he as glad & wel

He presents him-
ſelf before her to
receive alms.

32 contente kyssed^t hyr honde. whan this lady was in hyr chambre ſhe began to thynke on that poure man that had kyssed^t hyr honde & ſent for to ſecche hym by ſhe ſends for him, hyr seruaunt. whan he wanst it he cam to hir moche

¹ A vj, back.

and asks him
who he is,
and his object in
coming.

Aurelian tells her,
and presents the
ring of Cloys.

Cloildis says she
cannot marry a
pagan.

Next year Cloys
demands Cloildis
to wife from Aga-
bondus,

who at first re-
fuses, but after-
wards consents.

Cloys and Clo-
ildis are married.

Joyously and bare in his honde the ryngē of kyng cloys & humbly behaued hym tofore hyr. ¶ The mayde began to say to hym ; “saye to me wherfore dyssymlest thou thy self lyke to the poure people.” Aurelianus 4 answerd : “ Madame, knowe ye for trouthe that I am a messenger of the noble kyng cloys kyng of Fraunce, whiche hath sente me to you, & beyng enformed of your beaute & wysdom desyreh you to be hys wyf & 8 for to be quene,” & forthwith he ¹presented to hir the ryngē of kyng cloys the whyche she took & put it in to the tresour of agabondus hir vncle, & sayd to the messenger that he shold recomaunde hyr to the kyng in 12 tellyng to hym that it was not leeful to a paynym to hane to his wyf a crysten woman. Nenertheles she prayed hym that of al this he shold say noo worde, & that she wold not doo but as the kyng wold. & vpon 16 this poynt aurelianus came and shewed al to the kyng, wherevpon the kyng cloys the yere folowyng sent ageyn his messenger aurelianus to agabondus vncle of Cloildis for to hane hyr to his wyf. whan Agabondus knewe 20 thentencyon of kyng cloys he answerd to the messenger : “ Say hardly to the kyng thy lord that he hath lytel to do in desyryng to hane my nyece to wyf :” but the bourgoynons wyse counsellours, redoubtyng the puys- 24 saunce of kyng Cloys, by good councelyl whan they had wel serched the tresour of Agabondus their kyng & founde the ryngē of kyng cloys which cloyldis had layed therin, wherin was grauen & portrayed his ymage, 28 wente & concluded to performe the wylle of kyng clois : & vpon this agabondus ful of yre delyuered Cloildis to aurelianus & he brought hir with his peple with grete Ioye to kyng cloys which had grete ²playsyr to see 32 thys fayr mayde. And forthwyth with al solemnite after the maner royal he espoused hir after the custome of his lawe.

¹ col. 2.

² A viij.

¶ How kyng' Cloys was admonested' by the
quene clotildis affectuously that he shold'
byleue in the crysten fayth, and' other
4 maters : capitulo iij

THe fyrist nyght after the espousaylles atte houre
that the kyng^t and the quene shold slepe to-
gyder, Clotyldis embrased wyth the loue of god
8 by grete knowlege of Ihesus our lord went and said
to the kyng: " My right dere lord, I requyre the Clotildis makes two requests of Cloys.
that it please the to graunte to me a lytel demaunde
byfore or I entre in to thy bedde wyth the." The
12 kyng sayd: " demaunde what thou wylt For I am
wel contente." Clotyldys thenne sayd to hym: " Fyrst,
I demaunde, requyre, and admonesteth that thou wylt
byleue in god^t of heuen Fader almyghty, whyche made
16 heuen and erthe & that hath created the. And in
Ihesu Cryst his gloryous sone, kyng^t of alle kynges,
which by his passyon hath redemeid the. And in the
holie ghoost, confirmatour and Illumynatour of al good
20 werkes, procedyng^t fro the fader & fro the sone, the
foresayd Trynyte in one onely essen[ce], to whome
ought to be gyuen al honour and all lawde & byleue.
Byleue ye in this holie bylene and mageste and leue
24 the ydolles made wyth mannes honde, a folysshe thying
and vayn, and thynke for to restore the holie chyrches
whyche thou hast brente. Secondly, I requyre the
that thou wylt demaunde my parte and poreyon of the
28 goodes of my fader and of my moder of agabondas myn
vncle whom he dyd^t put to deth falsely and wythoute
occasyon, but the vengeance I leue to god." whan she
had said this the kyng answerd: ¶ " Thou hast
32 demaunded me a poynte & passage which is to me ouer
strayt & hard to graunte, that is that I shold^t forsake
my goddes by whome I gouern me, for to adoure one

¹ col. ij.

First, that he will
become a
Christian

and forsake his
false gods.

Secondly, that he
will demand her
dowry from Aga-
bondas.

Cloys begs to ask something else,

but she repeats her first request.

Cloys sends Aurelian to demand his wife's property.

Agabondus in a rage refuses to give it up,

but by the advice of his counsellors gives way.

Clotildis has a son, who is baptised,

but dies shortly after.

Cloys says it would not have died had it not been baptised.

onely god of whome thou hast spoken to me. demaunde of me som other thyng & with good hert I shal doo it." Clotildis auuerd: "as moche as is possyble to me to requyre I suplye & byseche the that thou 4 wilt adoure the god of heuen maker of al, to whome onely is due al honour." the kyng made none other auuer but sente anone Aurelyen his factour to agabondus for to haue the goodes longyng to the quene 8 Clotildis, & whan Aurelyen had doon his message Agabondus, replenysshed with grete ire, auuerd to the messager that he shold as scone haue ¹alle his royme as ony thyng of hym. For which cause Aurelyen said 12 to hym: "the kyng cloys my maister comaundeth the by me that thou make an answer vpon my demaunde or ellis he shalle be euyl contente." Thenne the bournynous helden a councayl and sayd to agabondus their 16 kyng: "Sir kyng, gyue to your nyece of your goodes as reason wyl for it is ryght, And we knowe wel that so ought ye to doo and to take playsyr to haue good alyaunces with clois the kyng and wyt h all the frensshe 20 peple, to thende that they renne not on vs. For the people is boystons & furious and, that werse is, wythout mynde of god" And vpon this poynte Agabondus, constrainyd to the councayl of the bournynous hys 24 people, sente a grete partie of his tresour to Aurelyen the messager of kyng Cloys. In a litel tyme after the kyng cloys in vysityng his royme The quene clotildis was anon grete with chylde, and sone after was delyuerd 28 of a sone whome slie dyd do baptysye, And contynuellly requyred the kyng that he wold byleue as to-fore is sayd, but he in no wyse wold here her ne do therafter. And whan the chylde was baptysyd anone it exspyred 32 & dyed, wherof the kyng was euyl contente and sayd to the quene: ²" yf thou haddest gyuen hym and dedyed hym to my goddes he were now alyue." The

¹ A vij. back. ² col. ij.

quene answerd: "for this thyng I am noo thyng perturbed in my courage, but I rendre & gyne thankynges to god my creatour by cause he hath me so dygne
 4 and worthy that it hath plesed hym to take in to his royalme of henen the fyrst fruyt of my wombe." After,
 the yere folowynge shie had ageyn another sone named
 lodomyrus, the whyche whan he was baptysed byame
 8 anone so seke that it was supposed he shold deye.
 And whan the kyng sawe it languyssh he beyng euyl
 contente said to the quene: "and now,"¹ sayd he,
 "it shal none otherwyse be of this chylde but as it was
 12 of that other his broder, bycause ayenst myn entente
 thou doost thy wylle in baptysyng them." Thenne the
 quene for the fere of the kyng prayed to god deuoutely
 for the helthe of hyr chylde, And anone he was
 16 guarysshed and hool.

A second son
also falls ill after
baptism,

but through the
queen's prayers
recovers.

¶ How the kyng Cloys was vitoryous of hys
 enemyes by cause he byleued' in Ihesu
 Cryste: Capitulo iiiij

20 **K**yng Cloys after certeyn tyme began to make
 warre mortal ayenst the Almayns, And so
 perseueryng the ²allemayns had vytorye on
 the frensshe men in suche wyse that they were ouer-
 24 thrown & slayn. Thenne whan aurelyen sawe the
 dystructyon of the kynges peple he began to beholle
 the kyng hys lord & sayd to hym: "Syr kyng, ye see
 tofore your eyen the mortal destructyon of your peple,
 28 I requyre you that ye byleue in god almyghty whych
 hath made heuen & erthe, I mene hym whome my lady
 the quene adoureth, precheth, and byleneth on."
 Whan the kyng had herde aurelyen thus speken in
 32 grete affectyon he began to lyfte his eyen vnto heuen
 and wepte moche largely, and wyt grete pyte thus

Clois attacks the
Germans,

but is defeated
with heavy loss.

Aurelian calls
on the king to be
converted,

¹ Ed. how.

² A viij.

and the king
yields to his
entreaties.

Clois having
acknowledged
himself a
Christian prays
to God for aid.

He gains a victory
over the Germans.

sayd: "O Ihesu cryst, sone of the veray god almyghty,
on whom my wif by-lenth and wyth al hyr hert
precheth & notyfeth hym to gyue remedye to them
that ben in trybulacyons, I byseeche the of ayde and 4
socour that I may be vyctoryous of myn enemyes by
experyence presently. I byleue¹ on the, and in thy
name I shalle baptysme. I haue demaunded my
goddes for to helpe me but they haue doon no thynge 8
for me, And I say they be of noo value ne of noo
comforde whan they may not helpe them that requyre
them. Wherfore to the as veray god and lord I requyre
the that I may be delyuered by thy hye puyssaunee fro 12
myn aduer²saries." he thus sayengt wyth an hyste
voys The allemayns his enemyes vanquysshed & mur-
dred began to flee in suche wyse that theyr kyng
was dead, wherfore they that abode yelded them to 16
kyng cloys and bycamen his subgettes and sette al that
contreye vnder hys obayssaunee & puyssaunee payengt
yerely trybute. Thenne after this vyctory by the
puyssaunee of god obteyned he came in to fraunce And 20
recounted alle to the quene hys wif, how by Inuocacion
dyuyne and by thayde of god almyghty he had obteyned
vyctorye.

¶ How the kyng' was baptysed' by saynt 24
Remyge, & in hys baptesme by myracle
was brouȝt the holy ampulle by an aungel
fro heuen wherof euer after all the kynges
of Fraunce been enoynted' in theyr conse- 28
cracyon atte cyte of Raynes: capitulo v.

Clotildis sends
for Remigius
to baptise Clois.

After that the quene had herde the kynge whyche
was converted vnto the cristen fayth for the
vyctorye whych he had obteyned she had grete 32
loye And Incontynent sent after saynt Remyge bysshop

¹ Ed. byleue.

² col. ij.

of raynes, a moche holy man, whiche came to hyr for to preche to the kyng^t his saluaeyon & the manere of the crysten fayth. & whan he was comen, after that

4 ¹he had^t wel enformed the kyng, began strongly to excyte the peple of fraunce to bylene in Ihesu Cryst, And^t the peple gaynsayed^t it not. For in knowyng the errore of thydolles they began al to byleue in god^t & 8 say : “Syr kyng^t gloryous, it is best that ye forsake thydolles and^t adoure the god^t Immortal whome the quene adoureth and^t preyseth & so for to do all we be contente.” Incontynent al this was shewed^t to saynt

12 Remyge, wherof he was moche Ioyous, and cam to them dylgently as a good^t herlman that taketh grete Payne to kepe the sheep fro his aduersarye ; and^t grete playsyr ought he to haue to come thyder, For his comyng^t and^t

16 hys prechyg^t dy^tl soo grete proufflyte that it made the peple to be regenerate after thordynaunce of holy baptesme, wythoute whych no man may entre in to heuen. wherfore the necessyte of the saluacion of thys kyng

20 enlumyned of grace, dysposed^t to bylene, conioyned to good^t enteneyon maad^t affectuously saynt Remyge to come, for he thought wel whan the kyng^t was baptysed^t and^t blyned^t in Ihesu cryst and^t his commaundements

24 that al the peple subgette to hym shold^t do the same wyse. And^t whan saynt remyge was comen and^t had^t commyned with the kyng touchyng his salua²eyon [he] began to ordeyne the place for to baptysē hym

28 honourably, and^t dy^tl do³ paynte the hystoryes after somme poyntes of our crysten fayth moche rychely and repayred^t the places ryght delycously. ¶ And^t on that other he dy^tl do ordeyne & founde chirches autentykly,

32 & compose baptyzatoryes & frentes conuenably. whan al this was done ⁴y^e kyng was al redy to receyue the

The bishop comes, and by his preaching converts the whole French nation,

who urge the king to forsake idolatry.

st. Remigius makes preparations for the baptism of Clois.

¹ A viij. back. ² col. 2. ³ Ed. to.

⁴ The words between the asterisks are repeated in the original with slight alterations, as follow: And thewne the kyng was al redy to receyue the holy sacrament of baptesme

holy sacrament of baptesme, to whome the frende of god^t saynt remyge began to say by faconde manere.

He delivers an exhortation to the king.

¶ “Syr kyng^t, it is tyme that ye ought wyth pure enteneyon to forsake the false goddes to whome tofore 4 this tyme ye haue gyuen fayth,* whyche ben ful of al vanyte and do no thynge but excersite of dampnacyon.

And^t ye ought to bylene wyth ryȝt humble hert in one onely god almyghty, the fader, the sone, & the holy 8 ghoost, one onely & pure essence, whyche hath created^t heuen and^t erthe, to whome one onely ouȝt to gyne fayth and^t creaunce: and in Ihesu cryst his sone,

Remigius declares the articles of the Christian faith.

whyche for the sauacyon of humayn creature ¹wold^t 12 take humanyte couenable for to repayre thynobedyence of our fyrst fader Adam. And^t that was conceyuel^t in the bely of the Virgyn marie by the werk of the holy ghoost: whyche after was sette on the crosse and took 16 deth dolorously for to redeeme vs, was buryed^t and^t roos fro deth to lyf, and^t after ascended^t in to heuen, and^t sytteth vpon the ryght honde of the fader, and fro thens shal come and^t Judge the luyng^t and^t deed^t. 20

¶ Also ye shal bylene in holy chyrcle, our catholyque moder, & her ordonnayre.” and whan saynt Remyge had ynoch enformed the kyng^t and^t the peple of our fayth and^t byleue he baptysed^t them in the name of the 24 fader & of the sone & of the holy ghoost. And whan he came to enoyntyng^t after the custome of the holy cresme whyche noo man brought, Incontynent by the plesyr of god^t and^t demonstracie myraculous, they alle 28 stondyng^t,² sodeynlye came down descencyng fro heuen a doune shiynyng, whiche bare in hyr beeke an holy ampull and^t lefte it in the same place where the holy cresme was, wherwyth the kyng^t eloys was fyrst 32

Clois and all his subjects are baptised.

A dove brings from heaven a vessel containing elixir,

[printed taptesme], To whom Saynt Remyge began by fayr manere: “Syr Kyng, it is tyme that þe ought of pure Intencion to forsake the goddes to whome here afore tyme þe haue byleued on.”

¹ B j.

² Ed. stondyng^t.

enoynted in grete deuoeyon by Saynt Remyge ; whyche Ampull is presently at Raynes, of whyche holy cresme that is therin the kynges of fraunce ¹onelye been 4 enoynted ones in theyr consecraeyon. ¶ In that tyme were baptysed the systers of the sayd kyng^t and thre thousand^t men of hys excersyte, and so after all the peple of fraunce in grete Ioye and exaltacion of glorye.

with which all
kings of France
since have been
consecrated.

8 ¶ The second' partie of the first book con- teyneth fyue chapytres, and' speketh of the begynnyng' of kyng' Pepyn And' Charle- mayn hys sone.

12 ¶ How Pepyn by his prudence was chosen kyng' of Fraunce when the lygnage of kyng cloys faylled' in successyon : ca. j

16 **T**He book precedent maketh meneyon of kyng^t Cloys the fyrist crysten kynge of the lordes of Fraunce of whome the lygnage succeeded from heyre to heires vnto the foure and twenty kyng, whynch was the kyng^t Pepyn of another lygnage. And the

20 Kynge whyche was the xxijij after the kyng Cloys and of his lignage was named hildricus, the which ²kyng^t deuoute & contemplatyf wythoute cure to excersyse thoffyce royal of a kyng put hym self in relygyon for

After the death of
Clois Hildricus
becomes king,

24 to lede a solytarye lyf. ¶ In that tyme was Pepyn moche valyaunt of hys persone and moche noble prynce.

but gives up
the throne to
become a monk.

And by cause that alle the kynges of fraunce haue succeeded of thys sayd Pepyn, and in especial charlemayn 28 his sone vpon whome this werke is compryset^t, I wyl here begynne to treate the mater the whyche I entende superficialy to speke of, And lyke as the book whyche is called myrrour hystoryal compryseth. That Pepyn

32 the prynce on a tyme sente hys messagers to Rome to the Pope Zacharye for to haue answer vpon a demaunde, That is to wete, " whether is he more worthy to be a

Pepin's demand
of Pope Zachary,

¹ col. ij.

² B. j. back.

kyng or to be said a kyng whiche fo[r] pees and parfyght vnyon taketh on hym grete Payne & trauaylle, or ellys he that retcheth of noo thyng and is abandonned and gyuen to all slouth and is onely contente to haue the name onely of kyng?" Whan the pope had herde thys demaunde he remaunded to Pepyn that he by ryght reason and veray equyte ought to be called a kyng that gouerneth and ruleth hys fayt for the comyn wele & contynueth it. For whyche answer & demaunde the Frensshe men by cunneeyl¹ approuued consydered theyr kyng hyldrycus professeid in a monasterye in lyf solytarye and contemplatyf, (And that not wythstond- yng ought not to be ony thyng ayenst them that lyuen solytaryly,) how wel a kyng ought not to be solytarye, For suche as is the Kyng suche is the Royame. ¶ For salomon sayth, yf the kyng be necligent the peple wote not what to doo, And blesyd is the londe that hath a prynce noble. Alle the frensshe men beyng wel enformed of the condycions apperteynyng to a kyng after an auetour that sayth thus: ¶ "The Prynce whan he is ordeneid ought not to haue horses superfluous ne make his peple more subgette than they ought to be, and ought not to take but seruaentes propyre³ and necessarye wythoute superfluyte, and not to nour- ysshe ouer many houndes ne other beestes vnprouifable but take them in mesure. ¶ And he shold eschewe multypleacyon of mynstrellys, Tabouryns, commyn wymmen, lecherous men. ¶ And he shold not cor- rupte hys subgettes by euyl exaumple. He shold not breke hys espousaylles, he shold gladly rede in booke & shold haue by hym peple wel letterd, And shold Iuge wythoute fauour. ¶ And tofore al thynges he shold adoure & serue god: he shold not gladly take yeftes, & ought not gladly to chaunge hys offycers."

and the Pope's answer.

The duties and qualities of a king.

He should not keep too many horses or servants,

nor keep bad company.

He should be a good husband, fond of learning, just,

and, above all, religious.

¹ Ed. cunneeyl.

² col. 2.

⁴ B ij.

³ Ed. propyee.

Alle thys thynge wel seen emonge them for the conseruacion of the people emonge the myscreauantes which were at that tyme, [they] wente and chosen for to be 4 kyng^t of Fraunce the noble Pepyn, and fro that tyme forthon the lygnage of kyng cloys regned nomore vpon the frensshe men. And he was consecrate by saynt Boneface, And by thauctoryte apostolyque & by Saynt 8 Stephen Pope with his ij sones Charlemayn & charles¹ the grete was confermed and approuued and ordeyned all the kynges of fraunce in grete benedyction to succeede fro lygnage to lygnage moost nexte. And the sai 12 pope gaf his maledyction to al them that were opposaunts and ayenst these thynges aforesayd. ¶ Thenne after this noble kyng Pepyn made grete warre to the englysshe men. And after the guyse Romayn he 16 ordeyned the seruyee in the chyrches of fraunce and many other maters meruayllous wherof thonour is attrubed by good ryght to hym by vyctorye obteyned, and was buryed in the chyrche of Saynt Denys in Fraunce.

20 And lefte hys heyres hys two sones afore sayd whome he had gotten on the noble quene berte, daughter² of the grete Herelyn Cezar, of whome the lignage of romayns of germayns and of the grekes haue had con-

24 currence. wherfore by good ryght in tyme folowyng the kyng^t Charles was chosen and maad Emperor of Rome. And the sayd kyng Pepyn regned xvij yere in prosperite dygne of saluaeyon, and after that the broder 28 of the sayd Charles had regned in his partie of the royame ij yere he deyed, And thenne after alle the gouernement hooly of the royame of fraunce abode to the sayd charles as here-after shalle be more playnly 32 shewed.

Pepin is chosen
king by the
French,

and consecrated
by St. Boniface.

He makes war
against the
English.

At his death he
leaves two sons,

between whom
his kingdom is
divided.

On the death of
his brother
Charlemagne
becomes sole
king.

¶ Of kyng Charles after that he had' maad' many constytucyons wyth the Pope Adryan,

¹ Ed. repeats and charles.

² col. 2.

& how he was emperour of Rome: capitulo ij

THIS noble Charlemayn, otherwyse called Charles the grete, the whiche for the gretenes of hys body, puissaunce, and operacions virtuous by merite is called grete as I haue sayd, whyche after the deth of hys brother was¹ onely kyng of Fraunce. A lytel whyle after that the Pope² adryan regned & dyd grete diligencie to strengthe & corobere the crysten fayth in amullying the heresyes and constytutyng ymages for representacyon of sayntes in chyrches. And

His labours in
the service of the
church.

to many other labours merytoryes adioyned in the seruyee of god & of holy chyrsche. The kyng charles ayenst the myscrauntes taryed not to confounde them but had vyetorye of them in dyners³ maners, & the pope adryan, whyche was wel enformed that thys Charles was a stronge pyler of the chyrsche and protectour of the fayth, sente for hym that he shold come to Rome. And whan he came to pauye there he taryed & sette

He lays siege to
Padua,

hys syege and soioured a lytel tyme, And after wyth a fewe of hys people departed & came to rome. And there he was receyued affectuously and vysyted many places deuoutelye. And after whan he retorne he took pauye, And whan he had all doon his playsyr

and takes it.

he retorne to Rome. And wyth the Pope adryan

A general Council
is held at Rome.

he assembled many bysshoppes and abbottes [to] the nombre of an hondred & liij where they ordeyned many constytucyons vpon the fayt of the vnyuersal chyrsche. And in that synode for the grete holynes of charles The pope and al thassystentes gaf hym power for to ordeyne bisshoppes & archebisshops⁴ in al his contrees and prouynces. And al them that so shal be ordeyned he shal conferme and the rebellys that shall gaynsaye them he shal curse and theyr goodes be confysked. This

¹ Ed. he was. ² P. ij. back. ³ Ed. dyners. ⁴ col. 2.

noble charles wyth hys two sones, that one named Pepyn & that other lowys, And the xij pyeres of fraunce, whyche al had promysed fydelyte one to that
 4 other for to Ieoparde theyr lyf for the crysten fayth.
 In that tyme many mortal warres duryng^t the lyf of kyng^t Pepyn & of charles and after that the royame of lombardye was destroyed and delyuered^t of the mys-
 8 creauntes, And maad^t pees not wythoute grete trauayll for to come from fraunce in to lombardye by cause of the daungerous countre. whan alle thys was termyned^t to hys playsyr he reduced^t alle ytalye vnder the trybute
 12 of the royame of Fraunce. In suche wyse that whan ytalye was thus destroyed he went to Rome for to gyue thankynges and laude to god^t moche deuoutelye for vyctorye that he had and for execusyon doon vpon
 16 the enemyes of the fayth. And there with the pope Adryan he maad^t many constytucyons whyche by ry^t equyte ought wel to be obserued^t. And after he beyng^t thus in Rome vyctoryous hys sone Pepyn was ordeyned
 20 & consecrate kyng^t of the ytalyens, And hys sone lowys was ordeyned^t and consecrate kyng^t vpon guyan. thys doon the Romayns whyche of grete aneyaunte were of grete apporte after that the emperour was by them
 24 put to deth Constantyn his sone wold haue regned^t for themperour, whyche was not wel in the fauour of the senatours and other Romayns ; the whyche beyng in this poynte, after that they had^t taken delyberacyon of grete
 28 councayl, seyng^t the grete valure and noblesse of kyng Charles, whyche was so parfyght in alle noblesse hardynesse, prudence, & other vertues as I shalle touche herafter alle playne, that by consent of eueryche he
 32 was chosen emperour of Rome wyth grete loange & exaltacyon of Ioye Innumerable, And by the honde of Pope Leo he was crowned^t emperour with alle honoures that myght be compryseed^t. And al wyth one

After many
bloody wars he
reduces Italy
under his power.

His son Pepin is
consecrated king
of Italy, and his
second son Louis
king of Guienne.

Charles is chosen
Emperor of
Rome.

¹ B iij.

voys gaf to hym laude and honour, And called hym
Cezar & August by a symylytude of valure in contem-
placion of grete playsyr that they had maad hym kyngt
of ytalient. 4

¶ Of the corpulence of kynge Charles, and' of
the maner of hys lyung': capitulo ijj

Of the good
works of Charles
during his reign
of 33 years.

According to
Turpin

Charles was
more than 8 feet
high, stout,

broad-shouldered,
and large of limb,

with a beard a
foot long.

His face was
long and fair:
his eyes bright
and sparkling.

Charlemayn Kyuge of Fraunce after that he was
Emperour he dyd many meruayllous werkes and 8
regned emperor thyrtenere yere, And had thenne
regned vpon the frenshe men xxxij yere. And in
the conf[er]ye of Rome he edyfyed many cytees and
restored good townes & many other thynges whyche 12
may not well be recounted by cause of his merueylous
werkes. Neuertheles for to knowe what man he was
his werkes wytnessen: as moche as toucheth the exerceyte
of hys persone Turpyn the holy man archebysshop of 16
Raynes whych lyued that tyme and was oft tymes in the
companye of kyng Charles sayth that he was a man
wel faryng of hys body & grete of persone and had hys
syght and regarde fyers & malycious. ¶ The lengthe 20
of hys persone conteyned eyght feet after the measure
of his feet, which were merueyllously long; fatte, and
massyf was he of his sholdres and raynes wythoute
hauyng the bely otherwise than wel a poynte. The 24
armes and thydes he had ample and large: he was a
subtyl knyght & ryght wyse actyf and moche fyers, and
of alle hys membres he was of ryght grete strengthe.
he had the face deduyte in lengthe and hys berde was 28
a foot longe: ²he had hys nose reyzed vpon a roundnes:
A fayr regarde and countenaunce had thys man: he had
the face of a large fote brode; he had the eyen like a
lyon sparklyng lyke a cole by furious regarde, his 32
wynbrowes grete. Assone as he byhelde a man in
angre echē man had of hym fere and drede in openyng

¹ col. 2.

² B ijj, back.

his eyen. The gyrdle of whyche he was gyrde was viij fote longe wyth-oute that that henge doun fro the bokle to the pendaunt. whan he took hys repaast he was 4 contente wyth lytel brede, but as touchyng the pytaunce he ete at his repaast a quarter of moton, or ij hennes, or a grete ghoos, or a grete pestel of porke, or a pecok, or a crane, or an hare all hool : he dranke wyn sobrelly 8 wyth a lytel water therin. Of hys strengthe is not a lytel thynge to speke of, For he wold smyte a knyght armed wyth one stroke of a swerde and cleue hym from the coppe of the hede doun to the sadel. And yf he 12 had bytwene hys handes iij hors shoen wyth ouermoche prouyng¹ hys myght he wold ryȝt them oute and breke them in pyeces. And more ouer wyth one hande he wold take a knyght al armed and lyfte hym 16 vp to the heyght of hys breste lyghtly. And he had in hym thre thynge moche honourable: Fyrst, in yefetes ye¹uyng he was ryght large, lyke vnto Tytus themperour sone of Vaspasianus, which was so prodygal 20 that it was not possyble to hym to gyue that whyche he promysed. And whan it was demaunded why he promysed thynge that he myght not gyne, forthwyth he answerd that a persone ought not departe fro a prynce 24 desolate ne heuy, nor with-oute to obteyne somme thynge. Secondly, Charles was so sure in Iugement that no man coude reprehende hym, and also he was pycous & mercyful vnto cristen men after the qualyte just and merciful, 28 of the persone & the occasyon of the trespaas. And, thyrdrylly, in his wordes he was moche wel aduysed: and careful in his language. whan he spake he thought strongly on that he sayd & whan one spake to hym he remembred the manere for 32 to compryse thentencyon of the spekar.

¹ col. 2.

¶ To what thynge kyng Charles hys sone and
hys doughters were Instructe and' taughte
to doo : capitulo iiiij

DAme bertrode moder of Charles ful of grete sey- 4
ence in grete prosperyte of lyf and in honour
wexeþ olde and fynysshed hyr dayes, and
ordeyneþ booke for to excersyse the artes lyberalle.

¶ Of ¹whome fyrst charles took gladly Payne for to 8

Charles had his
sons taught
religion, science,

estulye, And in the tyme of Infancye he maad seyence
to be taught to hys sones and doughters, and after whan
they knewe their byleue he made them to studye in the

senen artes lyberal. And whan the sones were of age 12

jousting,
the art of war,
and hunting.

for to ryde on horsback after the guyse of Fraunce he
made them to bere armes and to Iuste for texcersyse
the warre whan it shold be nede, and whan they dyd
not that he made them to hunte al maner wylde beestes 16

His daughters
were taught to
spin and sew,
and other suitable
accomplishments.

and dyd them to do other esbatements longyng to
chyualry contynually. After this he made his doughters
to spynne & sowe and to occupye them in other
honourable werkes to thende that by ydlenes and 20
slouthe & faute of occupacyon they shold not haue
occasyon to falie in thouȝt dysordynate for to haue
Inclynacyon to synne and vyce, and whan he was not
occupyed in maters of charge and weyghty he wold 24

Charles was never
idle, but fond of
study.

employe his tyme in wrytyng somme newe thynge to
thende that he wold not be ydle, accordyng to the
pystle of saynt poule, whiche admonesteth vs to do
alwaye somme good, by cause þat our enemye the fende 28
holde vs not in ydlenes for to folowe his enteneyon

He built at Aeon
a splendid church
to our Lady.

dampnable. And he dyd do make in his palays in
Aeon in Almayn a ²chyrche of our lady compryseed of
meruayllous beaute & moche ryehely ordeyneþ, and 32
wrought, and in grete honour enhaunced in sygne of a
parfyght crysten man. For after that one loueth the

¹ B iiiij.

² col. 2.

Iord^l an^l that is gyuen to hym the werkes desirous to
meue other to doo to the lord^l lyke as hym self an^l in
lyke wyse shold perseuere in the amplifysacion of hys
4 contreye that sythe the deth of hys fader Pepyn he
doubled by puyssance in the royame of fraunce.

¶ Of the studye of kyng charles, of hys luyng,
of hys charytable werkes, and' other ma-
8 ters: capitulo v.

After that Charles was Instructe in gramayre &
other seyences morall & speculatyf, alwaye he
contynued in them: And^l by ardaunt desyre
12 frequented the bookees composed vpon the cristen fayth of the religious
habits of Charles,
for to be protectour an^l defendour of the chyrche, the
whyche he vysyted on mornynges and^l on euenes & in
the nyght oftymes. and^l at good festes he faylled not
16 to doo gretely hys deuoyr in sacrificyses & oblaciōns:
And also gaf largely almesse for the loue of god, and^l his alms-giving,
was alway redy to socour the poure people in the largest
wyse. For he socoured not onely ¹the poure folke of
20 his owne contreye with his hauoyr & goodes but in
many other places beyonde the see he sente golde & both at home and
abroad.
24 contreyes: as he that sayd: "gold^l and^l syluer is not
myn." To every man he desyred amytye and^l pees.
Of body he was moche ample & boystous of stature
well apparysaunt, the coppe of hys heed^l rounde, the He was large of
body, and of a
pleasing
countenance.
28 heeres in grete reuerence, & the vysage Ioyous. he had^l
the voys clere & of grete force, & at his souper he ete
not for the moost parte sauf rosted veneson, whyche
aboue alle other flesshe he loued an^l vsed at his souper.
32 Alwaye he loued redars for to rede cronycles or other
thynges contemplatyues, as he that wold as wel fele
the soule whiche is perpetuel of sprytuel fode, for to He loved to hear
books read,

¹ B iiiij, back.

mayntene it in vnyon of gracie toward god his maker,
as of refeccyon of the body for to conserue the lyf,
And emonge al other bookes he delyted strongly in
the bookes of saint austyn, especially in that whyche 4

especially the
De Cœritate Dei
by Augustine.

is named de ciuitate dei. & he dranke not ouer ofte,
For at sonper he dranke not but thre tymes. In somer
tyme gladly after mydday he wold ete a lytel fruyt &
drynke ones & wold goo reste hym al naked in his 8
bedde two¹ or thre houres. In the nyght he brake his
slepe foure or v tymes and walked in hys chambre.

Thus Charles perseuerd² in felieytle ryal and emperyal,
& sente oueral thorugh hys empyre hys messagers and 12
grete councellyours³ for to vysyte hys prouynces and
good townes, for to be enformed of the gouernours of
them for to do to eueriche Justyce and reson; and
made many constytneyons & lawes accordyng⁴ to the 16
placees, and commaunded them to be obserued and
kepte vpon grete payne. Semblably the sayd Charles
sente thorugh al the world for to knowe ouer al the
gouernement, That is to wete, for to knowe the mer- 20
uayllous faytes that were doon in the world, And also
for to leme the lyf of sayntes of whom the festes were
halowed and made of them bookes for tabyde in eternal
memorye. & every day he dyd doo put in wrytyng⁵ that 24
whyche he dyd, In suche maner that after the wrytyng⁵
that he therme fonde Were founde more than thre
hondred festes of sayntes one tyme of the yere, wherfor
he exersyeyng his sprituel werkes he was bylond⁶ & 28

Aaron, king of
Persia, sends him
as a present an
elephant,

dere reputed of every body. In that tyme Aaron the
kyng⁶ of perse for the magnyfycencye of charles sente to
hym an Olyphaunt merueillously grete for a synguler
yeuste and many other thynges preyyouses. ¶ Thys 32
Charles for hys grete holynesse and noblesse was in
suche renomme of honour and of vertues. On a tyme

¹ col. 2.

² Ed. preseruerd.

³ Ed. councellyours.

⁴ B v.

aaron the kyng^t of Perse sente to hym emonge other
 yeftes the bodyes of saynt Cyprian and^t of saynt speratus and^t the heed^t of saynt Panthaleon marters in
 4 to Fraunce.

¶ The thyrd' parte of the fyrst book conteyneth thre chapytres, and^t speketh how by
 8 reuelacion deuyne Charles delyuerd' the
 holy londe fro the honde of the paynyms.

¶ How the patryarke of Iherusalem sente to
 Charles for socours after that he was deieete and^t caste oute of the Turkes: capi-
 12 tulo primo.

The patriarch of
Jersalem, being
hard pressed by
the Saracens,
appeals to Charles
for help.
 It is redde that in the tyme that charles was em-
 perour of rome the patryarke of Iherusalem was soo
 oppresseyd^t of the paynyms by mortall warre that
 16 vnnethe he myght sauue hym self. And thus whan he
 knewe nomore what to do He had^t in remembraunce the
 noble charles and^t he beyng^t enformed^t of hys holynes,
 for socour he sente to hym the keyes of the holy sepul-
 20 cre of our lord Ihesu Cryst of Caluarie and of the
 1^cyte, And^t wyth that he sente to hym the standart of
 the fayth as to the pyler of crystente and^t defendour of
 holy chyrche. After thys the patryarke came to con-
 24 stantynoble vnto themperour constantyn and^t to hys
 sone Leo & brought wyth hym Iohan of naples preste
 and^t another whyche named^t hym self Dauid archeprest,
 whome themperour Constantyn sent incontynent to
 28 charles, And^t wyth them tweyne he ordeyned^t for to goo
 wyth them two other whyche were named^t ysaac and^t
 Samuel, & delyuerd to them a lettre wryton with his
 owne hande for to bere to charles. And^t the sayd Con-
 32 stantyn had^t wryton in one parte of the lettre thus:
 "On a nyght me semed that I sawe tofore my bedde a

Constantine
writes a letter to
Charles,

telling him that

he has been
ordered in a
vision to call on
him for help
against the
Saracens,

and recounting
the vision which
had appeared to
him,

He sends the
letter by
messengers.

Charles is greatly
affected by the
letter, which he
orders to be
published abroad.

yonge woman moche fayre stondyng¹ ryght vp, whyche touched me softly and sayd to me with swete wordes : ‘Constantyn, whan thou knewest thaffayre & doyng of the paynmys whyche holden the holy londe by grete affectyon, thou hast prayed god for to haue helpe. lo ! what thou shalte doo. Pourchace that thou mayst haue wyth the charles the grete kyng² of the gallyens, whiche is protectour of holy crystente and defendour of holy chyrche.’ And after the same lady shewed me a knyght armed in al his body and spores on hys heles, & had³ hys shelde rede, gyrded wyth hys swerde, & had his sene of purple, & helde a sperre moche grete, And the heed⁴ of yron whyche was on hye caste in to the ayer grete flambes of fyre : & he helde in his honde a baeynet al of golde shynynge and he was auncient, wyth a longe berde, ryght fayre of vysage and longe of body : he had eyen shynynge as ij sterres, and hys heerys began to wexe whyte, and after was wryton : ‘O thou August that neuer refusest the comandements of god, enioye the in Ihesu Cryst, & in thy mynde alwaye yelde to hym thankynge : be enclosed in Justyce lyke as thou hast be reclamed in honour. Ihesu Cryste gyne the grace to perseuere² and kepe alwaye the commandements, of god as thou oughtest to doo fermerly.’” And as it is wryton thempour Constantyn in hys tyme had deicted the paynmys ute of Iherusalem senen tymes, wherfore whan he myȝt nomore he sente his messagers to kyng² Charles Whyche at that tyme was at parys. And whan the messagers had presented the letters and he had seen them he began to wepe moche greuously in contemplacion of pyte of the holy sepulcre of our lord so holden of the paynmys. After this he sente for tharche- bysshop Turpyn and maad hym to preche ³openlye the pyteous tydylges whyche were thenne presentlye comen,

¹ B v, baek.

² Ed. preseuere.
³ col. 2.

the whyche wel herde and vnderstood the peple alle
generally were enclyned^t to goo thyder

¶ How Charles with a grete compayne wente
4 for to conquerre the holy lande, and many
other maters : capitulo ij

A Fter that thys whyche I haue before sayd was
8 publysshed^t The kynge dyd^t do make an edyet
and dyd do crye it thorngh out al the contreye,
that every man that myȝt bere armes shold^t be redy for
to goo wyth hym ayenst the paynyme, and he that wol^t
not come shold be bounde for a good somme of money
12 for to hyre soullyours that shold goo. Thys doon was
neuer seen tofore in so lytel tyme so moche peple
assembled^t as thenne were founden. And whan they
were al departed^t in the name of god^t, full of one grete
16 fayth in grete hope to obteyne vyctorye vnder the con-
duyte of Charlemayn capitayne of the fayth. And
whan they had^t ryden a grete longe waye they came in
to a grete wode of busage in whyche they myght not
20 passe vnnethe in two dayes, and yet wyth grete Payne,
and Charles thought to passe it in ¹one daye : wherfore
he & his hoost entred^t wythin the sayd wood^t which was
ful of dyuers wilde beestes, as Gryffions, beres, lyons,
24 Tygres, and other beestes, whan they were thus in that
grete wode and the nyght came on they were al
abasshed & troubled wythout knowyng whych waye
they shold^t holde, And Charles commaunded that they
28 shold loke yf they myght see or knowe ony habytacyon,
but they were ferre fro ony and oute of their ryght
waye, and by force were drynen to dyspose them to
slepe in that estate. And whan they were al in reste
32 the kyng charles beyng in his dormitorye, trustyng of
the ayde of our lord in grete deuocyon began to say the
psaulter, And whan he came to the poynte that he shold

He orders all
who can bear
arms to assemble.

An enormous
army comes
together, and
they start for
the Holy Land.

They lose their
way in a forest.

Charles prays to
God for help.

¹ B vj.

say the vers folowynge “Dedue me domine in semita mandatorum tuorum, quia ipsam volui,” he sayeng thys there came a byrde to his ere in the presence of eueriche that were about hym whyche sayd wylth an hye voys : 4 “kyng, thyn oryson is herde.” Thenne alle they that were presente were moche troubled, and notwythstondyngt al thys the kyng contynued to say the psaulter vnto “Edue me de custodia animam meam,” & all thus 8 whyle he sayd the byrd began more strongly to crye and say ¶ “O frensshe man, what sayest thou? 10 O frensshe man, what sayest thou?” And after that the Kyng^t and hys compaunye wente and folowed the byrde 12 whyche conduytel them vnto the ryght waye whyche they had lost the day tofore, & somme of the pylgryms sayd that after in the same contreye were suche byrdes so doyng. But whan charles & hys grete puyssance 16 were nyghe theyr enemyes they were moche troubled of theyr comyngt & the crysten lordes were gretely rejoyced of theyr comyngt. For wythoute eessyngt he rested not tyl that he had reconerd the contreye of 20 crysten men and expellel alle the paynymeys whyche moche redounded to hym grete honour & vyctorye. And in retournyngt he demaundel of themperour of Constantynoble lycence to departe & of the other patry- 24 arkes & archepreestes. And themperour helde hym an hole day, And for remuneracyon the sayd emperor for the honour of kyng charles on the morne tofore the yates of the cyte dyd do ordyne many bestes of dyners maners 28 & dyners colours, & grete quantyte of gold and syluer and of precious stones, to thende that he shold take it for somme rewarde for the grete good that he had doon in theyr contreye. But assone as charles knewe therof 32 he took counceyll of hys people what he ought to ²doo in takyngt of the precyous & ryche yeftes or to retourne in to fraunce wythout takyng of ony thyngt, And there

Charles clears the country of Saracens,

and prepares to return home.

The Emperor collects a large number of valuable presents for him,

vpon his barons counciell hym that he shold take no
thyng for hys laboure, For he had doon no thyng but
for the loue of god onely : And he beyng wel content
4 of thys answer commaunded that noo persone vpon grete
payne shold take noo thyng of the Iewellys aforesayd.

but Charles refuses to accept any of them.

¶ Of the relyques that themperour charles
brought fro constantynoble and' fro the
8 holy londe, and' of the myracles that were
doon: capitulo iiiij

WHAN theperour of constantynople and the
12 patryarke of Iherusalem knewe that charles
wold take no thyng of the good aforesayd,
he was admonested that he shold take somewhat of them,
& whan he was thus constrainyd he bysought them that
for the loue of god myght be gyuen vnto hym somewhat

16 of the relyques of our lord and of hys holy passyon.
Whan thys was demaunded It was commaunded to fast
euyer man thre dayes for to be the more enclyned to
deuocyon and for to vysyte the holy reliques, and in
20 especyal were ordeyned xij persones by grace whych
shold ¹treate & see the relyques. Whan it came to
the thyrd day the noble Charles by grete contrayeyon
confessyd hym to tharchebysshop Turpyn. After
24 that moche reuerently they beganne to synge the
letanye wyth somme psalmes of the psaulter. And
there was the prelate of naples named danyel, whyche
in grete reuerence opened the coffre wherin was the
28 precyous crowne of Ihesu Cryst and there sprange oute
of the same so grete an odour that all they that were
presente thought to be in paradys. Therne charles ful
of hool and very creaunce of fayth kneeled down to the
32 grounde and stratched hym on therthe, & moche
strongely prayed our lord that for the gloriye of hys

He asks, instead,
for some relics of
Our Lord.

The Emperor gives him the sacred crown of thorns.

1 col., 2.

name presently wold^t renewe the myracles of hys holy passyon and gloriouſe resurrexyon.¹ & assone as he had^t prayed in a moment the crowne began to floryſſhe, &

A delicious odour issues from the crown.

a meruayllous swete odour yſſued^t out of the floures, 4

ſoo ryȝt delycious that eche man ſuppoſed that hys

veſtamenteſe & clothyng^t had^t comen oute of heuen.

¶ Thenne after thys daniel took a ſharpe knyf kuttyng

wel purfyfed^t to cutte the ſaid crowne and^t in cuttyng^t 8

alwaye more & more the ſayd crowne flouryſſhed^t and^t

the odour ſmellyd the more habundantly. And of the

Charles deposits the thorns and flowers in a cofre,

2 floures charles put a parte in a repositorye, and in a

lytel cofre he put the thornes of the crowne, and^t wept 12

ſo habundantlie that whan he wende to haue gynen to

tharchebyſſhop Ebroin the floures he wythdrewē hys

honeſe & ſuppoſed that the ſayd Ebroin³ had^t holden

them in hys honeſe, & they were in the ayer houyng by 16

myracle & abode there by themſelf the ſpace of a grete

houre. And^t after whan he had^t gynen in kepyng the

ſayd thornes to the ſayd Ebroin he ſaw the cofret in

thayer whyche was full of floures whyche abode there by 20

them ſelf, whiche ſome after were conuerteſt in to manna

and in that manere they ben at Saynt Denys in fraunce.

And it hath be the oppynyon of many that thys was of

the manna that god ſente in to deserte to hys people. 24

Thenne were there ſliued^t myracles For al ſeek people

that were there preſent were heled^t of al theyr maladyes

by the odour of the floures aforesayd, and the peple

that entred in to the chirche by grete vyolence of preſſe 28

of peple eryed^t verytably that day was a day of helthe

& reſurrexiſſion, for by the ſauour of tho mellyfluous

floures alle the cytee was purfyfed and replenyſſhed of

grace: for thre hondred^t & one ſeek man by conteſt 32

were heled^t & guarifſhed of their maladyes. ⁴Emonge

Three hundred and one ſick persons are healed by the ſcent of the holy reliques.

al other ther was one ſeek of xxiiij yere & thre

monethes, whyche was blynde, deaf, & doame, but at

One who had been blind, deaf, and dumb for over 24 years.

¹ Ed. resurrexyon. ² B vij. ³ Ed. Ebrom. ⁴ col. 2.

moment¹ whan the thorne was drawen fro the crowne
he took hys syght, and whan it was layed in ageyn he
reconuerd his heeryng, And in florysshynge of it he
4 was restored to his speche. ¶ After thys the sayd
danyel took a nayll of which the precyous body of our
lord in his passyon had be perced and in grete reuerence
was put for a relyque in alabastre, & in takyng oute of
8 it a chylde was heled, whiche of hys lyfte syde was
drye and Impotent fro his byrthe & he ranne hastelye
to the chyrelle and cryed at the houre of none and said
that he beyng in an extasye was heled and guarysshed

and a child,
a cripple from
his birth,
are healed by
the reliques.

12 and tolde the manere. ¶ Also there was gyuen to the
kyng Charles a pyeue of the holy crosse and the holy
sudarye, and therwith the smoeke of our lady & the
clothe wherin our lord was wrapped, and also the armie
16 of saynt Symeon ; and al reuerently in precyous pyxes
& caasses he henge them aboue hys necke, and in
passyng by a castel there was a chylde newe dede
whom kyng charles touched with the reliques that he
20 bare & anone the chylde was reyseyd to lyf. And whan
he came to Aeon in Almayne, ² whyche is a moche fayr
cytee where as kyng charles had made his paleys moche
fayr & ryche and a ryght deuoute chapel in thonour of
24 our lady, wherin hym self is buryed. There atte laste
were guarysshed & heled blynde men and seek men of
the feures wythoute nombre & xij demonyaks, viij
lazars of the palesey, xv of myshapen, xv crokebacked,
28 liij of the fallyng sekenes, lxv of the gowte, many of
them of the same place & many of other maladyses.
And it was ordeyneid that in the moneth of Iuyl at
Aeon in the cyte that al peple myght come & see the
32 forsayd relyques which kyng charles had brought fro
Iherusalem and constantynoble. And more ouer was
establisshed that one day of the weke of the fastyng of
ymbre dayes and in the moneth of Iuyl shold be made

The Emperor
gives Charles a
piece of the cross,

and the holy
napkin and other
relics,

with which he
performs numer-
ous miracles.

They are
deposited at Aeon,
where they are
shown.

¹ Ed. meuyng.

² B viij. back.

this demo[u]stramee and notyfyeacyon. And in thys constytneion was Pope Leo Tharchebysshop Turpyn Achylleus bysshop of alexandrye And Theophyle of anthyocke & many other bisshoppes & abbottes, whyche 4 werk was moche vertuous & ful of helthe.

- ¶ Here begynneth the ij book of thys present werke, whyche conteyneth thre partyes by chapytres folowyng' declared'. 8
- ¶ The fyrist partye of the second book conteyneth xvij chapytres and' speketh of the batayll doon by Olyuer & Fyerabras a meruayllous geaunte. 12
- ¶ How in a place which was called' mormyonde charles abode folowyng' the warre ayenst the paynems, after a lytel prologue.

¶ The fyrist chapytre. 16

IHau spoken tofore in the fyrist book superfycially of the first kyg of fraunce baptysed, in descendyng^t after my purpos vnto Kynge charles of whome may not wel be recounted the valyaunce of hym and of 20 his barons, whych were named & called pyeres of fraunce. Of whome & of their behanyst I shal make mencion after that I shal mowe conceyne by trouthe, but thys that I hauen tofore wryton I hauen taken it oute of an autentyke book named "myrrour hystoryal" and in auncient cronycles, And hauen onelye translated them oute of latyn in to frensshe. And the mater folowyng whyche shal be the second book is of a 28 Romaine maad of thauneyent facyon wythoute grete ordynaunce in frensshe wherof I hauen been encyted for to reduce in prose by chapytres ordeyned, which book after somme ² and moost comonlye is called "Fyera- 32 bras," by cause that thys Fyerabras was so mernayllous a geaunte as I shal make menyon whyche was van-

All the first book has been translated from the *Speculum Historiale*;

the second book I have translated from an old Romance, called "Fiera-bras."

¹ col. 2.

² B viij.

quysshed by Olyuer, And at the laste baptysed & was after a saynt in heuen. And in effect it speketh of that bataylle and of the relyques conquered whiche 4 had ben taken of rome and were in the puyssaunee of the admirall whyche was fader of fyerabras. wherfore in thys book folowynge I ne entende but onely to reduce thauncyent ryme in to prose & to deuyde the 8 mater by chapytres in the best ordynaunce that I shal conne, wylhoute to adiouste ony thynge that I haue not founde in the book competent, & in lyke wyse as I shal fynde I shal reduce. And thys book is applyed to 12 thonour of Olyuer one partye, Not-wylhstondyng that there ben many other maters. For I suppose that of eueriche of the barons pryncipal of themperour Charles whyche ben sayd comynly in nombre xij or xiiiij, and 16 pyeres of Fraunce, whyche were eaptytaynes of thexeer-eyte and moche stronge and valyaunte of theyr personnes, & were grete lordes and noble. But of the lordes valyaunte eaptytaynes were more than xiiij after that I 20 fynde. Fyrst there was rolland, Erle of Cenonia, sone of mylon ¹erle and of dame berthe propre syster of kyng^t Charles: After hym was Olyuer Erle, sone of oliver, Reyner of gennes, which Reyner was also at thexeersytle 24 of kyng^t charles : After hym Rychard^t of Normandye, richard, Garyn duck of Lorayn, Geffroy lord^t of bourdeloys, garin, Geoffrey, Hoel Erle of Nauntes, Ogyer the danois, kyng^t of denmarke, Lamberd^t prynce of bruxellys, Naymes Duk 28 of bauyer, Thiery due of ardanne, Basyn of beneuoys, Guy of bourgoyne, Caudeboy kyng^t of Fryse, Ganellon whych dyd the treson at the ende of the iij book at rounceuale, Sampson duk of bourgoyne: Also there 32 was Ryol du mauns, Alory, & guyllermet the scot and many other that were subgettes to Charles. And not-wylhstondyng^t that they were not alwaye with hym They that I haue tofore named^t were alwaye redy for to

and have only
reduced the
ancient rime into
prose,

without adding
anything.

The Peers of
France, though
commonly said to
be 12 or 13,

were more than
that number.

They were
Roland,

oliver,

Reyner,

Richard,

Garin,

Geoffrey,

Hoel,

Oger,

Lambert,

Naymes,

Thiery,

Basin,

Ganelon,

Sampson,

Raoul,

Aloris,

and Guyllermet.

doo his commaundement. And the moost parte of them
that I haue tofore named were wyth hym contynuellely.

¶ Of Fyerabras how he came to exeyte thex-
cersy whole Charles : capitulo [j] 4

THe admyral of spayne named ballan, a paynym
moche grete & puyssant of body and of peple,
had a sone ¹ named Fyerabras the moost merayl-
lous geaunt that euer was seen borne of moder, for of 8
the gretenes & hugenes of hys body and also of his
strengthe to hym was none like. the whyche was
kyngt of Alexandrye & helde vnder hym the contree of
babylone vnto the rede see, and he was lord of roussye, 12
& of coulloygne, & more ouer vnder hym was Iheru-
salem, & reteyned the holy sepulcre of our lord Ihesu
Cryst : & by hys grete puyssauze entred on a tyme in
to Rome where he dyd moche euyl & bare awaye the 16
holy crowne of our lord & the holy naylles & other
relyques ynough, Of whome thys book shal in thende
recounte how they were recoverd. And he was called
Fyerabras of alexandrye, whyche after that many warres 20
& bataylles were maa² in Mormyonde bytwene the
paynynms and thexersy whole Charles Thys fyerabras
moche dyssolute came rydyng by grete furour for to
fynde somme cristen man for to fyght ayenst hym ; & 24
came vnto the lyces of Kynge Charles moche furyous
and eschauffid as he shold fyght al armed and wel
fournysshed of wepen, & was ryght euyl contente that
he fonde no persone to whome he myght fyght, & nygh 28
vnto the lyces he went to beholde the armes of them-
perour charles ²whyche were of the ayle shynyng,
And he sware by Mahommet his god & by his myst
that he wold never departe tyll he had foughтен & 32
made batayll to somme cristen man. And he seeyng

Fierabras, son of
Balan, was a
mighty giant. (50)

He was king of
Alexandria. (53)
Babylon, Russia,
and Jerusalem.
(66)

This Fierabras
rides furiously
up to the camp of
Charles. (76)

wishing to find
some Christian
to fight with him.

¹ B viij. back.

² col. 2.

that no man cam to hym began to crye with an hye
voys : " O kyng of Parys, coward withoute hardynesse,
sende to Iuste ayenst me somme of thy barons of
4 fraunce the moost stronge & the moste hardy, as
Rolland, olyuer, Thyerry, or ogyer the danoys ; &
swere to the by my god Mahon that I shal not refuse
vnto the nombre of vj or viij that they shal be receyued
8 of me. and yf thou make to me refuse of thys that I
of the demaunde I promyse the that tofore or it be nyȝt
thou shalt of me be assayled & dyscomfyted & I shal
smyte of thy heed as meschaunt withoute ony fayllyngt ;
12 and after I shal lede with me Rolland & Olyuer vnhappy,
meschaunt, & caytyfs. For oultragyously & folyly as euyl
and olde thou hast emprysed to come in to thys contreye
wherfro thou shalt haue cause hastely to departe." These

16 wordes or semblable spoken Fyerabras wente hym vnto
the shadowe of a tree and laye there & dysarmed hym
of the armes of whyche he was cladde, and bonde his
hors vnto a tree. and whan he was thus at his ease he

20 began to crye ¹with an hye voys : " o charlemayn,
kyng^t of Parys, where art thou now whome I haue
thys day so ofte called ? wythoute more lenger delaye
sende to Iuste ayenst me rolland or Olyuer, of whom
24 thou makest so grete counte and been so valyaunte, or
ogyer the danoys whom I haue herde preyseed. And yf
perauenture one of them dare not come allone hardyly
late come the two or thre or four of the moost valyaun-
28 est and that they be courageous hardy and wel armed.

And yf the four dare not come late come fyne, For
vnto the nombre of vj of the moost valyauntest of thyn
excersyte I shal not refuse. And I thyuke not to
32 retorne tyl they be confused and destroyed by me. for
be ye sure that it shal neuer be to me reproche that I
be fugytyf for ony frensshe man lyuyng. I haue here
tofore put to deth by the valyaunce of my persone ten

He challenges
Roland or
Oliver, (96)

or any six or
seven French
knights. (102)

He takes off his
arms and lies
down under a
tree, (99)

and retreats his
challenge with
threats.

He declares he has
already slain ten
kings in single
combat. (108)

kynges of grete physsance, and that they coude not resyste ageynst my strengthe in no wyse.

¶ How Richard' of Normandye sayd' to Charles what maner man Fyerabras was : 4 ea. ij

A ssone as fyerabras had fynysshed hys wordes the Emperour Charles whyche ¹wel had herde hym mernaylled moche of hys langage, And demaunded 8 Rychard^t of Normandye what was that Turke that so had cryed wylth soo hye a voys vpon the valyaunce of hys persone. For kyng Charles sayd: "I haue wel herkened what he hath said that he shal not fayle to fyght 12 ayenst vj of the moost valyauntest of myn excersyte." To whome Rychard Duke of normandye ansuerd: "Syr kyng, thys is a man mernayllous ryche and one of the strongest borne of moder: And he is a sarasyn of so 16 grete fyerste that he ne preyseth kyng ne erle ne none other persone of the world."

Charles enquires
who the strange
knight is. (115)

Richard tells
him. (120)

Charles swears
that one of his
knights shall
accept the
challenge. (127)

¶ Whan Charles vnderstood hym he began to clawe his heed, And sware by Saynt Denys of fraunce that 20 he shold not ete ne never drynke tyl one of the pyeres of fraunce shold goo Iuste ageynst hym, And demaunded of Rychard of Normandye how thys Paynym was named. ¶ Rychard answerd: "syr Emperour, this 24 paynym nameth hym self Fyerabras, which is moche to redoubte and hath done moche harme to ² crysten men. He hath slayn the Pope, hanged abbottes, monkes, and nonnes, and hath defouled chyrches. ¶ And he hath 28 robbed & taken awaye the holy crowne of our lord and many other reliques ³for whome ye take grete Payne. And he holdeth Iherusalem in grete subjectyon And the holy sepulcre wherin god was buryed." Wherupon 32 Charles ansuerd: "of thys that thou hast sayd to me I

¹ col. 2.

² Ed. or.

³ C j. back.

am more angry than I was, but knowe thou for certayn
 I shalle never haue loye tyll that my desyre be accom-
 plisshed and that he be vaynquysshed." And of that
 4 fayt al the frensshe men were commoened and troubled
 And ther was not one that presented hym for to goo to
 hym. And whan charles sawe that noo persone was of
 courage for to goo and fyght agenst thys geaunt Fyera-
 8 bras He sayd to Rolland: "My dere newewe, I praye
 that thou dyspose the for tassaylle thys turke & that
 thou doo there thy deuoyr."

and that he will
never rest till
some one does
so. (129)

Charles asks
Roland to accept
the challenge,
(143)

¶ Of the answer of Roulland to the Emperour
 12 sodeynlye and' what it was : capitulo iij

WHAN themperour Charles had spoken thus cur-
 toysly vnto his newewe Rolland, Folyly & wyth-
 oute reason Rolland answerd hym thus: "Fayr
 16 vncle, speke never to me therof, For I had leuer that ye
 were confused and dysmembred than I shold take
 armes or hors for to Iuste lyke as ye say. For on the
 last day that we were so nyghe taken of the paynyms,
 20 that is to say of moo than fyfty thousanl, we yonge
 knyghtes bare the burthen and suffred many mortal
 strokes, of whych olyuer my felowe is quasi hurt vnto
 the deth. For yf ye had not be socoured of vs the hole
 24 destrucyon had been of vs and thende: & whan we
 repayed and were in our lodgys for to take reste at
 euen, whan ye were wel dronken ye maad auante
 openlye that the olde and auncyent knyghtes whyche
 28 ye had brouȝt wyth you for to ayde vs had moche better
 borne them in the fayt of armes and had more stronge
 bataylle than the yonge knyghtes. ¶ And euery man
 knoweth wel how I was that enenyngt assembled and
 32 wary of trauaylle that I took in that day. And by my
 faders soule that was euyll sayd of you. ¶ And now it
 shal be knownen how the olde & auncyent knyghtes shal

but Roland re-
fuses, (145)

reminding Charles
that he had
sneered at him
and his com-
panions the pre-
vious night. (148)

bere them, for by god whyche ought to haue al in his subjectyon there is noo yonge man in my compayne that ener shal be in my fauour and loue yf he take vpon hym to Iuste ageynst the Paynym." Also sone as Roulland⁴

Charles in a rage
strikes him in
the face with his
gauntlet. 165/

had⁴ spoken that worde Themperour hys vncle haning moche Indignacion therat¹ smote hym thwarte the vysage wyth hys ryght gamtelet² that hys nose breste a blood⁴ habundauntly of the stroke. Thenne Roulland⁴ in a

Roland draws his
sword 168
on his uncle.

8 grete furye sette honde on hys swerde whan he sawe hys blood⁴, and had smeton hys vncle yf he had⁴ not be lette by them that were presente. And⁴ whan Charles sawe thentencyon of Roulland⁴ he was mernayllously 12 abasshed & sayd : "O god⁴ of heuen, who wold haue thought that I shold⁴ haue had⁴ vlynye of Rolland⁴ my neneu whyche been knytte to-gyder in one fayth ayenst our aduersaryes ? And⁴ he cometh rennyng agenst me 16 wyth affectyon mortal—He that is moost nexte of my blood⁴ and lignage that here is present, And⁴ that more sonner shold⁴ socoure me than ony other ! ¶ Now I beseche God⁴ that on the eresse suffre⁴ passyon that this 20 day he be punysshed as he is worthy." And⁴ this said in a grete furour he comaunded⁴ the frensshe men & sayd to them anone : "take ye hym, for I shall neuer ete tyl he be delynerd⁴ to deth." Whan the frensshe 24 men vnderstood⁴ the commaundem[e]nt of Charles for to haue accomlysshed⁴ it that one loke⁴ vpon that other for to see who wold⁴ sette fyrt honde vpon hym. And whan Roulland⁴ sawe the fayt he withdrew hym a litel 28 a-parte³ wyth hys swerde in hys honde, eryeng⁴ with an hyghe voys and sayeng⁴ to theym : "yf ye be wyse holde you styll, For I make a-vowe to god⁴ that yf ony of you moeue to come to me I shal make of hys heed⁴ two 32 partes," wherfore there was not one that durst ne that was soo hardy to meue ageynst hym in malyee but were ryght sory & euyll contente of theyr debate. and there

Charles orders
him to be
seized, (176)

but no one dares
to approach
him. (181)

¹ C. ij.

² Ed. gamtetet.

³ col. 2.

vpon the noble Ogier came swetelye to Roulland^t and^t Ogier interposes
sayd^t to hym : "Syr Roulland^t, me semeth ye doo not and settles the
wel for to angre thus your vncle the emperour, whom
4 by reason ye ought aboue alle other to loue and defende
& also supporte." Roulland^t answerd^t, whyche thenne
was refrayned^t of hys Ire : "Syr Ogyer, I promyse you
for a lytel fayt I was determinyd to a grete oulfrage
8 wythoute aduys and^t enclyned, wheroft now I am sory
and me repenteth."

¶ How the kyng charles and' Roulland' been
repreued' by the auctour and' somewhat
12 excused' vpon the debate aforesayd' : ca. v

V Pon the debate of themperour and^t Rolland^t hys
neuewe I wyll a lytyl tarye, and^t speke fyrist to The author's
¹the kyng^t Charles, whyche haste be Instructe
16 syth thyn Infaneye in alle scyences ful of maners digne
of commemmoracyon : whyche knewest the constaunce of
the auneyents and^t the mutabylyte of the yonge peple.
why saydest thou on the euene that the auneyent and^t
20 olde knyghtes in the warre of that day had^t borne them
better than^t the yonge knyghtes? And^t thou knewest wele
that Olyuer was gretely hurte by hys valyaunce, in
suche wyse that he kepeth hys bedde. And^t also Rol-
24 land^t thy neuewe had^t borne the grete burthen of the
bataylle. And^t yf he had^t spoken folly thou oughtest
to haue supported^t hys fyrist moeuyng^t whyche is not in
the puyssance of a man. yf thou haldest taken aduys
28 at the word^t that sayth : "Vindictam differ donee per-
transeat furor : That is to say thou oughtest to dylate
thy vengeance tyll the furour be passed^t, Thou sholdhest
not haue smyton Rolland^t, Sythe whan he sayd^t enyl it
32 was wythout aduys of grete dyereseyon, thou smotest
hym semblably, wythout aduys he drewe hys swerde

Charles ought to
have remembered
the noble deeds of
Roland, and
his youth,

and should have
restrained his
anger, even
under pro-
vocation.

ayenst the, And though thou haddeſt not ſmeton hym thou myghteſt well haue reprehended hym of hiſ offence. Thou oughteſt to remembre ecclēyastes whyche ſayth : “ Nichil agas in operibus iniurie ;” whan ¹a man re- 4 ceyneth wronge & Iniurye it is not good that he doo that whyche he may doo. And also it is whan a perſone hath wel doon hys deuoyr, And of hym of whome he ought to haue hys thanke and preysyng^t is blamed^t, 8 of ſoo moche the more is he euyll contente and wrothe. For hys fayt is reputed for nougat. In lyke wyſe was it of Rolland^t whyche thought more to haue be alowed^t & preyſed for the grete deuoyr that he dyd^t than to here 12 that the Emperor ſayd^t that tholle knygħtes haſt doon better than the young. but now I wyl retorne to the, O Rolland^t, whiche haſt been ſo noble. Fro whens cometh in the ſuche audacyte to ſpeke ageynſt thyn vncle 16 whyche hath allwaye doon ſo wel to the that hys werkes been worthy to be remembred^t? To hym which is emperor Kynge of Fraunce and lord of ſo grete cremeur, and to thyn vncle as taken debate and anſuered^t out- 20 rageouſly was it not reaſon that thou oughteſt to ſuffre hym, and he not the? yf he ſmote the wyth hys gaunilet by maner of correctyon oughteſt thou to drawe thy ſwerde to hym? Thou haſt not in remembraunce the 24 obeyſaunce of ysaac whyche he had to hys fader: thou were not aduyſed of thys that thappotle ſaith : “ ye young men ²kepe your courage And put not the furour therof in exerſite,” yf the Emperor for hys dysporte 28 preyſed thauncyent knygħtes yet ſayd^t he not that thou haddeſt not doon wel. ¶ And Saynt Poule ſayth in hys epiſtle, that a man ſhould not repreue hym that is more auineyent than hym ſelf, but a man ought to en- 32 tretene and ſupporte hym as his fader, but the dede is ſuche that a perſone reputeth not an Iniurye to hym ſayd^t to be lytel ne yf he be hurtē that he be pacyent:

¹ col. 2.² C iij.

Roland ought to
have remembered
the respect he
owed to his uncle,

according to the
words of St. Paul:
¹ Rebuke not an
elder, but entreat
him as a father?

wherfore it is good to thynke tofore or he speke it, And gladly to doo ne say thyng but yf it be good.

¶ How Olyuer was dysposed to syght agenst
4 Fyerabras, notwythstondyng that he was
hurt, after many wordes : capitul^o vj

MOche wroth was Charles wyth Rolland hys
8 neuewe And sayd to hys Peres of Fraunce :
“Lordes, O how I am in dyuers thoughtes of
my neuewe Rolland, whyche wold haue Inuryed my
person, To whome I had more affyaunce than to ony
man lyuyng! I wote neuer whome I ought to loue, ne
12 whome I ought to hate. And yet further¹more I haue
noo man now present for to Iuste ageynst thys Paynym
that hath chalenged me.” ¶ Thenne aroos vp tofore
hym Naymes the Due of baayers whych sayd to the
16 kyng: “Syr Emperour, I praye you & requyre that ye
leue these wordes noyouses. Alle shal be wel And
another shal goo Iuste ageynst the sarasyn.” But neuer-
theles the kyng^t was in grete thought, For there was

20 none that wold goo ne take it on hym. ¶ Incontynente
the tydylges of the debate of charles and Rolland were
brought to Olyuer, whyche was in another place seek
in hys bedde. And also how Fyerabras was comen

24 And that there was no persone present wyth the kyng
for to Iuste ayenst hym. And hereupon the noble erle
Olyuer, replenysshed wyth a noble courage and wyth
an ardaunt desyre for to playse the kyng, whan he had

28 herde these tydylges aroos oute of hys bedde and began
for to scratche an^t strayne hys armes and to fele yf it
were possyble to hym to bere armes.

And he thus dooyng^t his woundes began newly to
32 opene that the bloock sprange oute of the dystresse.

¶ And not wythstondyng alle that as he that sette not
moche therby

Charles appeals to
his knights to
settle who shal
accept the chal-
lenge. (190)

Naymes tries to
cheer him. (196)

Oliver hears how
none can be found
to accept the
challenge. (206)

He calls for his
arms. (210)

His wounds break
out afresh,

For the grete lone and desyre ¹that he had to the kyng^t [he] dyd do bynde hys woundes the beste wyse he myght and after sayd to garin his squyer that he shold brynge hym hys armes, For he wold arme hym ⁴ for to goo Iust ayenst the saresyn. To whome garyn sayd : "syr Olyuer, in thonour of god take pyte of your owne persone. For me thynketh ye wil willyngly slee your self." Olyuer sayd to hym : "do my commaunde- ⁸ ment no man ought to tarye to seeche hys honour and auancement and renommee. And wyth good ryght I may employe my self for to serue my prynce and singuler lord, and sythe that I see that noo freusshe man ¹² auanceth hym I shall not faylle at the poynte, for the comyn prouerbe sayth : 'At nede a man knoweth hys frende.' Now anone brynge to me myn armes wythoute more taryeng." And so Olyuer dyd doo arme ¹⁶ hym by the sayd Garyn hys squyer, whiche sette on his legge harnays, hys lawberke, hys helme, and hys harnays necessarie. And whan he was alle furnysshed he took hys swerde named hauteclere, the whyche swerde ²⁰ he moche loued.

Oliver insists,

and Garin helps him to arm, 234

and brings him his horse, 240

Oliver mounts, 241

takes his arms,

After brought he hym hys hors the moost speyall that he loued whyche was named Ferraunt despaygne. And whan he was brought tofore hym alle saddled ² and brydded The Ioly and gentyl Olyuer sprange in to the saddle wythoutte settynge foot in the styrop, and sette hys shelde at hys ease and in hys honde a myghty spere & sharpe whych garyn took to hym. And after ²⁸ smote the hors wyth the spores so harde that in the leepyng he maad hys hors to bowe vnder hym. It was a good syght to see Olyuer on horsback wyth a moche fyers countenaunce. And they that were presente by- ³² songht Ihesu Cryst our redemar that he shold take hym in hys kepyng. For in that day he shold fyght ageynst the moost stronge and moost fyers paynym that euer

¹ C iii, back.

² col. 2.

was born of moder or euer was in thys world, That is Fyerabras of Alexandrye, sone of the admyral Ballant of spayne, of whome we shalle see by the playsyr of
 4 god^t the termynacyon after. ¶ He beyng^t thus on horsback in grete poynt vpon hys vysage and vpon his body he maad^t the sygne of the crosse in the name of Ihesus and commaunded hym self to the wylle of god,
 8 whyche that day shold^t be to hym in conforte and ayde after hys good^t enteneyon. And^t of euery man he was byseen and knownen that he had^t hys hert hole in hys body for to do gretefeat of armes: & so rode forth
 12 vnto the lyees of ¹themperour Charles with whom was the Due naymes, guyllam de scot, Gerard^t de mondy-
 dyer, and Ogyer the danoys, wyth other barons of fraunce²: & emonge alle other there was Rolland moche
 16 sorouful of the wordes that he had^t ayenst his vncle the kyng, for gladly he wold hane doo the bataylle yf he had not wythsayed^t it tofore the kyng^t whan he was requyred. Thus Olyuer beyng^t seen tofore Charles was
 20 moche alowed^t & preyseed^t of one and^t other & moche affectuously byholden. And the said^t olyuer put doun his helme and^t byhelde the lodgyee of the kyng^t, And^t reuerently came & salewed^t hym, and^t after sayd to hym:
 24 "Noble emperour, puyssaut^t, redoubted, and my syn-
 guler lord, I beseche you to here me ye know wel that there ben iij yeres past that I haue been in your seruyce and haue had of you no rewarde ne wages. I
 28 you suplye with al myn herte that now ye wyll rewarde me wyth a yeste that I shal desyre." To whom the kyng ansuered^t: "Olyuer, noble erle, I assure to you by my fayth that I shal do it wyth a good^t wylle. And^t
 32 assone as we shall be in fraunce there is neyther cyte, borugh, ne castel that ye wyl haue ne none other thyngt that to me is possyble & faysyble that shal be denyed to you." "Syr kyng," said ³Olyuer, "I am not comen

commends him-
self to God, (256).

and rides
to Charles's
tent, (257)

Roland regrets
his refusal of the
challenge, (258)

Oliver salutes
the king,

reminds him of
his long and
faithful services,
(268)

¹ C iiiij.

² Ld. Freunee.

³ col. 2.

and demands to be allowed to accept the challenge of Fierabras. (287)

Charles remonstrates with him. (292)

Charles positively refuses his permission to Oliver,

but Ganelon insists that,

according to the law, Oliver must fight Fierabras,

Charles is obliged to consent,

to you for to demaunde suche thyng. But I demaunde and reynyre of you the bataylle ayenste the paynym so oute of mesure. And at thys houre I graunte to you alle my goodes and seruyces & for this yefte to be quyte 4 of them." whan the frensshe men had herde Olyuer they were all abasshed of hys prowesse & eche of them loked on other and said emonge them: "A! saynt marie, what hath Olyuer founden, whyche is hurt quasi 8 to deth & wyl now goo to fyght and bataylle?" "O Olyuer," answerd charles, "thou hast loste thy wytte, For thou knowest wel that wyth a spere heed square and shiarpe thou hast be hurte and wounded mortally 12 and now thou wylt abandonne thy self to a gretter daunger mortall. beware! Retorne, and take thy reste. For truse well that for noo thyng I shal suffre the to do that fayte sythen that thou arte not presently in 16 helthe of thy body." Vpon thys poynte aroos ganellon and Andrewe the traytres that dyd the trayson as the laste book shall make meneyon.

¶ And Ganellon sayd: "Syr Kyng, ye hane or- 20 deygned in Fraunce that it, whyche by ij of vs is Iuged, ought to be holden, and so is it that we ij Iuge & ordyne that Olyuer shalle goo and doo ¹the bataylle." wherfore the kyng ful of maltaiente, wyth coloure 24 chaunged, answerd: "Ganellon, thou arte of euyll dysposycyon wythout spekyng that whyche is honourable. Sythe it so is he shal doo the bataylle & it may none otherwyse be but that he be dede. But I swere to the 28 my trouth that yf he be taken or put to deth al the gold of the world shal not sauе the but that thou shalt dye a vylaynous deth & I shal destroye thy lygnage." "Syr Emperour," sayd Ganellon, "god and our lady 32 kepe me;" & after the traytre sayd to hym self secretly: "God forbede that euer Olyuer reterne but that he hane hys heed smyton of." and whan themperour sawe that

he myght not gaynsaye but that olyuer shold^t goo and^t
doo the bataylle ayenst Fyerabras he sayd: "I praye
god^t of the fymamente gyue the grace to do wel & that
^{and gives Oliver his glove.}
4 thou mayst retorne wyth Ioye," And^t took hys ryght
glove and threwe it to Olyuer, the which he receyued^t
wyth grete desyre & wylle in thankynge hym ryght
humbly and takyng leue of al moche swetely.

8 ¶ How Olyuer was requyred^t by his fader
reyner that he shold not fyght wyth the
geaunt, but for al that he went forth:
ca. vij

12 i **W**HAN that Olyuer was lyeenced^t for to goo do
hys bataylle and^t was redy to departe, Reyner
of genes hys fader came to the kyng and by
grete compassyon kneled down at hys feet and^t sayd:
16 "Syr kyng, I erye you mercy haue pyte of my sone
and^t me. I say as for me ye wyl al dyscomforde me
whan I see that my sone gooth to perdyeyon seeyng
the daunger that hys persone is in. I say also that ye
20 take pyte of his presumptuous yongthe, of hys desyre
ouer couetous, and^t of hys body wounded^t daungerously.
ye knowe wel that a man that is hurte so sore and^t that
hath loste of hys bloode^t may not wel endure bataylle."

24 But Reyner loste hys Payne, For the kyng had gyuen ^{but in vain.}
to hym hys glove in sygne of lycence, And^t not-wyths-
toneyng^t these wordes doubted^t no thyng^t but that he
shold^t wel do hys devoyr and^t valyauntly. And yet
28 ageyn reyner requyred the kyng and sayd: "Syr kyng,
in thonour of hym that for vs deyed^t on the crosse
suffre not my sone to Iust. Alas! whan I shal haue ^{Reyner again}
lost my sone where shal I become? and ye may wel ^{protests and}
appeals.
32 fynde other for to take thys bataylle in honde?" Them-
perour Charles answerd^t: "Reyner, ye knowe wel that

Oliver bids his
comrades fare-
well.

Charles gives him
his blessing.

I may not gaynsaye that I haue to hym graunted. For in sygne of ly-teeence I haue gyuen hym my gloue, wherof Olyuer was contente." & thenne Olyuer sayd wyth an hye voys tofore alle the people: "Syr kyng,⁴ and alle ye barons, I beseche you alle of a yefte, that is that I requyre you yf I haue mesprysed or mysdoon in dede or in worde ony ayenst you that in the name of god^t ye pardonne me." whan the fressh men herde hym so speke There was none but that he wepte tenderly, and soo takyng^t hys leue wyth his standard reyseyd The kyng^t blessyd hym in makynge the sygne of the crosse, And wepyng comauanted hym in the kepyng ¹² of the fader of the sone & of the holy ghoost.

¶ How Olyuer spake to Fyerabras, whyche sette noo thynge by hym, with other disputacions: capitulo viij 16

Oliver rides up to
Fierabras, (311)

and demands his
name. (351)

Fierabras tells
him, and boasts
of his exploits.
(352)

Olyuer departed^t & rode forth on hys waye & taryed not tyl that he cam where as fyerabras was, which was al vnarmyd and laye in the shadewe, and whan Olyuer had aresonned hym The paynym torned ²⁰ his heed ayenst hym and dayned vmethe to loke on hym. For he setted^t nought by hym by cause he was so lytel of stature to the regarde of Fyerabras. And thenne Olyuer said to the sarasyn: "Awake, thou, ²⁴ thou hast thys day so ofte called^t vs that I am come hyther. And I praye the that thou telle to me thy name." Fyerabras ansperd^t to hym: "by Mahoun, my god, to whome I owe honour I am the moost ryche man that is in the ²⁸ world borne. Fyerabras of alexandrye am I named^t: I am he that thou knowe that dyd^t doo destroye rome your eyte, & slew the Pope and many other and bare awaye the reliques that I there founde, For which ye ³² take grete paine and laboure to reconquer them. And

furthermore I holde Iherusalem that fayre cyte, and the sepulere in whych your god^t rested." Olyuer ansuerd : " by my fayth, I haue gladly herde the say that whyche 4 thou hast sayd. And^t yf it be trouthe that thou hast sayd for certeyn now thou mayst repute thy self well vnhappy and myschaunt. Now wythoute more talkyng^t Oliver bids him arm himself. (384) make the redy and arme the . seest thou yonder the

8 frensshe men that doo no thyngē but byholde vs? wherfore depesshe the, or¹ by the god on whome I byleue I shalle smyte the there as thou lyest." whan Fyerbras herde that he spake soo hardyly he began to 12 lawhe and sayd : " I am wel admeruaylled fro whens that cometh to the suche presumpcion to speke so hastyly, but for trouthe I shal not remeue fro hens tyl² I knowe who thou arte and^t of what lygnage.

16 And whan thou hast tolde to me thy name thou shalt see me armed." Olyuer ansuerd to hym : " O paynem, Fierbras asks his name and rank. (388)

know thou for trouthe that or it be nyght thou shalt knowe what I am. by me sendeth to the charles the

20 Emperour, my redoubte^d lord, that for the conservacion³ of thy body and the saluacyon of thy soule thou leue the creaunce of thy god^t Mahoun, & of other ydolles, whyche ben but abusyon and decepeyton : whych haue

24 neyther wytte, ne reason, ne feelyng, ne good^t vnderstanding^t. wherfore that thou enclyne the to consent^t and thynke fro hens forth to bylene in god^t almygthy the holy Trynyte, the fader, the sone, and the holy

28 ghoost, iij persones in one essence & of one wylle : whyche hath made heuen & erthe and^t al that there in dwelleth : whyche for our saluacion wold^t be borne of the vyrgyn marie. & whan thou shialt haue this 32 bylene wyth the holy sacrament of baptesme, which is vpon this establisshed^t, thou mayst come to the glorye eternal. and^t yf thou do not lyke as I haue taught the

Oliver calls on Fierbras to renounce Mahomet, (395)

and repeats the articles of the Christian faith. (398)

¹ Ed. For. ² C v, back.

³ Ed. consecracion.

I am here redy to doo bataylle ayenst the, and of two thynges thou must doo that one. Fyrst, that thou departe oute of thys contree as ouercomen & to bere nothyng with the, or thou must ¹ come and fyght ayenst ⁴ me. For tenhaunce thy body & to susteyne thy fals lawe."

Fierabras is surprised at his presumption, (102)

Fyerabras answerd: "whatsomeuer thou arte thou arte ouer presumptuous to haue Intencyon for to fyght agynst me. For surely yf thou see me on ⁸ fote wythoute armes thou shal be wel hardy yf thou tremble not for drede to approche me. But by the god in whome thou bylewest Say to me what man is Charlemayn, For it is long sythe I herde hym fyrst preyseed ¹² and redoubted in many contrees: and also that I may haue tydynges of rolland & Olyuer, of Ogyer the danoys and of gerarde de mondydyer, For by my trouthe I wold fayn be acqueynted with them." Olyuer ansuerd: ¹⁶

and asks him to describe Charles and the douze peres, (108)

Oliver tells him that Charles is without an equal,

"Paynym, vpon that thou me demaundest I telle to the that Charles thempour is so grete a maystre that there is no man in the World may compare to hym, as wel for the valure of hys persone, of hys councyl, & of hys ²⁰ maners, as of hys puyssauice and rychesses Innumerable of regarde. Of hys neuewe Rolland he is wythoute pere, Olyuer lytel lasse than he; and as for the other frensshe men emonge al people humayn they be valy- ²⁴ aunte men. but thyse wordes haue noo place here, depesshe the and arme the, For by the god on whom I byleue yf thou ² anaunce the not I shalle smyte the wyth thys swerde of stede." Fyerabras began to lyfte vp hys heed and sayd: "By my god mahomet, yf I thought not that it shold be my dyshonour I shold now smyte of thy heed." Olyuer ansuerd: "I praye the leue thys pleyng, For or it be euen thou shal knowe what I am, ³² For certeyn I haue enteneyon to plunge my swerde in thy bely," where vpon Fyerabras was not wroth, so mochie noble was he, and rested hys heed vpon hys

and again challenges him, (125)

¹ col. 2.

² C. vj.

shieldē and sayd to Olyuer : "I sette not therby, but Pierabras asks
I praye the telle to me thy name & thy lygnage." Oliver his name.
(411)

Olyuer sayd to hym : "my name is garyn, and am
4 borne in perrogort, sone of a man calle^d Iosue, whyche
came that other day in to fraunce where I was adoubed^d
knyght by the noble kyng^t Charles and am ordeyned^d
for to defende hys ryght & also to fygght ayenst the.
8 wherfor conclude wythoute more taryeng & arme the &
take thy hors, for I am redy to doo the bataylle yf thou
be soo hardy to abyde me." Fyerabras wold not
sentee to the bataylle, For hym thought that olyuer was

12 to litel to Iuste ayenst hym and sayd to hym : "Garyn,
I demaunde of the wherfore is not comen hyther rolland^d
ne Olyuer or Gerard^d or Ogyer, whyche been of so grete
renom mee ¹as I hane her^d say?" Olyuer ansuered :

16 "The cause wherfore they be not comen to the is for
they sette nought by the & they hane desdayn to come,
but I am comen to the as he that taketh noo regarde
to theyr Intencyon and shal do the bataylle ayenst the
20 yf thou wylt abyde it. But I swere to the by saynt
Petre the appostle of Ihesu Cryst that yf thou arme the
not I shal smyte the to the deth wyth thys darte that I
holde in my honde." "Garyn," answerd Fyerabras, "I

24 shal say to the that sythe I was adoubed^d knyght I
Iusted neuer but ayenst a kyng^t, an erle, or a baron of
grete valure, and thou art departed^d of a lowe hous for to
say that I shold^d haue adoo wyth the : it shold^d be to me

28 ouer grete dyshonour yf thou were put to deth by me, but
for the goodwylle that I knowe in the whych^t is moche
noble I am contente that thou smyte me and I shal falle

doun to therthe, and take thou my hors & my shidle
32 and goo thou to kyng^t Charles and say to hym that
thou hast vaynquysshed^d me. And yf I do thys for the
I do to the grete amytye And thou oughtest for thys tym^e

to be contente." ¶ On whiche wordes Olyuer coude

Fierabras asks
him why Ozier or
Oliver has not
come to meet
him. (451)

Oliver says it is
because they
despise him. (457)

Fierabras says he
never fights ex-
cept with a king
or a noble. (465)

but offers to give
up his horse and
shield to Oliver.
(470)

not haue pacience but that he sayd to hym : "Thy fayt lyeth in noo thyngē but in wordes full of ¹folyshe presumpsyon. I am of thys intencio[n] that byfore euensonge tyme I shal make thy hede flee from thy sholdres. ⁴

Oliver threatens him. (184.)

I am none hare ne wyld beest for to be aferde, And thou knowest the comyn prouerbe that sayth that there is a tyme of spekyng^a and tyme of beyng styllē, And of one and that other one may be reputed^b a fool. Now ⁸ come of & depesshe the of that I haue sayd the or

Fierabras asks for one of the douz-
peres.

ellys I shal slee the." Fyerabras answerd : "I desyre ne praye the of no thyngē but that thou sende to me Rolland or olyuer or one of thother knyghtes of the ¹² rounde table. And yf one of them be not hardy for to come, late come ij or iij or iiiij attones For by me they shal not be refused." In makyn^c these desputacyons

He sees the blood
run from Oliver's
wound. (187.)

Olyner which sore was hurte the day tofore his woundes ¹⁶

opened by force of rydyng^d and of chauffyng^e & bledde sore so that fyerabras sawe the blood renne down by is knee, And demandide of hym fro whens came that

and asks if he is
wounded? Oliver
says, "No."

blood^f that soe renneth down to therthe : "I trowe thou ²⁰ be hurte." Olyner sayd : "I am not hurte but my hors is harde atte spore wherof he is blody." Fyerabras behelde & sawe it was not of the hors and answerd :

Fierabras offers
to cure him with
the holy balm.
(519.)

"Certes, garyn, thou sayest not sooth for thou art hurte ²⁴ in thy body & I knowe it wel by the blood^f that cometh

but Oliver re-
fuses.

²down by thy knee: but see what I shal do for the: there been two flagons hangyng^g on the saddle of my hors whyche ben full of the bawme that I conquered^h in ²⁸

Iherusalem, & it is the same of whyche your godⁱ was enbawmed wyth whan he was taken down fro the crosse and layed in hys graue. hye the, and goo

drymke therof, & I promyse to the that Incontynent ³² thou shalte be hole and thenne thou shal mowe defende the wel wythoutte daunger." ¶ Olyner ansuerd that he wold not & that he sayd was folye. Thenne

fyerabras ansuerd that he was a fool wythoute reason,
And that it myght happe to repente hym.

¶ How after many dysputaeyous Olyuer ayded'
4 arme Fyerabras, and' of the ix meruayllous
swerdeſ, And' how olyuer named' his name:
ca. ix

8 **W**HAN fyerabras had long abyden lyeng^t wyth-
oute arysyng^t for Olyuer he satte vp and
after sayd^t: "Garyn, I demaunde the wyth-
oute hydynge of what strengthe is Rolland & Olyuer
that been soo moche redoubtē of paynemis, & of what

Fierbras asks
him to describe
Roland and
Oliver. (525)

12 gretenes ben they of?" Olyuer answerd^t: "as toweliyng Oliver tells him,
to rolland he is a lytel lasse of body than ¹I am, but of
courage he is right hardy to fyght and so chyuahous
that there is no man lynyng in the world lyke to hym.

16 For he neuer faught yet ayenst ony man in the wold^t
but he vaynquysshed^t hym. and as for Olyuer thou
mayst wel apperceyue that he is a man moche semblable
and lyke to me and of the same gretenes that I am."

20 Thenne sayd^t Fyerabras: "by the fayth that I owe to
my god appollyn & to Termagaunt thou tellest to me a
thyng wherof I am moche abasshed^t. For yf they
were suche foure as thou tellest to me, I wold^t not refuse

Fierbras says he
would not be
afraid of four
such. (536)

24 them ne lene them tyl I had put them to deth wylth my
swerde." Olyuer coude no lenger forbere ne hane
paeyence vnto the delayes of fyerabras but made redy
to smyte hym, wherfore Fyerabras sayd^t to hym: "thou

28 wylt hane no pyte on thyn owne persone,² By mahoun
my god^t yf I aryse & take my hors Charles thy kyng^t ne
alle thy goddes³ shal not redeeme the but that thou shalt
Incontynente be slain. For onely yf thou see me tofore
32 the on my feet thou shalt be moche corageous yf thou
tremble not for fere."

¹ C vij.

² Ed. personr.

³ Ed. goodes.

Oliver at last
induces Fierabras
to rise. (516)

He is 15 feet
high.

He bids Oliver go
back and send
Roland, or Ogier,
(562)

but Oliver refuses.

Fierabras asks
Oliver to help him
to arm.

Oliver does so.

Was not this a
noble example of
chivalry and
courtesy?

Olyuer answerd: "thou hast vaunted the ouer-longe to doo thyng whiche thou neuer sawest in thy lyue. For better it were to speke by mesure, for by ouer ¹moche spekyng otherwyse than trouthe may ⁴brynge the soone to myschyef." Herof was fyerasbras strongly despyteous And roos on hys feet in a grete fyersnes, whyche was by comyn estymacyon xv foot longe. And yf he wold haue be baptysed and byleue in ⁸Ihesu Cryst ther had neuer be seen a man of his value. And whan he was a-foot he had grete dysplaysyr by cause he had not a valyaunte man to Iuste agenst hym, and sayd to Olyuer: "In trouthe I haue grete pyte of ¹²thyng affaire for the noblesse of the courage that I see in the. I am yet contente for this present tyme that thou retorne And sende to me Rolland, or Olyuer, or Ogyer, or Gerard de mondydyer, and expressly say to Olyuer ¹⁶that I shall not passe thys auauntgarde tyl I haue conquerd hym." Olyuer myght no lenger abyde the paynym for yf it had not be for hys honour he had smyten hym dyuers tymes vnarm'd. And whan he ²⁰must nedes fyght Fyerbras called Olyuer and prayed hym that he wold helpe to arme hym. Olyuer demaunded yf he myght truste hym. Fyerbras answerd: "helpe me hardyly, For I swere and assure the that ²⁴neuer whyle I lyue shal I be traytour to no man lyuyng." And vpon that promyse olyuer dyd his diligence ²to arme hym, and he took fyrst lether of arabye and cladde hym therwyth, & after hys cote & ²⁸his habergeon of stele wele bouched & polysshed: & after sette on hys heel an helme garnysshed wyth precyous stones rychely. But wel consydered the facyon of thys paynym and of this eristen man there ³²was grete loyalte & curtosye bytwene them whyche were assenbled for to make mortal warre and eche to slee other, and yet they dyd eche to other synguler

¹ col. 2.

² C vij. back.

seruyce. Fyrst, the paynym had^t grete ptye for to destroye Olyuer For he was not hys pere ne egal to the regarde of hys persone. And on that other parte
 4 whan he sawe hym herte and the blood^t descendeth to therthe he wold^t haue gynen to hym of the preeuous bawme. Semblably Olyuer, whan he fonde hym dysarmed^t he had^t slayne hym wythoute grete Payne yf he
 8 had^t wold^t, and after he was soo curtoys that he ayded^t to arme hym that shold^t fyȝt ayenst hym. ¶ O, what
 12 grete loyalte of noblesse was bytwene them whyche were of fayth and creunce contrarye! I suppose that
 god^t shold^t be wel pleased^t yf there were suche confyaunce emonge crysten men and so ful of naturel noblesse.
 But I retorne ageyn to my mater. Whan Fyerabrus
 16 was wel armid^t he than^tked^t moche Olyuer, And after
 gyrdle hys swerde named^t plourance,² and in the arsone
 20 of his sady^t he had^t tweyne other of whom that one was named^t baptysme and that other grabam, the whyche swerdes were maad in suche wyse that there was none
 24 harnoys but they wold^t breke and cutte a-sondre. And
 who that wyl demaunde the manyer how they were made & by whom [I wyl saye] after that whyche I
 28 haue founden by wrytyng!. ¶ On a tyme there were
 thre brethern of one fader engendred, of whome that
 one was named^t Galaus, that other Munyficans, & the
 thyrd^t was called^t Agnisax. These iij brethern made
 ix swerdes, eche of them thre. Agnisax the thyrd
 brother maad^t the swerde named baptesme, whiche
 32 had^t the pomel of gold^t and^t wel enameld^t, & also plourance,² and after Grabam; whyche thre swerdes
 fyerabrus had^t as I haue sayd. Munyficans, that other
 brother, made another swerde whyche was named
 durandal, Whyche Rolland had^t that other was called
 sauuognye and that other Cortan whyche Ogyer the
 danoys had^t. ¶ And galaus, that other brother, maad^t

Would that there
were such between
all Christian
men!

Fierabrus takes
his three swords,

made by one of
three brothers,

by another of
whom Durandal
and Cortan were
made,

¹ col. 2.

² Ed. plousance.

and by the third
Joyous and
Floberge.

Fierabras takes
with him the two
vessels of balm.

Of the nature of
his horse.

Fierabras wishes
Oliver to retire.
(556)

Oliver refuses.
(565)

Fierabras con-
fines Oliver on his
faith and loyalty
to reveal his true
name. (637)

the swerd that was named Floberge, another called haulteclere, and that other Ioyouse, whyche Charlemayn had for a grete specyalte. and these ¹iij brethern aforesayd were smythes & wrought the sayd swerdes. 4 And in thys poynte Fyerabas mounted on hors backe And took hys two barylles by hym ful of bawme, And henge aboue his necke his shielde whiche was heuy and bended wyth yron and stele by meruayllous strengthe. 8 And in the myddle of the same shielde was paynted hys god Appollyn. and after that he had commaunded hym to hys god he took his spere in hys honde, whyche was sharpe & mortally heded with stele. It was meruaylle 12 to see the copulence of the sayd Paynym which sat on hys hors named feraunt of spayne, grete, thycke, & pommellyd, whyche had a speyal condycyon : For whan his mayster in fyghtyng put to the grounde hys aduersarie this hors maad gretter warre wythout comparyson than hys mayster. and thus they beyng on horsbek Fyerabas sayd to Olyuer : "O garyn, gracyous and curtoys, yet I admoneste the for the gentylnesse that 20 thou hast doon to me that thou wilt retorne without fyghtyng; For I haue pyte of thy valyaunte courage." Olyuer answerde : "alwaye thou spekest of grete folye for I shal not departe for to be in daunger to be dys- 24 membred. For I am not he that thou wenest to make aferde : for ²by the helpe of the blessyd Ihesus thys day shialt thou be ydden or deed or lyuyng vnto charles the emperour." Whan Olyuer had so spoken Fyerabas was meruayllously abashed of thys man that wold not lete for menace that he maak to hym, but wold hane the bataylle ayenst hym & sayd to hym : "Thou art a crysten man and hast grete fayth at the mysteryes by 28 you ordeyned, but I coniure the by the fonte in whyche thou were baptysed, and by the fayth that thou hast gynen to the crosse wheron thy god henge and was

nayled, And by the loyalte that thou owest to charles themperour, to rolland, and to the other pyeres of fraunce, thou say and telle to me the veryte of thy ryght
4 name and of thy lygnage." Olyuer answerd: "Certes,

Paynem, he that enduced the to speke to me in suche wyse hath wel taught the, For gretter ne more hyely myghtest thou not adiure me. Wherfore knowe thou
8 that I am Olyuer the sone of Reyner, the Erle of Genes,
the moost espeeyal felowe of rolland, and am one of the
twelue peres." "In fayth," sayd Fyerabras, "I alwaye thought wel that thou were another than thou saydest

12 to me, seen thyn ardaunt courage and that I coude not make the aferde vpon the fayt of bataylle. And how, sir Oliuer, ¹are ye hurte in the body? it shold be grete dyshonour for me to ouercome you in bataylle & destroye
16 you. For I acounte you but a dede man whyche shold be a grete reproche, wherfore retorne ageyn for we haue don for this tyme: For alle the golde in the world I wold not doo suche a shame as to Iuste ayenst you."

20 Thenne ansuerd Olyuer: "certeynlye ye shal. For by my hede whan we shal be assembled ye shal haue no courage to Iape ne playe wyth me for I shal make you wel to fele that I am noo dede man." And after Olyuer

24 admonested hym swetely in this manere and sayd:
"O paynym, or we procede ony ferther now I admonest the that thou byleue in god of heuen almyghty whiche hath made the and fourmed, to whome al thyng^t owen

28 honoure and synguler creaunce. For he that taketh not aduys is borne in an euyl houre. And forsake Mahoun and thy goddes ful of abuse and decepcyon, & dyspose the to be baptysed, & thou shalt haue to thy
32 frende the grete charles and a speyall felowe of Rolland the chyualrous. And furthermore al the dayes of my lyf I shal never forsake thy compayne." fyerabras ansuerd to hym: "thou remembrest a grete folye.

Oliver tells him,
(650)

wnereupon Fiera-
bras presses to
retire on account
of his wound.

Oliver again begs
Fierabras to be-
come Christian.

¹ C viij, back.

The Saracen
refuses.

For for no thyng^t I shalle not blyene in your god ne
shial¹ forsake ne abandoune Mahoun. But on thys day
yf thou arte frende of rolland^t, as thou sayest, so des-
playsaunt ne sory was he neuer as I shial make hym for 4
the."

¶ How Olyuer and fyerabras began to fyȝt, &
of the prayer of Charles for Olyuer, & of
other maters: capitulo

x 8

Fierabras offers
Oliver some of
the bawm,

but he refuses it.

The fight begins.
(602)

The French pray
for Oliver's
success,

and especially
Charles.

At the first onset
their spears are
broken,

Fyerabras & olyuer were longe on horsback and it
was so that fyerabras wold not lete hys hors
renne ageynst Olyuer, But sayd: "my frende, I
praye the þat thou drynke of my barylles & by the 12
verteue of the bawme that is therin Incontynent thou
shalt be heled & shal mowe wel defende thy self ayenst
me." "God forbede," sayd olyuer, "that by drynke
thou be conquerd of me but by franke bataylle and 16
harnoys fourbysshed." And thys sayd they lete theyr
horses renne wyth a grete courage for to Iuste at vtter-
aunce. And as they came that one ageynst that other
the frensshe men whyche were in their lodgys had grete 20
fere and drede leste it shold mysfalle to Olyuer. And
emonge al other charles al wepyngt sayd: "O blesseyd
Ihesus, I requyre the that at this stroke thou haue pyte
of Olyuer my ²baron in suche wyse that I may see hym 24
ageyn alyue & in helthe!" and after fermently came
in to hys chapel hydyngt his vysage wyth hys mantel
and kneled before the crosse and embraced the eruefyx
wyth grete teeres, sayengt: "My lord god, of whome I 28
see here the remembraunce, I byseche the to helpe
Olyuer, whyche for the xaltacyon of the cristen fayth
is in daunger." Thus in contemplacyon of Charles
fyerabras and olyuer gaf so grete strokes vpon theyr 32
shildes that the hedes of their speres were by force
bowed and entred that the fyre sprange out on al

¹ col. 2.² D.j.

sydes, and the shaftes of theyr speres were trouchonned
that the pyeces flewe in the ayer. The reynes of the
brydles of theyr horses wente oute of theyr hondes.

- 4 Bothe tweyne were so astoned of the stroke and theyr
even so troubled that in a grete whyle they knewe not
on whos syde they were torned, and after that bothe
were comen to them self Fyerabras drewe plouraunce
8 hys swerde that henge by hys syde, And Olyuer took
haulteclere meruaylously shynyng & cam vpon Fyerabras
and on hyghe on hys helme gaf hym so grete a
stroke that the floures and precyous stones wherof it
12 was ennobled and garnysshed made to flee to the
grounde ; and with the same stroke in descendyng he
touched hys sholder, but the lether of capadoce saueld
hym. And the paynym was smyton so harde and sore
16 that bothe hys feet were oute of the styropes and
almoost was ouerthrownen, wherof the frensshe men
sayden al wyth one voys : “ A ! saynt marye, what a
stroke hath Olyuer gyuen² to thys paynym ! ” “ ye,”
20 sayd rolland, “ meruaylously he smote hym ! ¶ Now
wold god of heuen,” sayd Rolland, “ that I were now
vnder the shelde of my gentyl felowe Olyuer, For of
me or of the paynym shold shortly be seen the ende.”
24 ¶ To whom the Emperour answerd : “ Ha ! euyl gloton,
I hane wel herde the spoken felon coward. It is not
now tyme that thou so say, For atte beginnyng thou
woldest not goo, wherof many tymes shalt thou be of
28 me reproched.” vpon whych thyng rolland ansuerd no
thyng but that he shold do as it plesed hym. fyerabras
al astoned of the stroke & replenysshed of grete wrath
with his swerd named plouraunce came wyth a course
32 vpon olyuer, & gaf hym a stroke³ vpon his helme so
sharply that he trenched moo than ve maylles, and
hurte euyl hys hors and smote of the spore of his foot
& a parte of hys thye, wheroute the blode ranne

and both are stunned.

Oliver cuts off a part of Fierabras' helmet, 616.

and nearly unhorses him.

Fierabras strikes Oliver on the helmet,

and wounds his horse. (591)

¹ col. 2.

² Ed. gynen.

³ Ed. stoke.

habundantly & the swerde of fyerabras¹ was al blody : of whiche stroke olyuer was moeued & troubled that he had fallen ne had hys sadel hane been, For he was bowed afterward that he was al to broken. And his 4 hors began te halte of the stroke & whan he was comen to hym self wyth an hye voys began to crye: ¶ “O lord god, my creatour, o what an euyl stroke haue I receyued! O vyrgyn marye, moder of Ihesus, haue 8 pyte of me! For ouer fyersly cutteth the swerde of thys paynum. yene me grace that I may ones haue hym ;” and made vpon hym self the sygne of the crosse. & after fyerabras sayd to hym: “Olyuer, by 12 Mahoun my god, wthy thys stroke I maa^d the aferde : now mayst thou wel fele how I can playe, & I haue no meruaylle though thou commamnde the to thy god, but I am euyl contente that I haue hurte the ouer sore with 16 þ^e stroke. ¶ Neuertheles be sure that thou shalst not see the some goo to reste for thou begynnest now to chaunge colour and thy fyerce manere: neuertheles I am contente that thou retorne, and that shall 20 be for the best tofore thou knowe more fully my strengthe : for I warne the of one thyng that whan I see my blood yssue out of my body thenne doubleth my myght and my strengthe. And I wote wel that 24 charles loueth² the not moche whan he sendeth the to me, yf he had lodged^d the in a fayre bedde & whyte shetes thou haddest been moche better.” whan Olyuer herde hym so saye he was replenysshed with a ferment 28 courage & began to lyfte vp hys heed and sayd: “O Paynum, dysmesured^d al day thou vauntest the for to brynge me to thende of my dayes. I praye to god almyghty that he wyl reioye my courage. kepe the wel, 32 I deffyte the ! we hane ouer long pleted.” vpon these wordes they ranne to-gydre, smytyng meruayllously eche other vpon their helmes in suche wyse that boucles,

Oliver calls on
God and the
Virgin for help.

Fierabras again
offers to let him
go,

on account of his
wound,

but Oliver defies
him. (597)

naylles, and crochettis, precious stones, or faueryes, and floures been hewen, broken, and floweren to the grounde. the fyre yssued oute largely, makynge grete bruyt with their armour is cut to pieces.

4 the swerde vpon their harmys. In this whyle Charles was in grete medytacyon and thought that the quarele of Olyuer was trewe and Iuste and that god ought to preserue hym, and whan he thought that Olyuer myght 8 deye As Impacient of a perfayte fayth he sayd: ¶ “O gloryous god, for whome we take Payne, I praye the to conserue Oliver that he be not slayn ne taken. For I swere by the soule of my fader that yf he be now slayn 12 of thys paynym that never in fraunce in ony chirche shal ¹clerke ne preest be reuested ne enhabited, but I shal do breue monasteryes, chyrches, aulters & crucey-fyxes.” “Alas,” sayd Due Naymes, “Syr kyng, leue 16 these wordes vayne and ydle, & praye god for Olyuer that he be in his ayde for hys holy merey.” Al thys whyle personeerde the ij champyons fyghtyng and smytyng eche on other in suche maner that Fyerabras wyth 20 hys swerde brake the cercle of Olyuers helme and made hym falle on hys vysage, and hys hors had be slayn yf he had not lepte a syde. and Olyuer was hurte in hys body and speyally in the breste and had thenne loste Oliver is very weak from loss of blood.

24 soo moche of hys blode that he was moche feble, whyche was no merueyll, seen that he had resysted agaynst the moost terryble man that euer was borne of moder.

28 ¶ How Olyuer made his prayer to god' whan he felte hym hurte: capitulo xij

Olyuer the noble erle beyng in this malancolye of the grete woundes that he had in hys body took 32 his recomforte sayeng in this manere: “O glori- Oliver offers up aous god, cause & begynnynge of al that is aboue & vnder prayer,

the fyrmentente, which for your owne playser fourned

¹ D ij.

our fyrist fader Adam and for ¹ hys compayne ganest vnto hym Eue, by whome al humayn generacyon is conceyued, gynyng^t to them lycence to ete al maner fruytes reserved only one, of whyche Eue by the ⁴ moeuyng of the serpent caused Adam to ete, wherfore they loste paradys, & by the seductyon of the fendes of helle many haue ben deceyued & damped: wherof ye had^t pyte of the perdyeyon of the world and came for ⁸ to take fleshe humayn in the wombe of the gloriouse ^{the annunciation,} vyrgyn marye by thanmuncyacion of the holy Aungel Gabryel, and were borne as it pleased^t you. And anone after the thre kynges camen to adoure & make obeys- ¹² saunce and wylde golde, encense, and myrre made to you their presentes. After for you herodes made to be slayne many chyldren, whiche now been in Ioye per-¹⁶ manable. And whan ye were in age by you deter-
^{myned}^t ye went in the world prechyg^t to your frendes. Thenne afterward by themuyous Iewes ye were hanged ²⁰ on the crosse, in whiche so hangyng longyus the knyght by the Induction of the Iewes percyd your syde; & ²⁴ whan he bylened in you & wesshe hys eyen with your precious blode he reouerl his syt fayre & clere & cryed you mercy wherby he was sauad. After by your frendes ye were layed in the holy sepulture: ² the thyr^d day after aroos and took ageyn lyf and descended^t in to helle, And took out Adam and Eue and al them that were worthy to haue paradys. And the day of your meruayllous ascencyon ye ascended^t in to heuen in the ²⁸ presence of al your apostles. Thus my god^t, my maker, as thys is trouthe and I byleue it verayly and fermly, be ye in my conforte ageynst thys myscreaunte that I may vaynequysshe hym in suehe wyse that he may be ³² sauad." And this said he blesseyd^t hym with his swerde in makynge the sygne of þ^e crosse in the name of god^t the holy trynyte, and smote his hors vpon the hope of

recounting the
fall of Adam,

the slaughter of
the Innocents,

the Crucifixion,

the Resurrection,

and the
Ascension.

He crosses him-
self.

¹ col. 2.

² D ij. back.

the helpe of god. and Fyerabras sayd to hym lawhyng^t:

“Olyuer, fayre frende, I praye the that thou hyde not
fro me the oryson that thou hast said now, for by my
4 god termagaunt I wold gladdly here it.” “Now wold
god of heuen,” sayd Olyuer, “that thou were in such
grace that thou sholdest bylene it also fermly as I doo,
For I assure the I shold loue the thenne as moche as I
8 doo Roulland.”

Fyerbras laughs
at him,
and asks what his
prayer has been.

¶ And Fyerabras ansuerd to hym: “by my god
Mahoun and Termagaunt, thou spekest now of a moche
grete folye?”

12 ¶ How after a grete bataylle Olyuer conquerd’
the bawme & ¹ dranke therof at hys ease,
and how he fyl to therthe whan hys hors
was slain: capitulo xij

16 Fyerbras beyng wroth of the wordes of oluer in
grete ire sayd to hym: “kepe the wel fro me, for
I deffy the!” “I am redy,” sayd Olyuer, “for
to god I commaunde me.” & so thenne they recountred
20 to-gyder so shaprly and so hard strokes they gaf that
the fyre myȝt haboundantlye be seen sprynge oute of
theyr harnoys. Theyr horses bowed vnder hem and
the erthe tremblel of the bruyt in the medowe vnder
24 mormyonde. Fyerabras took hys swerde in hys honde
and smote Olyuer there as he was euyl hurte in the
breste vnder the pappe, & of that stroke the eyen
tornek in hys heed, And had hys face alle chaunge^d.

The struggle is
renewed ⁶⁰² so
fiercely that the
ground shakes.
₍₆₀₇₎

28 And thenne ageyn he cryed on god and on the virgyn
marie that he wold sauе his soule. Fyerabras by grete
curtosye sayd to hym: “Olyuer, vnderstonde me,
descende doune surely and goo take of the bawme and
32 drynke at thyn ease, and anone thou shalt be al guar-
ysshed and hole, and thenne mayst thou the better

Fyerbras wounds
Oliver in the
breast.

Fyerbras again
offers Oliver some
of the holy balm,

defende the ageynst me and thou shalte recoure newe
but Oliver refuses strengthe."¹ But olyuer for noo thyng that he coude
it.

do though ¹he shold dye he wold not, For by trewe
fightyng he wold haue it. And anone came that one ⁴
ageynst that other and smyten in suche wyse that

*Oliver pierces
Fierabras' thigh.*

*He drinks some
of the balm,
and is at once
made whole again.*

*Oliver cuts the
cord by which the
vessels are tied.*

*He seizes one,
drinks some of
the balm,
and is healed of
his wound.*

*Oliver throws the
vessels into the
river.*

Fyerabras was hurte daungerously, For olyuers swerde
entred in to his thye an halfe foot depe, and of the
blood that yssued oute alle the grasse was reed. And ⁸
whan he sawe hym so hurte he dranke of hys bawme
and was anone al hool, wherof olyuer was moche sorou-
ful, by cause therof he coude make none ende of thys
paynym. And the frensshe men that saw this made ¹²
to god their prayers deuoutly that he wolde conserue
that day Olyuer, And in espeyal Charlemayn whiche
emong al other loned hym moast entyerly. But whan
Olyuer sawe the paynym al hole & for the bawme ¹⁶
so comforted, by the ayde of god he came to hym
and smote hym vpon the helme soo hardle that the
stroke descended vpon the sadel & cutte the corde by
whyche the barylles were boudden and fastned, and the ²⁰
hors of fyerabras was aferde of the stroke and made a
lytel course by the playsyr of god. Thenne Olyuer or
the paynym toke ony hede bowed to the grounde and
took vp the barylles & dranke at hys ease and largely, ²⁴
& anou he was al hole & reconfermed in newe strengthe,
& thought that ²yf by aduenture fyerabras were more
hurte by hym and myght ageyn haue hys barylles
that in thende it myght euyl happe and come to hym. ²⁸
wherfore he beyng nyghe vnto a grete ryuer took the
barylles & thrawe them therin whyche were anone
sonken. And as it is redde at alle the festes of saynt
Iohan these ij barylles ben shewed aboue the water ³²
euydently, whan fyerabras sawe that the barielles were
lost all most for angre he was oute of hys mynde &
by grete reproche sayd to Olyuer: "O euyl man that

¹ D iii.

² col. 2.

thou arte, thou hast loste my barylles whyche were more worth than al the golde in the world: but I promyse the that or it be euen they shal to the ben
 4 dere solde, For I shall not cesse tyl I haue smyton of thy heed:" and thys sayeng^t he came ayenst hym, but Fierabras reviles him for doing so,
 Olyuer as he that doubteth hym not soo moche as he dyd tofore eschewed hym not but put hym at the
 8 defence wyth his shielde to auoyde the stroke. Nener-
 theles Fyerabras smote hym so hard þat hys helme was rushes at him,
 desmaylled & broken, but he was not herte, & the and breaks his helmet,
 stroke descended so inpytuously þat he cutte asondre the
 12 necke of oliuers hors, & [he] fyl to grounde and therne and kills his horse. (588)
 was Olyuer on fote, but a grete myracle it was of the
 hors of fyerabras that maad no semblaunte to renne
 vpon hym as he had ben taught, lyke as I haue sayd
 16 byfore, but helde hym stille abone hys propre custome.

¶ How Fyerabras and' Olyuer foughten to-
 gyder afote merveyllously, and' of the
 prayer that Charles maad' for Olyuer:
 20 capitolo viij

Moche sorouful were the frensshe men whan they The French wish to help Oliver,
 sawe Olyuer on fote, and wold haue arm'd but Charles forbids them,
 hem for to socoure hym, But Charles wold not
 24 consente for to mayntene hys honour & hys trouthe.
 ¶ And thenne kyng Charles kneel'd down to therthe &
 maad his prayer to god that he wolde comforte Olyuer
 whyche was thus dyspourueyed of his hors. whan
 28 Olyuer sawe hym self on fote he was moche sorouful &
 came a foure paas nyghe vnto Fyerabras, and sayd to
 hym: "o kyng of Alexandrye, thou hast borne the
 foulle this day ageynst me. In the mornyng thou hast
 32 so moche preyseed thy self that thou hast sayd yf v
 knyghtes came ageynst the thou woldest abyde and'

Oliver reproaches the Saracen for killing his horse. (588)

conquere them, and thou knowest that the kyng that sleeth an hors ought to haue no parte of therwyte."

Fierabras declares it was accidental,

and offers to give him his own horse,

but Oliver refuses.

Fierabras jumps off his horse,

and they fight on foot.

Reynier appeals to Charles to send help to Oliver, or at least to pray for him.

Fyerabras ansuert: "I knowe wel that thou ¹sayest trouthe, but I dyd it not wyth my wylle. Neuertheles to thende that thou be not enyl contente wyth me I shal descende down of my hors & shal gyne to the my hors pomel^l: And I promyse the thou shalt be well hored^l. And knowe thou that neuer in my lyf I was so abasshied as whan he sawe the at erthe that he strangled^l the not, for I neuer put man to the erthe and thys hors present but that anone he was by hym slain & dede." Olyner ansuert: "I promyse the that I shal

12 neuer take thyng hors but yf he be first by me conquered^l and I lusty wonne." wherupon fyerabras was soo moche noble that for the valyaunce of Olyner sayd^l: "Certeyn for the noblesse that I knowe in the I wyl do that I 16 neuer dyd for man:" and sprange of his hors & stode a-foote & was contente to fyght ayenst hym a foote, by-cause he had^l no hors of hys owne. and the say^l fyerabras was moche heyer than Olyner. and by 20

one accorde they Iusted^l afoote that one ayenst that other so meruayllously that it was wonder that bothe tweyne remayned^l not in the felde a-swounne of the tranaylle that they toke. Thus contynueng the bataylle 24 which eonde take none ende they spaken many reproches and despytous wordes that one of theym vnto ²other. The kyng Charles seyng al thys had^l grete pyte on Olyner. Thenne the Erle Reyner, fader of Olyner, whyche was 28 moche sorowful came & kneled^l at the feet of Charles and sayd^l: "O noble emperour, in thonour of god^l take remors of my sone whome I see lykly anone to dye. Atte leste make prayer to Ihesus our maker that he be in ayde to 32 hym that I may see hym nyghe to me in helthe." ¶ Incontynent Charles seyng^l thys sayd^l: "O lord^l god^l, yf ye suffice that Olyner be ouercome and that my ryght at

thys tyme be loste an^t defyld, I make auowe that al
 crystyante shal be destroyed. I shal not leue in
 Fraunce chirche ne monasterye, ymage ne auulter." &
 4 after kneeld doun with bothe his knees¹ to the gronde
 & prayed in this manere : " My creatour, whyche for
 our sauacyon was borne of the gloryous vyrgyn marie
 in bethleem, as I wel by-leue, that of your glorious
 8 byrth al the world was enlumyned, whiche abode in thys
 worl^k ful xxxij yere & more, & made atte begynnynge
 Adam and Eve, of whom we ben comen, & that was in
 paradys tenestre a place moche delectable. And there
 12 by you were alle fruytes abandoned to them except one
 onely, whyche was of knowyng good & euyl, as it plesed
 you to ordeyne : of ²whiche adam ete & was dysobey-
 saunt, for whom to the reparacion of his misdede & for
 16 to redeme hym fro eternal captuyte & vs also ye were
 contente to take the deth in the tree of the crosse, after
 that the traytour³ Iudas solde you for xxx pens : & on
 a friday ye were payned & your handes & feet mortally
 20 naylled, & crowned with a moche sharpe crowne of
 thornes : and after Longyus smote you in the ryght
 syde to the hert, whiche was blynde & after that he
 had leyed on hys eyen of your preeuous blood he sawe
 24 moche clerely : & after ye descended in to helle & toke
 out your frendes, & sythe aroos fro deth to lyf, & tofore
 al your apostles ye ascended in to heuen & lefte for
 your lyeutenaunt saynt Peter thappostle in erthe ; and
 28 ordelyneste baptesme for the regeneracyon of vs and to
 make vs crysten for to haue sauacyon. O lord, as alle
 thys is truthe and that I byleue it stedfastly, so on thys
 day be thou in ayde and socoure vnto Olyuer for to
 32 preserue hym that he be not slain ne vaynquysshed."

charles at first
threatens to de-
stroy every church
if Oliver is killed,

and then prays
for Oliver's suc-
cess,

recounting the
Fall,

the Crucifixion,

the piercing of
our Lord's side
by Longius,

the descent into
hell,

the Ascension,

and the ordination
of Baptism.

¶ He thys sayeng & other deuoute wordes in hys
 secrete oratorye Our⁴ lord sente to hym an aungel fro An angel appears
 heuen whyche sayd to hym : ¶ " O Charles, Emperour

¹ Ed. kuees. ² ed. 2. ³ Ed. traycour. ⁴ Ed. Out.

and tells him that
Oliver will be the
victor.

Fierabras aims a
stroke at Oliver,

which he dodges,
and wounds the
Saracen.

Oliver's sword
flies out of
hand.

He tries to recover
it, but cannot

through fear of
Fierabras.

The French are
eager to help
Oliver,
but Charles will
not allow them.

of noblesse, knowe thou for trouthe that I am sente
from ¹god for to say to the that thou doubtē no thyngē
of Olyuer, for wythout faylle he shal wynne the bataylle;
though it be late, but he shal vaynquysshe the paynym." 4
thys sayd, the aungel departed and charles thanked
god deuoutelye for hys gloryous medytacyon. Neuer-
theles after many bataylles bytwene fyerasbras and
Olyuer maad, and grete menaces by grete furour, wyl- 8
yngⁱ to haue gynen to Olyuer a grete stroke oute of
mesure. But Olyuer whyche sawe the stroke comyng
deuaunce^d hym in suche wyse that he gaf two euyl
strokes to Fyerabras, wherof Fyerabras was passyng 12
angry vpon Olyuer, and Olyuer on hym, so that bothe
were ryȝt actyf never to departe tyl that one of them
were vaynquysshed and destroyed. & at that tyme
Olyuer was soo coneytous in smytyng that his honde in 16
whiche he helde hys swerde was a-slepe and swollen for
the Payne that he had of smytyng, and he desryng^t to
smyte hys enemye at vtteraunce hys cuerde flewe a-ferre
fro hym out of his hande, wherof he was sore moeued 20
and abasshed—and it was no meruaylle—and moche
courageously rame for to take vp his swerde, And
layed hys shidle on hys hede for to preserne it. But
not wythsto^dlyng the paynym smote ²hym twyes so 24
myghtyly that he brake hys shidle in dyuers places
and hys hauberke, so that he was sore astonyed for that
tyme And doubted so moche the paynym that he durst
not take hys swerde: and moche sodeyniye the frensshe 28
men which sawe so Olyuer dyspourneyed of his swerde
armed them anone and were in purpoos to renne vpon
the sarasyn for to socour olyuer, but Charles wold not
consente that any man shold goo sayeng to them that 32
god is almyghty for to saue and mayntene hym in hys
good ryght, for yf he had not gaynsayed it more than xiiij
thousand men were thenne redy for to haue rescowed

¹ D iiiij, back.

² col. 2.

hym. and notwythistondyng¹ al thys the paynym dyd
 but laughe & said to Olyuer: "In trouthe, Olyuer, I
 haue opteyned vpon the a lytel of myn entente, but
 4 wherfore darst not þou take thy swerde I knowe now
 wel that thou art ynough vaynquysshed sythe that thou
 art so aferde that thou darst not stoupe for all the
 tresour of the world. and I am wel contente for t.
 8 apoynte wyth the that is that thou renye the fayth that
 thou holdest, the baptesme that thou hast receyued &
 the god^l in whom thou byleuest, and for whome thou
 hast had al thys payne, & byleue in Mahoun, my god^l
 12 ful of bounte, & ¹I shal suffre the to lyue & more ouer
 I shal be contente to gyue to the my sister to wyf to ^{give him his sister}
 whom thou shalte be rychely maryed. Hyr name is ^{Floripes in mar-}
 Florypes, the fayrest of moder borne, & after we shal con-
 16 quere Fraunce or thys yere be paste, And of one of the
 royames I shal crowne the kyng." Olyuer ansuerd to
 hym: "Paynym, thou spekest to me of grete folye, for
 god^l forbede that euer I shold be of entencion to forsake ^{oliver says, "God}
 20 my god^l, whyche hath created & fourmed me, and his ^{forbid!"}
 holy sacraments which haue been establisshed for my²
 sauacyon, for to byleue in mahoun and in thy goddes-
 ful of abusyon: whiche haue neyther strengthne
 24 virtue but cause of dampnacyon." Fyerabras sayd to
 hym, "by mahoun my god^l, thou art alwaye moche ^{Fyerbras declares}
 obstynat that ne for payn ne for torment thou wylt not
 denye thy fayth, & of one thyng which is more grete
 28 thou³ mayst wel auauante the. For neuer was I of
 persone so trauailled ne greued as I am of the. ¶ Thou
 oughtest wel to be prayse^l. I am contente that thou
 take thy swerde hardyly and surely for withouto com-
 32 petent wepen thou mayst not preuaylle ne more than a
 woman." Olyuer answerd: "Paynym, I can not say
 the contrarye but that thou offrest to me seruyce and
 bounte, but for the ⁴valewe of x thousand marke of

¹ D v. ² Ed. for my. ³ Ed. then. ⁴ col. 2.

Fierabras mocks at Oliver,

and offers, if he will renounce Christianity, to

give him his sister Floripes in marriage.

oliver says, "God forbid!"

Fyerbras declares he never met any one so obstinate.

Fyerbras then offers to let him pick up his sword,

but Oliver refuses, golde I wyl not take it, ne for to deye therfore. For
 yf I had recouerd my swerde by thy curtosye And it
 happed that thou were vnder my puyssance and thou
 theme demaundest of me amytye & frendshyp & thenne 4
 [I] put the to deth it shold to me be vlyte and reproche.
 And at thys tyme my lyf and my deth be in the wylle of
 god to whom I haue gyuen my self ouer. But and yf
 I may wynne my swerde thou shalt bye it dere & here 8
 deye, For other thynge shal thou not haue." ¶ "By
 my fayth," sayd Fyerabas, "thou art moche surquyd-
 rous & gloryous, wherfore be thou sure that shortly thou
 shalt be confused descomfyte and matte." 12

and declares he
 will win it back
 in fair fight.

¶ How at thys bataylle Fyerabas was van-
 quysshed' by Olyuer after that he had'
 recouerd' one of the swerdes of fyerabas :
 capitulo viij 16

WHAN Fyerabas herde that oliuer was so fyers
 of fayt and of courage he had grete meruaylle.
 For he wold not haue hys swerde but yf he
 myght by Inste warre conquere it, wherfore the paynym 20
 dysmesurably came ageynst hym and helde in hys
 hande plorance hys swerde. Thenne it was no mer-
 uayle though olyuer was aferde to abyde hys enemye he
 beyng dyspourneyed of swerde & of shielde, For that 24
 was broken in two partyes, but as it playsed to god he
 loked besyde hym & sawe the hors of fyerabas and on
 the arson of the sadel were ij other swerdes of whych
 I haue spoken afore. And anone Olyuer ranne ryght 28
 quyckely and took one of the swerdes whiche was named
 baptesme, whyche had the blade moche large and shone
 meruayllously, & after came ageynst the paynym & put
 tofore parte of hys shidle suche as was lefte, and whan 32
 he was nyghe hym he began to say : "O kyng of

Fierabas comes
 against Oliver,

who, looking
 round in fear,

sees the Saracen's
 horse, on which
 are two swords.

He runs and seizes
 one, Baptism,

¹ D v, back.

Alexandrye, now is tyme to comptē. For I am pour-
neyed of your swerde of whych I shal make you wroth
& kepe you wel from me for I haue deffyed you.”

and defies
Fierabras,

4 Thenne whan Fyerabras sawe it and haſt herde hym so
speke anone began to ehaunge colour and sayd: “O
baptym, good swerde, I haue kepte the many a day for
one of the beste that euer henge by my syde or by ony
8 mans that is lyuyng.” And after behelde olyuer sayeng:
“By my god Mahoun, I knowe the a man of grete
fyerste. I wold that thou woldest take thyn owne
swerde and late me ¹haue myn and thenne late vs fyght
12 as we haue begonne.” “by my hede,” sayd Olyuer,
“that shal neuer be by my wylle, for tofore I make
ony paete with the I shal assaye and approne thy swerde
vpon thy persone. kepe the wel fro me For ouer long
16 haue we sermoned.” Thys sayeng & other thynges
Olyuer came as a lyon hungry ayenst fyerabras & smote
hym fyrst, but he myȝt not attayne hym on the hede
but that he recounted first the shidle of the paynym,
20 whyche he brake and al to-frusshed euyl that the half
flewē in the felde. Thenne fyerabras was sore aferde of
that stroke For aboue alle thys the swerde wyth that
stroke entred nygh half a foot within therthe. Thenne
24 olyuer blesseyd hym that had forged that swerde and so
wel temprede, and after many menaces rygorous they
were in partie descouerd of theyr helmes. And whan
Olyuer sawe the Paynym Fyerabras in the vysage fyers
28 and courageous he sayd: “O lord god of heuen, maker
of heuen & of erthe, that thys paynym is noble and ful
of cruelte. Now wold god that Charles had hym in
his power and yf he wold be baptysed Rolland and I
32 shold be hys pruye felowes. O glorious vyrbyn marie
moder of god, praye our lord Ihesu Cryste thy sone
2 that he gyue grace to thys sarasyn that he may bylue
in the cristen fayth, for by hym it may be moche

who asks him to
give up Baptism,
and take his own
sword in ex-
change,

but Oliver refuses,

and with a blow
breaks the shield
of the Saracen.

They both lose
their helmets.

Oliver is astonish-
ed at the appear-
ance of Fierbras,
and prays for his
conversion.

enhaunceed." Fyerabras answerd in thys manere: "Olyuer, leue suche wordes: telle me yf thou wylt fyght like as thou hast enterpryseed." "ye," sayd olyuer, "kepe the wel fro me for I deffye the," and 4
 ranne vpon hym: and Olyuer was smyton fyrst vpon his shielde by suche fiersnes that he smote his shielde in

Fyerabras smites Oliver on his shield, and breaks it in pieces.

Oliver cuts the Saracen on his shield,

and nearly stuns him.

They abuse each other. 701/

Fyerabras wounds Oliver 732 and

declares his time has now come.

pyeess nyghe to hys fyste, and it was meruaylle that he cut it not of: wherfore Fyerabras sayd that he had 8 put hym in suche eaas that he shold not longe lyue in thys worlē. Olyuer sayd noo worde but came with his swerde ayenst the paynym Fyerabras moche furiously.

¶ Thenne the paynym that sawe þe stroke come threwre 12 hys shielde ayenst olyuer wherfore anone it was quartred, and was so astoned that the eyen in hys heed were al troubled of the Payne and the fyre was seen sprynge 16 oute of the swerde and shieldes moche habundantlye, and thus in smytyng fyerabras sayd in this manere: "now is the houre come that thou shalt never haue ayde of thy god Ihesus in whome thou bylenest, [but] that anone thou shalt be deed sythe thou felest thy self ouer- 20 comen. And Olyuer anone answerd: "Ihesus is wel myghty ¹for to shewe hys puissaunce. But anone thou shalt knowe that Mahoun ne Termagaunte shal not mowe ayde the ne be so myghty but that thou shalte be 24 deed, I shal wel gyue the knowleche." And herupon came that one vpon that other. And olyuer was smyton on the helme al vnto the fleshe in suche wyse that al 28 that the swerde arauight it share and passed thorough, & thenne he sayd to olyuer: "I swere to the by my god that I haue wel arauight the and smyton. Neuer shal charles ne Rolland see the be thou wel sure." Olyuer answerd: "O Fyerabras of alexandrye, be not thou so 32 proude for or I departe fro the I shal rendre the dede or vaynquysshed, & god graunte to me that whyche I haue alwaye desyred!" And therupon echē smote

¹ col. 2.

other so merucyllously that the bodyes of them bothe
swette for anguysshe and Payne. Fyerabas smote
olyuer vpon the helme soo harde that the stroke came
4 to the flesh, and if god had not wrought he had be
slayn at that tyme, wherfore Olyuer as a man enraged
came ayenst the paynym & the sarasyn lyfte on hys
hys shielde so that he was al dysconer'd vnder the arme
8 and hys flanke was there vnarmed. Olyuer was wyse
& took good hede and came lyghtly & smote ¹fyerabas
in hys flanke so myghtyly & contynued in suche wyse
that he thrested his swerde in one of hys flankes wel
12 depe, & hys swerde hym self & the place was alle bybled
of the blood. Thus was Fyerabas hurte in suche
manere that almoost hys bowellys yssued oute of his
bely, For thenne at that stroke olyuer employed al his
16 strengthe for to make an ende of the bataylle so longe
foughten.

Oliver aims a blow at Fierabras; who, raising his shield too high, leaves his side uncovered. (737)

Oliver thrusts his sword in between the ribs,

so that the Saracen's bowels almost fall out. (718)

¶ How fyerabas beyng vaynquysshed' by-
leued' in god', and' how he was borne by
20 Olyuer, And' how Olyuer was assaylled'
of the sarasyns and tormented': capitulo xv

A Fter that the Paynym was smyton and hurte
mortally as I hane sayd, And he seyng that he
24 myght nomore resyste ayenst Olyuer, by the
vertu of god he was enlumyned in suche wyse that he
had knowleche of the errore of the paynmys and lyfte
vp hys eyen vnto heuen and began to escrye the holy
28 trynyte and the grace of the holy ghoost. And after
loked on Olyuer and sayd to hym: "O noble Olyuer
& valyaunt knyght, in thonour of god on whome thou
byleuest and to ²whome I consente I crye the mercy
32 and requyre the that I dye not tyl I be baptysed &
ydden vaynquysshed vnto Charles the Emperour

Fierbras finding himself vanquished begs for mercy. (733)

(733) promising to become a christian, and to be baptised, 733.

¹ D vj. back.

² col. 2.

whyche so moche is redoubted. For I shal bylue in
 and to give up the
 the crysten fayth & shal yelde the relyques for whyche
 sacred relics. (763) ye be assemblyd and haue taken soo moche payne.
 And I swere to the that yf by thy defaute I dye sarasyn 4
 I make the culpable of my dampnacyon, And yf thou
 take not me in to thy garde I shal lose my blood.
 Thou shalt see me deye tofore thyn eyen wherfore in
 the honour of god haue pyte on me." Olyuer had so 8
 Oliver takes pity
 on him, (770)
 moche compassyon of hym for hys soor that he sore
 wepte, and after he layed hym in the shadowe vnder a
 tree and there bounde his mortal woundes in such
 and binds up his
 wounds. (774) wyse that he staunched hys bledyng. And after the 12
 Fierabras asks to
 be carried away,
 (776) paynym prayed hym that it myght plesa hym to bere
 hym awaye For hym self myght not goo, but whan
 Olyuer sawe that he was so heuy he sayd that it was
 not to hym possyble to bere hym. Fyerabras enforced 16
 hym self moche & came nyghe to hym, "O noble and
 redoubted Erle Olyuer, in the honour of god lede me
 to charles or I be dede for I am nyghe at myn ende,
 and bids him fetch
 his horse, (788) for al my body bledeth, take that hors and mounte 20
 theron and come as nyghe to ¹me as thou may and yf I
 and take him on
 it. may lye thwart tofore the vpon the sadel thou mayst
 lede me; & take my swerde by thy syde. ¶ Now
 hast thou foure that been moche worthe, and hye and 24
 He warns him of
 an ambush of
 50,000 Saracens in
 the wood close by.
 (796) depesshe the, For thys day in the mornyng I lefte in
 the wode that thou there seest here by fyfty thousand
 men whyche been al my subgettes, & comanded them
 that none shold moeue tyl I were reformed fro the 28
 bataylle." Whan Olyuer vnderstood hym he was al
 afraied and abasshed for fere, but not wythstondyngt
 he sayd: "Syr kyng, sythe that it plesa you I am
 contente," & took hym thwart the hors as it was sayd 32
 Oliver lifts him on
 to the horse. (802) & went forth on the waye in grete sorowe. And
 sodeynly departed out of the wode where as were the
 subgettes of Fyerabras a moche fyers paynym named

¹ D vij.

bruyllant of Mommere. And after hym Sortybrant of nonymbres, and the kynge of Mantryble; after hym maradas, Pynan, & Tenebras, & wel fyfty thousand
 The Saracens break out of the ambush. (812)

4 sarasyns after. whan Olyuer sawe theym come he smote the hors wyth the spores but the charge was so heuy that he myȝt not goo so faste as his enemyes came to hym. Whan the frensshe men sawe the paynymeis come
 8 in so grete nombre anon lyghtely they armed them.

And emonge other rolland, Gherard of mon¹dydyer, Guyllam the scot, naymes of banyere, Ogier, Rychard of normandye, Guy of bourgoyn, Geffroy lantigny,
 Roland and others rush out to his help.

12 Basyn, the due Thyery of ardeyne, And Aubert, And semblably Reyner of genes fader of Olyuer faylle^l not. Olyuer saw alonge the medowe and sawe come to fore thother brullant of mommyere which rode on an hors

16 as swyft as a grehounde and made grete bruyt emonge the other, For it semel as it had be thonder and tempeste; and bare in hys honde a faus dart with a grete hede of stelle square and sharpe whyche was alle

20 enuenymed wylth the blood of a erapauld and was ryght daungerous. whan Olyuer sawe him he was al amoeued and abasshed and sayd to Fyerabras in thy manere: "Sir kyng, ye must needs descendre; I may Oliver being hard pressed, tell Fierabras he must set him on the ground.

24 no ferther conduyte you, wherfore I am meruayllously sory and dysplaysaunt. For I knowe that I must nedes be oppressyd; ye see it wel. And yf they may attayne I shal be put to deth, And Charles shal neuer
 28 see me whyche shall be to hym grete dyscomforde."

Thenne anone Fyerabras cryed with an hye voys:² "O noble Olyuer, wyl ye now leue me? Ye haue conquerid me, to you I am yenen and ydden. it shal not be Fierabras begs him not to leave him.

32 reputid noblesse determyned whan ³I am youres and ye forsake me. Alas poure sorouful and caytyf that I am, yf I deye paynym what shal come of me? Virgyn marie, moder of god, haue pyte on me vnworthy that I

¹ col. 2.

² Ed. veys.

³ D vij, back.

am to retorne me to you!" And after he sayd to Olyuer: "I am conquerd by the and haue promyseg^t to the that I shal be baptysed. Yf thou leue me thou oughtest lytel to be preyed." Olyuer ansuerd: "Fy 4 erbras, thou spekest as a knyght. But I auowe to god and to the courte of heuen that I shal not leue the, I shal take the bataylle in honde for the and shal defende the as longe as I shal be on lyue: thou mayst wel trusste 8 therto." & there vpon he took the hauberk of the sarasyn and wytch suche as he myȝt haue he armid hym, & prestly he abylded hym and put on his heed an hatte of fync stele, and helde hys swerde drawnen named 12 haultelere, wytch whiche he coude wel helpe hym. & herupon came anone brullant wytch his faws darte & atteyned Olyuer in the breste & gaf hym an enyl stroke so that the dart brake. therme said fyerasbras: "Syr 16 Olyuer, ye haue doon ynough for me, For ye be hurte. late me descende down and laye me a parte out of the waye to thende that I be not defouled of these sarasyns, ne taken and destroyed." Therof had Olyuer 20 ȝrete compassyon & layed Fyerbras in the shadewe of a pynapple tree ferre out of the waye, and whan he wold haue fledde he sawe aboute hym wel x thousand sarasyns and sayd: "Alas! god Ihesus, my creatour, thou 24 knowest myn entencyon. I requyre the to gyne me grace that I deye not at thys tyme present vnto the tyme that for the xlacion of thy fayth I may be wytch Roland my felawe :" & in the name of Ihesus drewe out 28 haultelere and came in to the waye, & the first that he recountred was the some of the grettest lord that was there, and gaf hym suche a stroke that he elefte hym to the breste and [he] fyl doune dede. & Olyuer was abyld 32 & delyuer, and took fro hym hys shielde whyche was al newe: for in the bataylle tofore maad he had loste hys, & also he had his spere & lete hys hors renne emonge

Oliver promises
not to desert him,

and arms himself
in Fierabras'
armour. §68.

Briallant charges
at and wounds
him in the breast.

He sets Fierbras
down. §25, and
tries to escape,
but seeing it is in
vain,

utters a prayer,

draws his sword,
and turns to meet
the Saracens. §33

the myscreauntes. And atteyned at the fyrist stroke Clorgys & smote hym vnto the hert. And in retornyng he slewe thre sarasyns & they rame tofore hym as shieep 4 tofore the wulf whiche is hongry. Thenne came on hym marabas, Turgys, Sortybrant of conymbres, and the kyng Margaris, and they cryed with an hye voys to-gydre : “ by Mahoun our god, thou frensshe man thou 8 shalt not escape vs ; kepe the wel ¹ for by vs thou shalt deye ! ” And thenne cam Olyuer emonge his enemyes and smote and slew on al sydes. And the sariesns smote on hym in suche wyse that it was grete meruaylle that he 12 was not slayne and ouercomen but by force of² shotte and of strokes hys hors was slain vnder hym. And he beyng on the erthe as sone as he myght he aroos and beyng afoot sette hys shielde tofore hym whyche he 16 had gotten, and helde fast haultclere whyche was alle hys conforte for to socoure hym. And alwaye whome he caught fyl doun and was slayn. It is not redle in ony book that euer ony man so hurt as he was bare hym 20 so wel and dyd so grete portemente of armes.

¶ How Olyuer was taken & blynfeld' pyteously, & myght not be socoured' by the Frensshe men : ca. xvij³

24 **O** Lyuer was a[l] alone on fote emonge the sarasyns ageynst whome he made grete resystence & meruayllous : but it is not a thyng possyble that he myght escape fro theyr handes, for wyth glaunes, with 28 swerdes and with faus darteres of yron they pressyd hym so sore that hys shielde was perceud in ⁴moo than xxx places : & whan hys hauberk was broken & perceud wyth foure sharpe darteres they perceud and wounded hym in 32 his body meruailously. Wherfore by veray force & for feblesse he fyl to the erthe & there they took hym

He slays Clargys, and three others.

He is surrounded,

and his horse slain under him. (891)

He defends himself bravely.

His shield is broken, ⁸⁹⁵ his coat of mail cut to pieces.

He is overpowered, bound, & blindfolded. (896)

¹ D viij. ² Ed. and. ³ Ed. xvij. ⁴ col. 2.

mochē outerageously, and after blynfelde hys eyen & bonde hym straytely soo that he myȝt not see, ne wylt not where he was & they sette hym vpon a good hors & bonde hym surely. And whan thys valyaunt olyuer was thus dyspourneyed fro al helpe, fro al syȝt, fro al hope, and fro al comforde, it is good to wete that he was in grete desplaysaunce, For he knewe not what they wold doo wyth hym. Thenne wyth an hye voys by a compas-
syon of hert he sayd: “ O Charlemayn kyng of noblesse Emperor of valure, where art thou now & knowest thou not where I am? seest thou not what I do? remembrest not me, Noble felawe Rolland? thou art 12 all a slepe, am I deef or how I may not here the? is there none of you crysten that remembreth me?”

He cries on Charles for help, (912)

and on Roland.
(913)

These and suche other complayntes makynge the kyng Maradas sayd to hym: “ Frensshe man, whatsomeuer 16 thou be thou spekest of folye, For I shal not ete tyl thou be hanged.” These sarasyns ramme wyth olyuer, hys eyen blynfelde and hys hondes¹ straytly bounden, in the garde of four fals tyraunts. Thenne vpon thys in 20 especyal came Rolland, Thyerry, & al the peres & charles hym self also, but thys was ouer late for to sauе Olyuer, wyth grete cryes they cryed on god & on al the sayntes of heuen. And wyth grete ire Rolland smote 24 Corsuble in the brest, Gherard of mondydyer came ayenst Turgys, Ogyer smote athenas, And Rychard Amanedys; Guy of bourgoyne atteyned brullant.

Maradas mocks him. (914)

Roland and the other donzeperes charge the Saracens: (952)

There was none of the peres of fraunce but that ouer-thrawe hys man and made so grete dyscomfyte of the sarasyns that they were al empesshed to holde them to-gyders and to goo theyr waye, but the other paynymeys that conduyted Olyuer wente alwaye forth. And in 32 thys bataylle was slayn guyllam, gualtier, & other ynow of valyaunte peple & many other of the moyen people & others, and laye on the grunde. And gherard de mon-

each kills a Saracen. (945)

Guyllam, Gualtier, and others are slain (968), and

¹ D viij. back.

dydier, the sone of Duke Thyerry, and geffroy langeuyn
they bonde dylygently to theyr horses & rode aweye

Gerard and Geoffrey taken prisoners. (973)

wyth them hastily. but whan charles sawe them thus

4 ladde for angre he loste almoost hys wytte, And wylth an
hyghe voys cryed: "sau, kepe, and socoure the barons.

O knyȝtes desloyal, that ye be slowe! yf they lede
awaye the barons ¹neuer shal ye fare wel." whan the

8 Frensshe men herde Charles thus moeued as enraged
smote theyr horses wyth theyr spores and wente doun
of a mountayn. And there was Rolland fyrst that helde
hys swerde durandall drawnen for tauenge hym fyersly,

The French try to rescue them. (982)

12 and hym that he atteyned was sure to passe by the
deth. For he was al enraged by cause that they ledde
awaye his felowe Olyner, & smote a paynym that he
clefte hym to the myddle of hys body. at that tyme

16 rolland bare hym myghtely: by cause of the multytude
of the paynmys he myght not passe forth for to socoure
the barons prysionners and chaceil them more than
v myle ferre & coude not approche them. & thenne

They chase them for more than five miles.

20 were many good knyghtes deed, morfounded, and wery.

And not wylhstanding Rolland sware that he wold
neuer retorne tyl the barons of fraunce were taken fro
the handes of theyr enemyes. But he myght not do it,

24 For the nyght came on & wylt neuer whyther to goo.
The sarasyns that were tofore went fleyng alwaye at
theyr playsyr. ¶ Thys seyng Charles wylt not what
he shold doo ne say, For he doubted that the paynmys

till night came on, (1013)

28 made a watche & a ryere garde for to close them, ¶ And
therfore by force they must leue the felde in ryȝt grete
²dysplaysyr & anguysshe; and so al they retorneil.

when they were compelled to turn back. (1020)

The second' partye of the second' book con-
32 teyneth xvij chapytres & speketh of the
tormente of the barons of fraunce, & how
they that were taken spaken to ballant
thadmyral of spayne.

¹ col. 2.

² E. j.

¶ How Fyerabras was founzen by Charles,
and after was baptysed' and' heled' of his
wonde : ca. primo

After that charles knew that he myght not haue ageyn Olyuer ne the other pryoners it was force to hym to retorne wylle hys people for the nyght was thenne to them greuous ; & also in retornyng they fonde fyeralbras vnder a tre languysshing, to whom þe kyng said : O vnhappy paynyme, I ouȝt wel to hate the for by the been my men pryoners and loste, thou hast take fro me oluer one of the best bylonel that I had emonge al thunayn creatures : hym þat hath be synguler to mayntene my goodl name. & by the in the ende in stede of Ioye thou yeldest me sorowe." whan fyeralbras vnderstode hym he sore syghedl & sayd : "O ryche emperour & noble, the moost myghty of human lygnage, In thonour of god I crye the mercy & pardone me. It is trouthe that Olyuer hath conquerl me, I shal not hyde it, and I haue promysedl hym that I shal be crystnedl. I haue left & forsaken al my goddes and yelde me to Ihesus the creatour of the world. And I requyre the yet that I may be baptysedl, and yf I were heledl of my woundes I shal enhauue to my power the crysten fayth & many sarasyns shal be maadl crysten ; and by my moyan the holy sepulere & the holy reliques shal be delyuerdl, for whome ye take grete Payne and traunaylle. And also I make an oth to you by god in whom I now byleue that I am more heuy & sory for Olyuer that noble knyȝt whiche is taken pryonner than I am for my body whyche is mortally woundedl, & by the grace of god we shal haue hym ones ; wherfore conclude we that I be crystenedl, For yf I deye sarasyn it shal be to you reproche." ¶ And vpon thys Charles, whyche had grete compassyon on hym, made hym to be borne in to hys lodgyng by his barons, and whan they

On his way back
to the camp
Charles finds
Fierabras lying
under a tree.
(1037)
He reproaches
him.

Fierabras begs for
mercy, (1012)

promises to be-
come Christian,
(1016)

and to give up the
holy relies, (1056)

Charles has pity
on him and causes
him to be carried
to the camp.
(1067)

saw hym so hugely membred they al were abasshed of his gretenes and largenes, for whan he was vnarmyd he was one of the semelyest men that euer was. ¶ And

4 al the Frensshe men gaf grete loes and honour ¹to Olyner that had foughтен & ouercomen suche a man ; and as he was vnelotheđ partye of hys woundes opened and began to blede wherof hys hert faylled & fyl doun

8 a-swoune, & rolland anone lyfte hym vp. And in al haste they made redy a fonte, & sente for tha[r]che-bysshop Turpyn and Naymes, which were moche Ioyous of this that the paynym shold be crystend. & after that

12 the baptesme was redy the godfaders gaf hym another name & was named floren, (but as longe as he lyued he was called Fyerabras,) and thenne he was layed in a bedde honourable. And at the laste ende of hys dayes

16 he was a saynt and god shewed for hym myracles, and is now called Saynt Floren of Roye. And thenne anone charles made hym to be vysyted by his medycynes & surgyens wel expert, & sercheden al his woundes, and

20 as god wolle they fonde none of his bowellys entamed ne hurt, wherfore the leches were sure for to delyuer hym al hole wythin ij monethes next after comyngt. In makyngh thys vysytacion the Emperour charles was

24 present & sayd to fyerabras : "yf now olyuer & the other barons were here present tofore the we shold wel be contente." And charles was thenne al peneyf and heuy moche thynkyng vpon hys ba²rons prysioners, but

28 he maad no more semblaunte.

All the French
admire his size
and figure. (1076)

He is baptised
and named
Floren. (1087)

After his death he
became a Saint.

Charles orders his
own physicians
to attend to him.
(1092)

They assure him
that Fierabras
will be well in
2 months. (1097)

¶ How Olyner & his felowes were presented to ballant thadmyral and' cruelly passyoned in pryson : capitulo ij

32 **T**He Sarasyns after they had the barons of france tofore named for prysioners they taryed not but ranne tyl they came in to a ryche eytee named

The Saracens
carry Oliver
and the other
prisoners to
Aigremore. (1114)

¹ E j, back.

² col. 2.

Agrymore ; and at the entre of the say^t eyte they sowned^t and blewe vp trumpes makyng^t grete bruyt. whan ballant thadmyral, fader of Fyerabras, sawe them he came vnto them & fonde there brullant of mommyer, 4 to whome he say^t: “ O brullant my frende, telle to vs of your tydynges, how ye haue borne you in my warre and affayres. haue ye taken Charles the emperour whyche so moche is redoubted^t, & his peres of fraunce be they 8 dyscomfyted^t?” Brullant say^t to hym : “ O syradmyral, the tydynges that I brynge you been alle otherwyse, and of lasse valewe than ye say. by Charles the kyng we haue been almoost defeated^t and dyscomfyted^t. For 12 of hys puyssance it is a meruayllous thyng. Fyerabras your sone is with hym vaynquysshed^t by one of his barons and is made crysten, & he was taken vayn-quysshed^t & dyscomfyted in loyal batayl without doyng 16 ony treson.” ¹whan thadmyral vnderstode this he fyl to therthe al in a traunse, And^t or he came ageyn to hys mynde it was a grete whyle for the sorowe that he had^t of hys sone. and whan he was releued he cryed^t wyth an 20 hye voys : “ O dolauant vnhappy that I am ! ha ! poure caytyf ! what shal bycome of me ? O Fyerabras, my ryght dere sone and heyer, whyther art thou gone ? Fro whens cometh thys trespaas^t wherfore were thou 24 taken whyche neuuer in bataylle were very ne had reproche ? ¶ O what euyl tydynges been brought to me of the ! yf he be crysten I am sory that he lyueth : I had moche leuer that he were dysmembre^t and put to 28 deth : ” & thenne as a man feble for sorowe fyl down to the grounde and cryed^t : “ O brullant of mommyere, what is betyd of the noble kyng of Cordube and^t of my neuewe bruchart^t sythe my sone fyerabras the ledar and^t captayn 32 of all, yf it be trewe that he be lost I shal smyte oute the brayne of Mahomet the god^t whiche hath promyse^t to me so moche good^t, to whome I haue gyuen my self and^t yolden.” Thus sayeng alle in a rage he tormentede

Balan enquires
what tidings they
bring. (1124)

Bruillant tells
him of their
defeat. (1129)

and of Oliver's
victory over
Fierabras. (1132)

Balan laments
over his son.
(1134)

and threatens to
smash his gods.

¹ E ij.

hym self greuously vpon the grounde.¹ And whan thadmyral was a lytel coled of hys grete yre He de-maunded of Brullant: "whiche is the knyȝt that hath 4 vaynquys² shed fyerabras my sone?" brullant answerd: "Syr admyrall, your sone hath be conquerd by yonde knyght:" in shewyng Olyuer whiche was so fayr & wel formed & membred & had emonge al other his eyen 8 bended. Now anone sayd thadmyral of spayn: "hye you & brynge hym to me for I shal neuer ete tyl he be dysmembred." whan the frenssh men vnderstode that he wold do put Olyuer to deth, whiche was al theyr 12 conforter, begonne to wepe greuously, & olyuer whiche vnderstode it sawe them waylle he recomforted them sayeng, in suche manere that the sarasyns wyst not what they sayd, "My lordes & my brethern, ye knowe 16 our necessite, yf thadmyral myȝt know that we be of the peres of fraunce our lyues shal be sone termyned, for no thyng shal he take pyte of vs but that we shal deye shamefully. wherfor I praye you that we al say as 20 I shal begynne :" to whome alle the other frensshe men prysionners dyd consent, & wold say & do lyke as he coundeylled them. after that thadmyral had comanded them to come tofore hym the paynymeis vnarmyd them 24 & bonde faste theyr hondes & blynfelde theyr eyen, wherof they were moche greued & daungerously hurt: & anon thadmyral furiously demaunded olyuer: "þou frenssh man, beware that þou ³lye not but say to me the 28 trouthe how thou arte named & hyde it not." Olyuer answerd & sayd: "syr, I am named eugynes, sone vnto a yeman of poure lygnage, and was borne in lorayne & cam on a tyme to the courte of Charles emperour, 32 whiche gaf to me armes & after adoubted me knyght: & also my felawes that ye see tofore you ben poure knyghtes aduenturous & haue enterprised Payne to serue our kyng, by cause þat by our seruyce we myȝt be auauanced & haue somme good guerdon & rewarde."

Balan enquires
which of the
French knights
overcame Fiera-
bras. (114)

Brullant points
out Oliver. (116)

Oliver warns his
companions not
to tell their
names. (115)

Balan demands
Oliver's name.
(116)

Oliver answers,
"Eugynes, the
son of a poor
yeoman," (116)

and says that all
his companions
are poor knights.
(117)

¹ Ed. grouude.

² col. 2.

³ E ij. back.

“O Mahoun,” sayd thadmyral, “now I am wel deceyued. I supposed by my god^t that I had^t had^t fyue of the valyauntest erles of fraunce & of the grettest, & thought I had the kayes of fraunce by the moyen of these 4 barons,” & anone calle^d barbacas his chamberlayn and sayd to hym anone: “depeshe the, take these frensshe men and despoyle them & bynde them harde to that pyler & after brynge me my dartere wel shiarped wyth yron, & 8 I shal shote at them and smyte hem at my playsyr.” themme aroos brullant & sayd: “syradmyral, I praye you that at thys tyme that ye do not that enterpryse, for it shal not be wel doo. ye see wel that it is in the euen- 12 tyde & ouer late to do Iustyce, & so ye myght be blamed^t, seen that your seygnorye ne your lor^{des} be not here now present. wherfore I praye you that at thys tyme ye do no thyng to them tyl to-morowe atte houre that 16 eche man knowe it, & your Iugement shal the better be approued. For I knowe wel that they haue deserued^t it wel euydently. And on that other syde yf charles the emperor wold^t yelde ageyn to you Fyerabras your 20 sone wyth his good^t wylle ye myght semblably remyse to hym these frenssh men that ye now haue.” “for your loue,” sayd thadmyral, “I am contente,” and sente for Brntamont whych was kepar of the pryson, and gaf 24 to hym grete charge to kepe the frensshe men and that he be wel sure of them, and that he sette them in suche place for to lerne how they haue wrought folyly for to come it to lys kepyngt.

28

¶ Of the pryson wherin that the Frensshe men were lodged^t, And how they were vysyted by the fayre Florypes daughter of the admyral, and^t of the beaulte of hyr: ca. iij 32

A fter that ballant thadmyral of Spayne had^t com-

maunded^t that the Frensshe men were sette in

¹ col. 2.

Balan is vexed at this. (1172)

and orders his chamberlain to bind the French to a pillar that he may shoot at them.

Bruillant interposes, and reminds him that the day is far gone,

and, moreover, Charles might give Fierabras in exchange for the prisoners. (1181)

Balan assents, and orders them to prison. (1181)

greuous pry¹son brut²amont the geayler made Olyuer & his felawes to auale doun in to a prysone moche daungerous, whyche was so depe and strayt in the grounde
 4 that no lyȝt myght be seen: in the which were put & nourysshed serpentes, crapaudles, and other beestes venemous and detestable; in whyche place al stenche was comprysed. and there passed a strene of the salte
 8 see whiche had hys entree wythout conduyt, by whiche water myght one passe whan the tylde was passed. & or the kepar of the prysone went he blynfeld them & shet the dore aboue them, & they beyng in this fylthe
 12 and stenche anon the water came so habundantly that the poure frenssh men were in the water vnto their sholdres. Thenne the woundes of olyuer began to smerte by cause of the salte water that it perced hys
 16 hert. ye may wel thynke the Payne was grete, But in espeyal of olyuer, which was hurt mortally in many places & had grete necessyte of remedye, & he was in a place where al his paynes were renewed & his woundes
 20 opened: for anon as he felte hym bayned in the salte water he fyl doun a swoune & had be dede that tyme ne had be gherard de mondydyer who susteyned hym. & ye may demaunde me how they were not drowned
 24 seyng that the water grewe alwaye. ²ye shal vnderstonde that in that prysone of aduenture were two grete pylers wel xv fote hye vpon whiche by grete force they gate vp olyuer whichi myȝt not helpe hym. & whan
 28 olyuer was sette therupon in grete anguisshe he waylled & sayd: "o poure man & vnhappy put vnder by fals fortune! O Reyner my dere fader, for goddes sake what do ye? knowe ye where I am? thynke ye what I make?"
 32 knowe ye my sorowe? ye shal never see me." this sayeng & other lamentable wordes of desolacyon the valyaunt man Gherard sayd to hym: "Syr oluer, wayle nomore: vnto suche a knyght as ye be it apperteyneth
 36 Gerard cheers him,

Brutamont takes the French knights to a deep dungeon,

full of serpents and other creatures. (1495)

The tide rises as high as their shoulders.

The salt water causes Oliver's wounds to smart.

They save themselves from drowning by climbing a pillar.

Oliver laments over his fate.

not to make such complainte. reioyce we our self & traiste we in god, whych I wold it plesed that now we that be here were aboue at large al armed & eche a good swerde in his hande onely : for I make a vowe to god⁴ that or we shold be put in to this pytte vaynquysshed I shold put to deth ijC sarasyns or moo." the frensshe men beyng^t on these pylers of marble afore sayd^t in

and wishes he had
his sword,
and could get at
the Saracens.

Floripas hears
their cries and
groans. (1202)

She is young and
well made:
with lips like a
rose in May:

her eyes like a
falcon's:

her mouth small:

her shoulders
straight, and her
breasts like two
apples.

So fair is she that
a sight of her
would satisfy a
man who had
fasted 3 or 4 days.

Her mantle was
made by a fairy
at Colchos.

suche wyse sayeng & other wordes Flotypes the syster⁸ of fyerasbras & daughter of thadmyrall herd them & had grete compassyon of þe complayntes that Olyuer made. this douȝter was yonge & not maryed, was wel comprysed of body ; resonable of lengthe, ¹whyt & rody as rose in 12 maye. hyr heyre was shynnyng as the fyne golde, & hir vysage termyned in lytel of lengthe : and hyr chere lawhyng, hyr eyen clere as fawcon mued, & sparklyng lyke ij sterres. the vysage had she denysed^t moche egally, 16 her nose strayt whiche was wel semely ; the ij browes whiche were aboue the eyen appyeryng made shadowe ; hyr chekys rounde, whyt as the flour de lys, a lytel tyssued with reed^t; & vnder the nose was her mouth 20 roundette, enhaunce^d in competent space, fro the chynne al wel proporeyoned^t to the remenaunte of the hede : with litel sholdres strayte & egalle : & tofore aboue the gyrdle hir pappes were reyse^d after the facyon of ij 24 apples, rounde and even as the coppe of a l[i]tel montayn. And she was cladde wyth a robe of purple meruayllously ryche fylle^d & pouldred^d with sterres of fyn golde, whyche was made of one of the fayrye, & it 28 was of grete vertu for the persone that had^t it myght neuer be poysone^d of herbe ne of venym. And flotypes was so fayre wyth hyr abyllements that yf a persone had^t fasted ij or iiij dayes with out etyng, & he myght 32 see hyr he shold be replenysshed & fylled. & more ouer she bare a mantell whiche was made in the yle of colchos of a woman of the fay²-rye (there as Iason gate the

¹ E iij, back.

² col. 2.

fiese of golde, as it is redde in the destractyon of troye
 almoost at the begynnyng) whiche mantel had so swete
 an odour that it was meruaylle. wherfor of the beaulte
 4 of this damoysel eehe man meruaylle^d, & as I haue said
 tofore she had wel herde the complaynt of the frensshe
 men in pryson & in espeyal of Olyuer of whome shē
 had grete pyte, and departed^d fro hyr chambre with xij
 8 maydens hir subgettes, & entred first in to the halle
 where as the paynyme were moche desolate for fyerabras
 whiche was taken & many other grete lordes whiche
 were deed. & whan the daughter had demaundē^d
 12 tydylges they tolde hyr þat hir broder fyerabras was
 taken & vaynquysshed ; wherfore anone shē made a
 grete crye and syghed for anguysshe. thezne was al the
 sorowe renewed for hyr sake emonge them, & whan she
 16 had cessyd a lytel of wepyng^d she sente anone for bruta-
 mont & sayd to hym, “what be they that I haue herde
 speke in the pryson that ben so sorouful?” ¶ “Madame,”
 said the porter, “they be frenssh men longyng to
 20 Charles the Kyng^d whiche neuer eesse to destroye our
 lawe, slee our peple, repreue our creauance, and sette a
 nought our goddes : & haue ben aydyng^d to slee Fyera-
 bras your broder. emong whom ther is one of grete
 24 ¹valure whyche is one of the best made men that euer
 was knownen, and hath ben so myghty that he conquerd
 in loyal batayl Fyerbras.” Anone florypes had enuye
 to here hym speke & sayd to brutamont : “I wyl speke
 28 with hem ; come and opene the pryson, for I wyl
 knowe of theyr fayt.” brutamont answerē^d and sayē^d :
 “Madame, ye shal pardon me : ye may not see them
 by cause of the fylthe and dyshoneste of the place : it
 32 apperteyneth not to you. and on that other syde your
 fader hath deflende^d me that noo persone shal approche
 the pryson. And I remembre me now wel that oftymes
 by a woman I have knownen somme shained^d & deceyued.”

Floripes enters
her father's hall,

and is told of her
brother's capture.

She asks Bruta-
mont who the
prisoners are.
(1216)

He tells her. (1219)

Floripes wishes to
see and speak with
them. (1226)

but Brutamont
refuses to open
the door. (1228)

Floripas is enraged, (1234)

and with a staff

strikes him on the head and kills him, (1251)
and throws him into the dungeon, (1257)

Floripas opens the door,

and asks the prisoners who they are, (1266)

Oliver answers her, (1268)

Floripas offers to release them if they will promise to do what she wishes, (1280)

Oliver promises, (1284)

whan floripes vnderstood she was for angre almoost fro hyr self and sayd to hym : “ O euyl glouton despytous, oughtest thou to yene me suche langage ? I promyse the that I shal make the to be payed shortly,” & called 4 hyr chamberlayn whyche gaf to hyr a staffe, and she made semblaunte to opene the prysone and brutamont gaynsayed it, & sodeynly she, seyng^t the porter wythstonde hyr, gaf hym suche a stroke on the vysage þat 8 she made hys eyen flee oute of his heed, & after he fyl down & there she slew hym & thrawe hym wythout knowyng of the sarasyns in to the prysone where the frensshe ¹men were : wherof they were sore aferde and 12 abasshed whan they herd hym, wenying to them that it had be the deuyl which wold haue tempted & deceyned them. Thenne anone florypes dyd doo lyght a torehe & dyd do open the prysone & put in the lyght tofore hyr for 16 to see the prysoners, & cam nyghe to the pyler & sayd to them : ¶ “ O ye lordes, telle to me what ye ar & how ye be named : hylde ye no thyng fro me.” Olyuer ansuerd & said : “ My fayr lady, we ben of fraunce & 20 men of charlemayns, & haue ben brouȝt hyther to thadmyral, which hath comaunded vs to be here in thyseruel prison : & moche better were it for vs that he dyd vs to be dysmembred & dye than tabyle in this place.” the 24 curtoys florypes, not-withstandyng þat she was not crystened, had so grete noblesse & so grete compassyon and said to them : “ I promyse you that I shal put you out of this prysone, so that ye promette & swere that ye 28 shal helpe me to that that I shal say to you.” Olyuer ansuerd : “ therof, madame, I you assure, & that ye shal fynde vs all suche by effecte as ye shal desyre, & faythful & trewe. For neuer were we other ne neuer 32 shal be, & be ye sure that we shall neuer fayle you as longe as we shall haue lyf in our bodyes, so þat we be furnysshed of armes & been ²aboue for to meddle wyth

¹ col. 2.

² E iiiij, back.

the sarasyns, I shal make to them a grete dyscomfyte."

"vassal," sayd the doughter, "ye may auaunte you ouer moche: yet ye be there and wel ferre for to be oute

Floripas begs him to be quiet. (1293)

4 and yet menace ye them that ben at theyr lyberte. It
is better a man wysely to be styll than folysshly to
speke." Gherard sayd to the lady: "Damoysel, I shal
saye to you one worde, he that is deteyned and strongly
8 empesshed singeth gladly for to forgete his Payne and
melancholye." And Floripes byhelde gherard the
curtoys whyche excused Olyuer of that whyche he
spake ouer hardyly, but thys was not grete meruaylle.

12 For of the Ioye that olyuer had whan the lady said to
hym that they shold be put oute of pryon hym thought
thenne to be out and armed at his free wylle. But the
lady sayd to gherard: ¶ "In trouthe, syr, ye can wel
16 say and excuse your felowe redyly. And I bylene
vervyly that ye can wel playe with maydens of eage in
somme chaumbre vnder curteynes & dysporte you in
loue: I trowe ye knowe how and what maner." Guillam
20 the scot answerd and sayd: "by my sowle, madame,
ye say soth, & of hym ye haue wel denyned: for fro
hens vnto ijC myle ye shal not fynde hys pere.

Gerard excuses him. (1296)

Floripas compliment Gerard. (1302)

^{1¶} How the frensshe men were put oute² of
24 pryon and were vysyted' by the noble
mayde Floripes and' of the beaulte of hyr
chaumbre: capitulo iiiij

28 **W**HAN the fayr Florypes had spoken at hir playsyr
wyth the barons pryoners she called hir
chamberlayn and made hym to brynge a corde & a staffe
bounden ouerthwart, & after lete it doun. And whan
the frensshe men sawe it they made fyrst Olyuer to goo
32 vp, & the lady and hyr chamberleyn drewe hym vp by
grete force: & after that the other wente vp lyghtly

Floripas sends for a rope,

and with it draws up Oliver,

and the others after.

¹ col. 2.

² Ed. outo.

Floripas leads them by an old disused passage to her chamber, (1319)

which was built by Methusaleh.

It stands on a rock surrounded by the sea, (1332)

and has a wonderful garden.

Maragond, Floripas' governess, recognises Oliver and the other French knights, (1352)

and threatens to tell the Emir, (1358)

Floripas pitches her out of the window, (1369)

ynough, and after slie ledde them by an olde gate and secrete, and wythoute knowyng of ony paynym slie made them to entre in to hyr chambre, wherof thentre was made mernayllously after the sarasyns werke. 4 Aboue the chyef yate was made by grete seyence the heuen & the sterres, the sonne, the mone, the tyme of somer & of wynter; wodes, montaynes, byrdes, beestes, & fysshe were there paynted of all fygures and lyke- 8 nesse by mernayllous facyon: & after somme scryptures the sone of mathusale dyd do make it. And thys chambre stood vpon a blacke rocke al enuyrouned wyth the see, and in one of the quarters ¹ was a gardyn 12 pretoyre meruayllously fayr wherin floures ne fruytes faylled neuer, & there of al maladyes and sekenesses sauf onely of the maladyc of deth was founden conforte and good helpe. There within grewe mandegloyre. 16 And with the fayre Floripes were in the gallerye these ladyes, Clarmondyne, florette, Florymonde, & many other fayr vyrgynes. And hir maistresse named maragonde sayd to Florypes: "A, madame, I knowe wel 20 these frensshe men. yonder goodly man that ye there see is Olyner, whyche is sone to Reyner of genes and broder to Audeyne, one of the fayrest that is borne of a woman. And thys is he that hath vaynquysshed fyera- 24 bras thy broder, & that other is gherard of Mondidier, which oftymes hath be praysed & honoured. And there is willyam de scot: & the camuse whyche is the hyndmest is geffroy langeuyn, but I praye to my god 28 mahomet that he curse me yf I euer ete or drynke tyl I haue tolde your fader my lord thadmyrall." Floripes anone chaunged al her colour whan slie herde these wordes, & moche secretly slie reteyned hyr ire ayenst 32 hyr & called thys woman to hir by the wyndowe, & gaf hyr so grete a stroke that she fyl to the grounde: and called hir varlet whyche cam to ² hyr prestly and threwe

¹ E v.

² col. 2.

the woman in to the see. For Florypes redoubted moche hyr fader & his malyce. & whan thys olde woman tumbled^t in to the see Florypes sayd to hyr:

¶ "Now goo, thou olde & despytous wretche; thou hast thy guerdon. I am now sure that the frensshe men that ben here ne shal neuer be encombred^t ne in daunger by the." and herof the barons made grete Ioye;

& thenne Floripes the noble lady came vnto the Frensshe men and kyssed^t them swetely, & whan shie sawe oliuer, whyche was al blody, and knewe wel that he was hurte shie sayd to hym: "Syr Olyuer, ne doubt ye not for

I2 I shal rendre you anone al hole and in good helthe :" & wente to the mandegloyre and took a lytel: & anone as oliuer had vsed it he was al hole & reduced^t in to good helthe. The barons beyng in this noble chambre

I6 anone had good fyre, and after were fette to the table and wel pourueyd^t of al good vytaylle and delycitous metes, of whyche they had grete nede by cause of the grete hungre that they thenne had endured^t. and after

20 mete they had^t the baynes chauffed, And thenne they bayned^t and refayted them at theyr ease; and at the comyng^t out of theyr baynes they were wel adoubed^t wyth mantels ryche of¹ sylke & golde brouder^t. and thenne

24 Floripes sayd: "lordes barons, ye knowe wel how I haue put my self in grete daunger to brynge you oute of prysone mortal, and ye be here in surete as ferre as no man hath herde vs. For yf of aduenture it were

28 knownen it shold^t turne vs to euyl. I am not in doubt Olyuer whyche is here present hath ouercomen my brother, to whome naturally I ought to do repreef. I knowe you wel alle, be ye nothyng abasshed^t: ye knowe

32 wel that ye haue promysed^t that my secrete shal be hydde emonge you." and after the sayd Florypes sayd: "lordes, I shal say to you there is a knyght in fraunce² whome I haue longe tyme loued^t: he is named^t guy of

The French
knights are de-
lighted. (1374)

Floripa sees the
blood from
Oliver's wound,
(1359)

and heals him
with a draught.
(1359)

The knights are
supplied with
food, baths, and
clothes. (1395)

Floripa reminds
them of what she
has done for them.
(1396)

Floripa tells
them she has
long loved Guy of
Burgundy. (1396)

¹ E v, back.

² Ed. frannce.

whom she had seen first at Rome with Lucifer,
(141) and overcame him.

For his sake she is willing to become a Christian. (1123)

Gerard says they will do anything it she will give them arms.

Floripas gives them a damsel a-piece.

All this was very noble of Floripas, but shows the natural curiosity of women,

bourgoyne, whiche is the moost godelyest man that I knowe & is of the parentage of Charlemayn & of the my3ty Rolland. ¶ On a tyme whan I was at Rome I sawe hym, & sythe that tyme I haue gyuen to hym myn 4 hert. whan my fader the admiral destroyed Rome, lucafar of bandas which was moche redoubte^d emonge the Paynims & the sayd guy of bourgoyne Iustedon to gyder, but the sayd guy valyauntly smote hym down to 8 the erthe from hys hors, whyche moche plesyd me, And took in gree the valyaunce of hym in suche wyse that yf I haue ¹ hym not to husband I shal never marye. And for the loue of hym I wyl be baptysed 12 & bylene in the god of cristen men." With these wordes the frensshe men were moche Ioyous, and gyuen grete thankynges to god for the good wylle of thys fayre mayde. and Gherard de mondydyer sayd to lyr : 16 "Madame, I swere to you that yf we now were armed & were in the halle emonge the sarasyns we shold make on them a grete dyscomfyture." But florypes was wyse and sayd : "lordes, late vs thynke wysely on our 20 affayres. And sythe that ye be in surete take a litel reste. Loo, here vj maydens of grete noblesse : Eche of you take one for hys owne, for the better to passe wyth the tyme : & reste and take your playsyr, And I 24 shal warante you. For as for myself I shal never haue to do with man but wyth Guy of bourgoyne to whom I haue gyuen my herte." Neuertheles for to consyder wel this chapytre there was a grete werke compryse^d 28 whan fyrist florypes the curtoys which was a paynym had desyre to speke wyth the frensshe men. alle this toucheth wel the desyre & wylle of wymmen for to knowe newe thynges and tydynge^s, but as moche as 32 touched the werke that she dyd ayenst the kepar of the pryson & how they were taken ² oute That was the werke of a man wel approued, and it had ben grete

¹ col. 2.

² E vj.

damage yf these barons had abyden in pryson. But the fayth of persones doth grete alegement of tormente, for the sayntes of heuen by theyr holy fayth haue obteyned
 4 heuen, and many other terryen men victorye of theyr enemyes. and wyl good ryght he that fyghteth for the fayth, and it happe that he be deteyned, the mercy of god is nyghe for to delyuer hym. The cause wherfore
 8 they were delyuered fro pryson was come fro ferre, that was of rome, for guy of bourgoyn whome shē had in loue, and was contente for to be baptysed and byleue in god for to hane the sayd guy in maryage to hyr hus-
 12 bond. wherfore it may not wel be comprySED how loue in thys damoysel was fyxed and comprySED of longe affectyon, the which was cause of sauynge of the prys-
 oners whyche were, as I haue sayd, in grete daunger.

and the knights
had to thank her
love for Guy for
their release.

16 ¶ How kyng' charles sente to Ballant thadmyral, seuen peres of Fraunce whyche wold' not haue goon : capitulo v

THe Duc of genes, fader of Olyuer, which myȝt not
 20 slepe ne ete ne drinke for the sorowe that he had for his sone, whan he myght no lenger endure, he came to kyng charles, and sayd to hym : "Syr Emperour, for the loue of god haue pyte on me !

Reyner is in great
grief for his son,
(1428)

24 ye knowe my sorowe : ought I to lose olyuer my sone, for whome I am in contynuell anguysshe ? yf I haue none other tydynge, I shal deye or ij dayes of melan-

and says he must
go and find him.
(1428)

28 colye, or of force I must put my self on the waye to goo thyder." whan charles vnderstode hym, he was moeued and full of compassyon for the melancolye of Reyner, & sente for Rolland and sayd to hym : " Fayre neuewe rolland, vnderstonde me. To-morne in the mornynge
 32 thou must goo to Aygremore, & shalt say to ballant thadmyral wythoute ony hydying, that he delyuer to the

Charles tells
Roland that he
must go to Balan,
the next morning.

¹ e vj, col. 2.

and demand from
him the reliques and
the release of his
prisoners. (1436)

Roland remon-
strates,

as also does
Naymes. (1416)

Charles says
Naymes shall go
too. (1452)

Basyn protests,
and Charles orders
him to go also,
(1458)
and likewise
Terry, 1472

Ogier, (1450)

Richard of Nor-
mandy, (1460)

and Guy of Bur-
gundy. (1488)

the crowne of Ihesu cryst & the other relyques for
which I haue taken grete payne: And after aske of
hym my barons whom he holdeth in pryson. And yf
he wythsaye the, say to hym that I shal hym do be 4
drawen vylainously, & after hange hym by the necke,
his eye[n] bounden as a theef." whan he had said, Rol-
land answerde: "Syr kyng and fayre vncle, hane mercy
on me! I am wel sure that yf I goo, verayly I shal 8
neuer see you." ¶ The duke naymes was there, whyche
sayd: "syr emperor, take hede what ye doo. Rolland
is your neuewe; ye knowe of what ¹valewe he is of. yf
he goo thyder, he shal neuer come ageyn." "And I 12
assure you," sayd Charles, "that ye shal goo wyth hym,
and bere my letters that I sende to thadmyral." Thys
sayd, Basyn the genewey came forth, and sayd to hym:
"& how, syr, wyl ye thus lese your knyghtes? I am 16
certayn that yf they goo as ye haue sayd, that there shal
not one retorne." ¶ Charles sware by his eyen in his
heed, that basyn sholl goo wyth the other tweyne, and
so ther shal be thre. Thyerry, due of ardayne, sayd 20
lyke to thother; therfore he was ordeyned to goo also.
Ogyer the danoys semblably sayd they ought not goo;
and therfore he was ordeyned to bere them felywshyp.
Rycharde of Normandye came to the emperor and 24
sayd: "Syr kyng, I am al abasshed how ye haue noo
pyte of your knyghtes, whyche wyllyngly ye wyl make
them to deye. I wote wel yf they goo thyder, ye hane
losest them." "by the god on whome I bylene," sayd 28
charles, "ye shal goo wyth the other; and thenne shal
ye be vj for to bere my letters to ballant thadmyral
whome I soo moche hate." And after, he behelde guy
of bourgoyn, and sayd to hym: "come to me: ye are my 32
cosyn, and of my next parentage: ye shall be the seventh
for to doo my message to thadmyral of spayne. ² And
ye shal say to hym that I purpose to baptyse hym, &

¹ e vj, back.

² e vj, back, col. 2.

that he holde of me his Royame, hys townes and hys
cytees, & that he delyuer to me the relyques for whome
I take on me soo grete payne and trauaylle. And yf he
4 gaynsaye it, say ye to hym that I shal doo hange hym,
and make to dye vylaynously." "alas!" sayd Guy of
bourgoyn, " ryght dere syr and emperour, I knowe now
wel that ye wyl lese me. yf I goo, I am sure I shal neuer
8 retorne." & thenne at even they went al to souper.

Guy beggs off,
but in vain.

And on the morne, assone as the sonne aroos, the seuen
barons aforesayd came tofore Charles, And syr Naymes
said for them al : "Emperour of noblesse, redoubted in

In the morning
the messengers
appear before
Charles, (1499)

12 al places, we been here for tobeye thy commaundement.

We praye the that thou gyue vs lycence and congie for
to departe ; & yf there be ony persone here present, or in
al thexersyte, that hath trespassed to vs, we pardonne
16 hym, & semblably yf we haue offendid to ony, In
thounour of god that it be pardoned to vs." with these
wordes all the frensshe men that were present began to
wepe for pyte. And charles sayd to the barons :

20 "Ryght dere and wel byloued, vnto god of heuen I
commaunde you ; and the mertye of his holy passyon
and of the holy crosse be in your ayde & comfort."

who commands
them to God,

And so they departed on theyr waye hastily, transpor-
24 yng them vnto the straunge contreye.

and so they
depart. (1503)

¶ How the admyral sente xv kynges sarasyns
to Charles for to haue ageyn fyerabras,
which were reecountred by the peres of
28 fraunce, and' slain : capitulo vj

IN aygremore was theme ballant thadmyral, al
sorrowful and angry, & had sente for xv kynges sara-
syns for to haue theyr councayll, whiche at hys
32 commaundement came : & one maradas, the moost fyerce
of the xv, spake fyrst to ballant and sayd : "Syr admyral, Maradas asks

Balan calls a
council. 1512)

why they have
been called toge-
ther. (1516)

wherfore hast thou sente for vs ?" ballant answerd and sayd : " lordes, I shal say to you þe troueth. Charle-
mayn of fraunce requyreth of me grete folye. For he wyl that I be subgette to hym, & that I holde al my 4 londes of hym. but thys shal not be ; and he is a moche fole, me thynketh, to enterpryse suche folyes. It were better to hym to take hys playsyr to slepe, & reste in his chambres hys olde body, & praye god in his 8 chyrches, and ete suche as he hath. Neuertheles I conneeyl you that ye goo to hym to mormyonde where as he is lodged, anþ say to hym that I comande ¹ hym, olde dotard, that he bylene in mahoun our god wyth- 12 oute delaye ; & aboue that, for to sende and yelde to me ageyn my sone Fyeralbras, for whome I am deteyned in grete anguysshe and sorowe. And furthermore I wyl that he holde of me al Fraunce and hys regyons : and 16 yf he do not as ye shal deuyse, I shal goo fetche hym wyth an hondred thousand men arm'd. And yf by aduenture ye fynde in your waye ony crysten man, smyte of his heed wythout ony mercy :" whan thadmyral had 20 sayd, Maradas answerd : " Syr admyrall, I knowe now wel that ye wyl haue vs destroyed, for the frenssh men ben moche felons. And yf we say that ye haue purposed, he shal sone make an ende of vs, for we shal be dys- 24 membrede, but bylene ye not that I say thys for cowardise or for to eschewe your commaundement, but that I wyl accomplisshe it. For I haue suche courage, that yf by aduenture I medle wyth these crysten men, I shal 28 put to dethe ten or I be wary. And yf I do not as I haue sayd, I wyll that ye do smyte of my hede." alle his felawes sayden that eche of them shold do as wel as Maradas ; wherfore wythoute more delyberacyon they 32 wente to horse-backe, wel armeþ, & grete speres in theyr hondes, with penouns ²reyseþ puyssauntly, and Iourneyed forth on theyr waye, and rested not tyl they

Balan tells them
that they must go
to Mormyonde,
(1522)

and demand from
Charles the sur-
render of Fiera-
bras, and homage
for France. (1526)

Maradas pro-
tests, but says
they will go.
(1538)

They arm them-
selves, (1546)

and start. (1548)

¹ e vij. col. 2.

² e vij. back.

passed the brydge of mantryble ; & assone as they myght,

they passed ouer. And the frensshe men afore named
came and recounted those sarasyns. And fyrist, due

4 Naymes espyed them, & sayd to his felowes : " O lord
god of heuen, what enterpryse hath these sarasyns made !

See ye not them, how they come ayenst vs wylt grete
puyssance ? aduyse we vs what is best to doo." Rolland

8 sayd : " my lordes, ne doubte ye noo thynge. Beholde,
and see them ; they be not passyng^g xx or xxx ; late vs

ryde strayte to them." They alle were of hys oppynyon,
and ryde forth fast ayenst them. ¶ Of the partie of

12 the sarasyns was Maradas puyssant & wel arm'd,

whyche went and sayd to the frensshe men : " how be
ye so Infortunat and cursed to come and mete wylt vs,
and ye be cristen ?" Duke Naymes ansuerd : " what

16 someuer thou be, thou spekest vylaynously and ouer
folysshly : we be men longyng to þe redoubted emperour

Charles, and goo in hys name to do a message to Ballant
thadmyral." Maradas sayd to hym : " ye be in daunger :

20 wyl ye defende you or doo otherwyse ?" Naymes

ansuerd : " we wyl defende vs by the helpe of Ihesu
our maker." maradas said : " which ¹ of you dare Iuste
ayenst me ?" " I am al redy," sayd Naymes. Maradas

24 sayd : " thou art moche presumptuous ; For yf I had
suche ten as thou arte, I wold confounde² them al wylt
my swerde, and bere theyr heles to thadmyral, wythout
gretely to wary me." and after sayd to hys felawes :

28 " herkene hyther, syrs, I wyl that no persone of you
moeue, For I allone wyl conquere them alle ; and after
I shal present them to ballant thadmyrall." whan rolland

had herde, he was almoost araged for anger, and after

32 sayd to Maradas : " thou hast folyly spoken and thought
thyng whyche thou shalt never see. or it be euen, þou
shalt knowe what we can do. kepe the fro me, for I
desfyre the." And whan he haþ thus sayd, he broched

After they had
passed Mantrible
Naymes sees them
coming, (1555)
and is frightened.

Roland advises
them to fight.
(1563)

Maradas chal-
lenges them, (1565)

and asks if any of
them will fight
him. (1576)

Naymes offers to
do so, (1577)
but Maradas
mocks at him,
and says he is too
old. (1579)

Roland is enraged
at this,

¹ e vij, back, eo'. 2.

² Orig. confonnde.

charges at him,
(1589) hys hors wyt his spores sharply. And they recounted
soo harde with their spores square & sharpe, that it was
grete meruayle that bothe were not dede with þe stroke,
theyr hawberks were al to-broken. And wyt theyr 4
swerde they smote the helmes rychely wrought.
Rolland was so furious, that he¹ helde durandal, and
araught maradas vpon his helme, that he descerkled and
departed it; & after by grete force recouerd hys stroke 8
vpon hys bare hede, and clefte it vnto vnder hys brayne:
and al dede ma²radas fyl doun to therthe. whan the
other sawe kynge Maradas dede, and that Rolland wolde
haue borne awaye hys heed, they loked eche on other as 12
al abasshed, and concluded to take vengeance on the
frensshe men, and ronnen vpon rolland for to haue put
hym to deth, but he defended hym ouer mernayllously.
And there-vpon that one partie came vpon that other, 16
& helde them in bataylle so valyauntlye, in especyal
the frensshe men ayenst the sarasyns, that alle the
paynynms were slayne, & none sancte of the xv, but one,
whiche fledde whan he sawe his felowes dede, and went 20
for to shewe how they were destroyed by the frenssh
men, & neuer cessed tyl he came to thadmyral. To
whome thadmyral sayd: "Syr kynge, ye be wel hasty
to retorne! telle me now how ye haue done." That 24
other sayd to hym: "syr admyrall, by malhoun, it gooth
ryght euyl, beyonde the brydge of mantryble we
recountred seuen glotons of frauunce, which were men of
kyng Charles al enraged, and sayd that they came in 28
hys name to do a message vnto you. & after, they ramme
vpon vs, and haue doon theyr deuoyr so gretely ayenst
vs, that al be dede sauf I, whyche am escaped wyt
grete payne for to come and shewe to you." whan 32
thadmyral vnder stode thys, he was almoost dede for
sorowe of the deth o hys kynges aforesayd.

¹ Orig. he he.² e viij.³ e viij, col. 2

and cuts him
down with
Durandal. (1605)

The other Saracens try to avenge
his death,

but are all slain
save one. (1624)

who escaped and
carried the news
to Balan. (1627)

¶ Of the meruayllous bridge of Mantryble ;
 of the trybute there payed' for to passe
 ouer, and' how wyth fayr wordes the
 4 frenssh men passed ouer the said brydge :
 capitulo vij

WHAN the frenshe men aforesayd had put to deth
 8 the sarasyns, they were al trauaylle^d and wery,
 and wente and rested them in a medowe al
 grene and ful of swete floures : and after sayd the due
 naymes : " my lordes, I councayle you that we retorne
 to Charles, and say to hym how we hane doon ; & I wote
 12 wel that he shal be wel contente whan he shall knowe
 how we haue gouerne^d vs." Thenne Rolland^d answerde
 and sayd : " How, Syr naymes, speke ye of retornyng ?
 Speke not therof, For as longe as I may holde durandal
 16 in my hond, by the playsyr of god I thynke not to
 retorne. For we wyl doo our message to ballant thad-
 myral, how someuer it be, and late vs do one thyng
 wherof euery man shal speke. late eche of vs take one
 20 of these hedes, and we shal presente them to thadmyral."
 Naymes sayd to hym : " syr ¹rolland, it semeth that
 ye be oute of your wytte. For yf we do so, we shal be
 anone slain." Thyery and the other were of thoppyn-
 24 yon of Rolland^d ; and so eche of them toke an heide, and
 rode forth on theyr waye. Due naymes was the fyrist
 that wente & behelde the brydge of mantryble, whyche
 was mernayllous, as ye shal here, and sayd to his felowes :
 28 " lordes, ye shal vnderstonde that beyonde the brydge is
 Aygremore, where we shal fynde thadmyral." Ogier
 the danoys sayd : " vs byhoneth fyrist to passe by thys
 brydge, whiche is moche daungerous. There ben xxx
 32 arches of marble wel spacyous & brode, whyche been
 soulded wyth leed^d and eyment, & with grete barres of
 yron : vpon² whyche brydge been grete towres wyth
 Ogier describes
 the bridge of
 Mantrible, (1678)

¹ e viij, back.² Orig. wpon.

The walls of the bridge are tenells,
and 20 knyghtes
can go on it
abreast.

The river under
is called Flagot,
(1639)

and runs so fiercely
that no boat
could live in it.

The bridge-ward
is a giant, Galafre
by name. (1700)

Roland says he is
not afraid to cross,
(1710) in spite of
the giant,

but Naymes says
he will manage to
cheat him. (1717)

fayr pylers rychely ordeyned^t, & the walles ben of grete strengthe. For at the lowest may wel be mesured ten ellys a brede, hyt is soo brode that xx knyghtes may goo arme in arme at their ease, & there is a drawebrydge ⁴ for to drawe vp, whiche descendeth wylten grete chaynes of yron. And aboue on hye is an egle of golde moche replendysshaunte and slivnyng lyke the sonne, that it semeth that it were a flame of fyre, whyche is 8 seen a large myle ferre, and the ryuer that passeth vnder is named flagot, whyche is byneth the arche by mesure xv foot, and renneth so Inpytuously as a quarel out of an arbalastre, in suche wyse that neyther bote ne galeye 12 may passe ouer, for the grete cours of the water. And more ouer this brydge is kepte wylten a geaunte for thadmyral, whyche geaunte is named Galafre, one of the moost terryble of humayn people. And he holdeth a 16 grete axe of stele for to destroye them that wyl doo ayenst hys wylle. And who that wyl speke wylten thadmyral must nedes passe by hym." "Seygnours," sayd rolland^t, "doubte ye no thyng, I praye you: care 20 not for passyng ouer the brydge, For I swere to you that as longe as it shal please god to kepe my body, & that I may holde durandal in my honde, I shal not doubt ony paynym the valewe of a peny, what someuer he be. 24 And by god that henge on the crosse, I shal smyte the porter yf he come tofore me, what someuer shal happe." Due naymes of bauyere reþreyset hym: "Rolland, ye speke not wysely. It is not good to gyue a stroke for to 28 receyue therfore fystene: late me do; For by the playssyr of god and of hys sayntes, I shal say to hym suche lesynges and other thynges that we shal passe wylten oufe daunger." whan the frensshe men came tofore the ²brydge, the porter toke an hondred knyghtes, & came & aualed the lytel brydge wylten as many guysarmes & other glaynes of defencē. The fyrist that went byfore was

due naymes with hys whyte heeres, for he was older than ony of the other. Anon the porter passed^t ouer & toke Naymes by the honde, & drewe hym ouer, & after 4 sayd^t to hym : “whyther wylt thou goo ?” Naymes ansuerd : “I shal say you the trouth, we be men of charles, the noble emperour, & goo to Aygremore to do a message to ballant thadmyral. But certeynly he hath 8 quytte his contreye of fals peple, for it is not longe tyme passed^t that on the felde we fonde xv gloutons, whyche wold^t hauie taken fro vs our lyf & our horses. Neuer- theles we haue gouerned them in suche manere that 12 here ben the hedes. beholde them wel what they be, yf ye byleue me not.” whan the porter herde hym, he was almoost oute of hys wytte for angre, & sayd^t to Naymes : “vassal, vnderstonde me ! ye must paye the passage of 16 the brydge tofore al thyng.” Due Naymes sayd^t : “porter, demaunde what ye ought to haue, & we shal contente you.” “by mahoun,” sayd^t the porter, “it is not a lytel. For I aske of you xxx couple houndes, 20 after, an C maydens chaste & of good maners, an C faweons me^lwed^t, an C palfroyes in good^t poynte & rested^t, and for euyer foot of the horses a marke of fyn gold ; & atte last I must hane ii[ij] sommyers charged 24 with golde & syluer. thus ought ye paye, or ellys come not here, and he that may not paye the trybute tofore deuysed, he must lese hys heed^t wythoute other excusa- eyon.” due Naymes was not abasshed, Notwithstan^tlyng 28 that he knewe the oecasyon that the porter sought that they shold^t deye, by cause that it was not possyble to paye that he had^t deuysed^t : & ansuerd to the porter in this manere, and sayd^t : “Syr porter, 32 yf I owe noo more than ye haue sayd^t, ye shal be contente or mylday be passed^t. Our bagayge com- eth after vs, and^t harnoys more in nombre than an hondred thousand, where there be maydens fayr, &

Naymes rides in front.

Galahre stops him and asks his busi- ness. (1726)

Naymes says they are messengers from Charles to Balan. (1727)

Galahre demands his toll,

30 couples of hounds, 100 maidens, 100 falcons,

100 steeds, and 400 marks of gold

and 4 packhorses laden with gold. (1740)

Naymes says that Galahre will find all this and more in their baggage, which is following them. (1748)

Galahre believes him and lets them pass. (1755)

Roland meets a Saracen,

and throws him over into the river. (1761)

Naymes rebukes him.

gentyl fawcons, & dogges grete plente, hawberks, helmes, and good shieldes wythoute nombre, And many other Iewellys noble and ryche : take of them as it shalle playse your wylle.” ¶ The portyer supposed that he had 4 said trouthe, and was wel contente, and lete the brydge doun, and after they passed ouer lyghtly. Rolland, which myght not forbere lawhyng, sayd : “ In trouthe, syr Due Naymes, ye haue wel spoken, for by lesynges 8 we passe thys brydge.” and rolland came ¹behynде alle the other ; & whan they were a lytel forth vpon the brydge, Roulland encountrid a Turke, and sythe sayd in his courage : “ A, lord god of paradys, late me do a 12 thynge wherof thou mayst be honoured, and alle thynge happenne wel,” and withoute sayeng of ony worde to his felowes, he lyghted doun fren hys hors, and toke thylke turk by the myddel, and threwe hym hasted in to the 16 ryuer. ¶ Due Naymes lokid behynде hym, and sawe the paynym falle, and was moche angry, and sayd : “ lord god of heuten, I trowe the deuyl is in the body of Roulland ! he can haue noo pacyence in hym, and yf god 20 helpe vs not, he shal cause vs al to be slain and vylaynsly deye.” For Rolland was so fyers of courage that he toke none heide of the tyme ne the place how to gourne² hym, but wold alwaye auenge hym on his 24 enemye where he myȝt fynde hym.

¶ How the barons came and’ spake to the Admyrall, and’ how they dyd’ theyr message : capitulo viij 28

The French knights enter into Aigremore. 1768.

THe barons afore sayd, whan they had passed the brydge and were nyghe unto aygremore, where as ballant was, they entred in to the towne in ³good ordynaunce, and wyth countenunce of fyersnes and of 32 noblesse. And they sawe in the stretes, fawcons and

¹ f. j. back. ² Orig. gruerne. ³ f. j. back, col. 2.

other byrdes of proye vpon the perches, grete oxen and
buefs slayn & flayn, fayre hangyng, and grete swyn
strangled; and they recouerted a sarasyne whome they
4 demaunded where thadmyral was. And he shewed hym
to them, where he satte vnder a tree in the shadowe, and
thenne they alighted, and due Naymes sayd: "my fayre
lordes, I shal bere the letter and shal speke fyrist, and ye
8 after." Roulland was there, and present hym, and wold
by force haue spoken fyrist. & due Naymes sayd to hym
"Say not one word, for ye be al fro your self, wythoute
hauyng attemperaunce, but god do not to vs grete grace,
12 ye shal make vs alle to deye or the day be passed."

And herupon they entred and presented them al tofore
the admiral wythoute ony reuerence. And due Naymes
of bauyere spake fyrist in thys manere: "The maker of
16 alle the world, to whom onely onȝt to be gyuen creaunce
entyere and honoure, saue and kepe the noble kyng
charlemayn, puyssauit, stronge & wyse emperour, rol-

20 laud & olyner, & al the other pyeres of fraunce, and
confounde, fro the toppe of the hede vnto the plantes
of the feet, the Admyral ^{ther}here present, as moche as
tofore yesterday hys subgettes were euyl pourueyd bey-
yonde þe bridge of mantryble. we fonde fyftene glotons

24 on the felde, which wold haue taken from vs our horses
and do to vs vlyonnye, but, god of heuen be thanked,
they bought it gretely and dere." ¶ Whan the Admy-
ral vnderstoode this langage, vnnethe he myght kepe
28 hymself fro enragyng. And there tofore hym came
the kyng that escaped, of whome I haue spoken tofore,
and sayd to thadmyral in thys manere: "Ryght dere
syr, thynke to aduenge you. These been the seuen
32 glotons of whyche I tolde to you, whyche haue slain
your kynges, and haue doon to you suche vlyonnye."

The admiral Ballant ansuerd: "late them be for thy
tyme;" and sythe after sayd to Naymes the duc², that

A Saracen shows
them the way to
Balan. (1772)

Naymes says he
will deliver the
message. (1776)

They present
themselves before
the Emir.

Naymes begins
his message by
cursing Balan and
his men.

The Saracen king,
which had
escaped,
tells him who the
French knights
are.

¹ f ij.

² Et. duc.

be shold synysshe hys message. And the due ansuerd that he so do wold gladly, and sayd in thys manere :

Naymes delivers
the message,
demanding the
sacred relies,
(1808)

"The grete noble kyng of Fraunce commaundeth the that thou rendre to hym the crowne, with whyche the 4 blesseyd Ihesu Cryste was crowned wyth, and the other relyques for whome he hath taken grete trauaylle and payne; & also his knygghtes whom thou holdest in prysyon folysshly, and yf thou do not as I haue to the 8 deuyseid, Charles shal make the ¹to be hanged by the necke on a gybet and strangled vylaynously." Thadmyral ballant, replenysshed of an enteneyon moche oultraceous, sayd to Naymes the due : "Thou hast 12 gretely defouled me by oultrace, and I haue wyllyngly herde the. Goo forth and sytte doun by yonde pyler, & these other shal speken whom I haue not yet herde.

Balan in a rage

Mahommet my god, to whome I haue gyuen myself, 16 gyne me an euyl deth yf euer I ete or drynk tyl I see thy hede flee fro thy sholdres." The due Naymes ansuerd : "yf it playse god my maker, & his blesseyd moder, þou shalt haue made a lesyng." After hym 20 spake Rychard due of Normandye, & said : "vnderstonde me, syr admiral! Charles the kyng, with his berde florysshed, comandeth the by me, y^t thou do the baptysye for tamende thy ryght euyl lyf, & that thou 24 sende to hym the relyques that thou hast in thy puissance, & also that thou rendre to hym hys knygghtes, whyche thou holdest wythout reson for prysoners. & yf thou do not as thou hast herde, charles shal do hange 28 the by the necke on a gybet & strangle þ^e, & shal neuer haue mercy on the." Thadmyral ballant supposed to haue knownen hym, & sayd thus : "mahommet, in whom I byleue, curse the! thou resemblest wel Rychard of 32 normandye, whych slew my ²vncle corsuble. Now wold Mahoun the god that he were here! he shold neuer ete mete tyl he were dede. Goo and sytte doun

bids him stand
aside, (1826)

swearing that he
will have him put
to death.

Richard of Nor-
mandy delivers
the message 1846
to the same effect.

Balan recognizes
and curses him,
(1860)

and bids him
stand aside with
Naymes.

¹ f ij, col. 2.

² f ij, back.

by thy felowe, vnto I haue herde thy felowes." Aftyr

thys thenne came basyn the genewey, & stode tofore ballant and sayd: "Ballant admyral, the noble charles,

After him Basyn repeats the message, (1864)

4 aboue al humayn creatures redoubted, commaundeth the to rendre to hym the relyques whyche haue been requyred of the, or ellys he shal do hange and strangle the as a theef prond." whan he had sayd thus, he went

8 and satte wyth the other. And after came thyerry, due of Ardayne, & dyssymylede his chyere & countenaunce of manere. whan thadmyral sawe that he had the re-

and after him Terry of Ardane, (1874)

garde so hydous, he was moche abasshied, and supposed

at whose appearance Balan is frightened. (1888)

12 that he had ben a deuyl. And after, thyerry sayd: "herkene to me, admyral, & reteyne wel my wordes.

Charles, the noble emperour redoubted, commaundeth the that thou sende to hym the relyques which thou

16 barest awaye fro Rome, & also sende vnto hym hys barons whyche thou hast in thy power, or ellys be thou sure that he shal do dysmembre the, & doo hange the vylaynsly by the necke." Thadmyral answerde: "vas-

20 sal, I praye the to telle to me, and lyde it not, what man is charlemayn, and of what force & strengthe ¹is he, of the whiche I haue herde moche preyse & vaunted?" Thenne the due Thyerry ansuerde: "I telle

He asks Terry to describe Charles to him. (1892)

24 to the, admyral, & lete the wete, that Charles is noble & hardy, curtoys and of good lyf. And be thou sure, that yf he were present here wyth hys excersyte, moche sone he shold gyue the a buffet vpon thy vysage. And on

Terry tells him that Charles is noble and brave,

28 that other syde, he setteth nomore by the than of an olde hounde dede, or of a roten apple." Incontynent tho ballant the admyrall bygan to lawhe for felonyme, & after sayd to Thyerry: ¶ "My frende, by thy fayth

and cares no more for Balan than for a dead dog or a rotten apple.

32 that thou owest to thy god, say to me now the trouth. yf I were now in thy wylle and subiectyon, as thou arte in myn, by thy fayth what woldest thou do wyth me?" "by my fayth," sayd Thyerry, "I shal not lye.

Balan laughs

¹ f ij, back, col. 2.

I shold doo hange the by the necke, and strangle the vylaynsly on a gybet or it were yet nyght." ¶ "Vassal," sayd the Admyrall, "thou hast sayd grete folye. For by Mahommet my god, in lyke wyse shal I doo of 4 the, as thou hast sayd of thy self. Goo thou and sytte by thy felawes." ¶ Thenne after hym came the good Ogier the danoys tofore hym, and sayd: "O Admyral of Spaygne, vnderstonde what Charles, the moost noble 8 of humayn creatures and moost ryche ¹ wythoute comparyson, demaundereth of the. Rendre and yelde to hym the relyques whyche thou hast borne awaye, or ellys he shal do dysmembre the, and doo the deye shamefully." 12 Thadmyral, beyng al wroth, made hym to sytte wyth the other. After hym, rolland[¶] the courageous came tofore Ballant thadmyral, wythoute doyngt to hym ony reuerence, and sayd to hym: "Thou sarasyn, vnhappy 16 & cursed, take here to my wordes! Charles, the noble kyng[¶] and Emperour redoubted, sendeth to the by me, that thou byleue in god Ihesu cryst, the maker of al the world, & in the gloryous vyrgyn marie his moder; and 20 do the to be baptysed, and thynke to rendre the relyques whiche thou occupyest and atteynest ayenst hys wylle. And also see that hys barons be rendred and delyuerd hole and in good poynte. For yf thou do otherwyse 24 than I haue sayd to the, Charles the valyaunte shal make the to be hanged[¶] as a theef." Thadmyral sayd to hym: "thou hast rebuked and blamed me proudly, but I swere to the by Mahoun, my god, & by Tarma- 28 gaunite, that I shal not ete tyl thou be hanged[¶] & strangled[¶]." Thenne Roulland[¶] answerd: "for trouthe, sarasyn, yf thou abyde to that houre, thou holdest faste ouer longe. Thou shalt not do so, ² For I doubte the 32 not the value of an olde dede hounde & drowned[¶]."

and calls the fifth messenger.

Ogier presents himself and delivers the message, (1910)

and after him Roland repeats it fiercely. (1806)

Roland swears he will neither eat nor drink till Roland is hanged. (1820)

Roland mocks at him.

Guy of Burgundy comes forward,

¶ Guy of bourgoyn came after hym tofore ballant thadmyral, and sayd to hym in thys manere: "Charles

commaundeth the that thou make to hym obeysance, and repeats the message,
 and that thou restore the relyques and hys barons; and
 thenne shalte thou do as a wyse man: and yf thou wylt
 4 bylene me, I wyl wel cunceyl the. Bylene in god Ihesu
 Cryste, whyche is almyghty, wynthoute ende and wynthonte
 begynnynge. And yf thou byleuest my cunceyl, thou
 mayst be in his gracie. And lo! what thou shalt do: take
 8 of thy robe, thy hosen, & thy shoon of thy body, and goo
 in thy sherte, and bere on thy body a sadel of an hors,
 and reste not tyl thou come before the face of Charles,
 and humbly presente thy self to hym, & crye for mercy to
 12 god thy maker almyghty, for thyn errours and oultrages.
 ¶ And crye hym mercy in the honour of god almyghty;
 and yf thou doo not thus as I haue sayd, he shal make the
 be hanged, brente, or drowned, and shamefully¹ to dye."

16 ¶ The Admyrall was more determyned and araged than he had been tofore, and sent anone for Brullant de Mommyere, Sortybrant de Conymbres, and for the other that were of hys ²cunceyl, and demaunded theyr
 20 aduys and cunceyl vpon these thynghes aforesayd. Balan is greatly enraged,
 Anone sortybrant sayd to hym: "Syr admyral, I
 cunceellye you that anone they be dysmembred and
 slain, and after ye may goo and ryde with your strengthe
 24 oueral, and come to mormyonde where charles is
 pensyf: yf ye may take hym, ye shal put hym to deth.
 ¶ After ye shal deseende in to france, & doo you be
 crownd there as kyng." "by mahoun," sayd ballant,
 28 "ye haue wel sayd. Now be it doon after your deuyse: to which Balan
 goo in to the pryon, & brynge wyth you the other theyr
 felowes, for to do after the enterpryse." And thus as I
 haue sayd, Thadmyral was of entencyon to make of the
 32 frensshe men aforesayd, after that is tofore deuysed.

¶ How by the moyen of florypes al the
 frensshe men were saued, and lodged to-

¹ Orig. shamefulluy.

² f iij, back.

advising Balan to go humbly to Charles

and beg for mercy. (1940)

and holds a council to consider what is to be done with the messengers. (1956)

Sortybrant advises their immediate execution. (1961)

to which Balan agrees.

gydre, and' the relyques shewed', and other
thynges : capitulo ix

Floripas appears
and asks her
father who the
French knights
are. (1977)

Balan tells her,

and asks her ad-
vice what he is to
do with them.
(1986)

"Cut off their
heads, and burn
them," says
Floripas.

Balan assents,
and proposes to
do so at once,

but Floripas says
it is dinner-time,

and asks for them
to be given into
her charge. (2000)

Sortibrant warns
Balan that women
are not to be
trusted. (2013)

Floripes the curtoys, after that she had wel secretly herde al the debate toforesayd, she came out of hyr chambre, and salewe^d hir fader, & demaunded of hym : "What been these knyghtes sette there a'parte?" Thadmyral ansuerd : "my doughter, they be borne in fraunce: the whyche haue sayd to me wordes of grete Importaunce ful of reproches, and haue blamed me and offendred gretely, more than I can telle you or say. What couneyyl gyue ye to me that I ought to do wyth them?" The daughter sayd : "I shal say to you, my fader, that ye wythoute longe taryeng do smyte of theyr heedes, for they haue wel deserved it. And do smyte of theyr hondes, & brenne them in a fyre without your cyte." "my doughter," sayd the admyral, "ye haue ryght wel sayd: ryght soo shal it be doon. Goo ye in to the pryon, and brynge to me the other." "good fader," ansuerd the daughter, "it is tyme to dyne, and yf ye wyl begynne to do Iustyce, ye may not ete tyl mydday be passed." This daughter sought none other thyng but occasyon by fayr wordes, accordyng to the wylle of hyr fader thadmyral, for to brynge al the frensshe men to-gyder wyth them that were prysomers.

¶ And after sayd to hyr fader : "gyue to me these Frensshe men! I shal make theym wel to be kepte; and after your dynner ye shall do Iustyce wyth lasse tedyaeyon, and thenne your people shal be assembled." ¶ To the whyche the Admyral consented, And was contente thyt hys doughter² shold haue them in kepyng. Alwaye sortibrant, which knewe the mutablyte of wymmen & thyneconstaunce, sayd to Ballant : "Syr Admyral, it is noo thyng eouenable that vpon thys fayte ye ought to trusste in a woman, by cause of theyr

¹ f iij, baek, col. 2.

² f iiiij.

mutablyte, & ye haue oft herd say ensaumples, and also ye knowe the trouthe how many haue ben deceyued by wymmen." Moche angry & euyl content was floripes

Floripas in a rage threatens Sortibrant. (2016)

4 of the wordes of Sortybrant And sayd: "horson Traytour, desloyal, pariured, yf I thought not it sholdorne me to ouermuche blame, I shold gyne to the suche a buffet on thy vysage, that the blode shold auale doun

8 habundauntly." And after these wordes thadmyral was euyl contente of thys debate. And therupon she took the frensshe men & ladde them in to hyr chambre wyth-

She conducts the French knights to her chamber. (2024)

12 naymes the due sayd: "A god of heuen, kyng of eternal glorye, who is he that ener sawe a more fayrer lady in hys lyf? Moche wel shold he be Inspyred with the grace of god that shal haue hyr in hys courage in

Naymes is struck with the beauty of Floripas.

16 loue." Rolland was euyl contente and sayd to Naymes: "What hondred thousand deuyls hath maad you to speke now of loue? It is not now tyme to speke of suche thynge." Due Naymes sayd thus: "Syr Rol-

20 land, dysplese you not, For I was ones amerous." the douȝter sayd to them that they were not assembled to plede that one ageynst that other, and also sone as they were wythin the chambre, the daughter made to shette

24 faste the yates, & anone rollandimette wyth Olyuer, and enterbraced eche other & kyssed wyth franke and tender herte in wepyng moche tenderly, and alle the other semblably; & Rolland sayd: "Alas, Olyuer, my

Roland and Oliver embrace each other. (2030)

28 faythal felowe, how is it with you sythe I last sawe you?" "Ryght wel," answerd Olyuer, and eche demaunded of other of theyr feates, of the contreyes, and of theyr lordes & tylynges. Now ye may thynke that

32 they were gladd eche of other that they were al togyder in good poynte by the moyen of Florypes the fayr lady, whyche dyd grete socours to crystendom, whan by hyr, hyr wysedom and dyscrescyon the

captayns of the cristen fayth, as moche as touneheth the exersyte of bataylle to destroye the myscreauntes and paynyme, ben founden alle togyder in surete, whyche fyrst were comen in to the hondes of theyr 4 enemyes mortall.

And here we can see how great is the power of woman when she sets her heart on a thing.

Floripas asks of the French knights their promise to assist her in her desires, (2039)

to which they agree, (2043)

She asks Naymes his name; (2049) he tells her, (2051)

Then she asks Richard's name; (2056)

and after Ro-land's,

¶ But it is grete seyence for to eschewe the wylle of a woman, whan by effecte she putteth hyr entente ¹ to a thynge, that her hert dyrectly draweth, and taketh no regard to the ende of her entente but onely that she may achyeue hyr enterpryse and determinacyon. Florypes retched of noo thynge but that shē myȝt haue tydylges certeyn of guy of bourgoyn, to whome shē had gynen hyr hert, and was contente to be crystened for the loue of hym. Thys fayr Florypes, whan shē sawe these barons to-gydre, she sayd to them : "lordes, I wyl that ye alle of one accorde promyse to me the fayth ¹⁶ of loyalte that ye shal ayde and helpe me of that I shal demaunde you, & toward me ye shal truly bere and endeuoyre you." "Ryght gladly;" ansuerd due Naymes, "and also ye shal assure vs that we shal be here in ²⁰ surete withoute ony double of ony man lynyng." shē was contente, & they were contente, and promyse^d fydelyte that one to the other. whan this was doon, the daughter came to due Naymes for to knowe what ²⁴ he was, and demaunded of hym hys name, the due sayd to hyr: "Madame, I am called Naymes of bauyere, Man and conneyllour to Charles the Emperour redoubted." "Alas!" sayd the douster, "your kyng is ²⁸ sory for you." After shē came to Rychar^d and demaunded of hym how he was named, he ansuerd to hyr: "dame, ²I am Rychar^d of Normandye." the daughter sayd to hym: "Mahomet curse the! thou puttest to ³² deth on a tyme corsuble myn vnele. But for the loue of these other thou shalht be in no daunger." Florypes came after to rolland, and prayed that he wold telle hys

¹ f iiiij. back.

² f iiiij. back, col. 2.

name. "I am named rolland," sayd he, "sone to due ²⁰⁶⁴
Myllon, & am neuewe to charles, sone of hys syster." ^{Floripas tells her.}

Anone the daughter cryed hym mercy & kneled doun
4 to hys feet, and Rolland^d toke hyr swetely vp. ¶ After,
the daughter sayd: "ye knowe what ye haue promyse^d
to me. I shal say to you myn enteneyon. It is trouthe
that I loue a knyght of fraunce aboue al them of the
8 world, whyche is named guye of bourgoyn, of whom I
wold^d gladly haue tdynges." rolland sayd: "I swere to
you by my hede that he is here in your syght, & that
there is not bytwene you tweyne the space of fourre foot
12 of mesure." "Seynours," sayd she, "I praye you that I
may knowe hym, and that he be gyuen to me, for of hym
is alle my playsyr." Rolland^d ansuerd and sayd: "syr
gny of Bourgoyn, come ye hyther to thys mayde and
16 receyue hyr Ioyously."

Guy of bourgoyn ansuerd:
"god^d forbede that euer I shold^d take wyf, but yf she
were gyuen to me by Charles themperour." ¶ Whan
Florypes¹ vnderstode hym, anone she chaunged colour,
20 and sware [by] mahommet hyr god^d that yf he gaynsayed
it she shold^d make them alle to be hanged by the necke
on a gybette. Rolland^d enhorted Guye that he shold^d
do hyr wylle, and vpon that he aduaunced hym, & hath
24 graunted. Thenne florypes sayd: "the sone of god^d of
erystyante be preyed and honoure^d, For I haue tofore
myn eyen the moost grettest playsyr that euer myn
hert desyre^d. For his loue I shal bylue in Ihesu Cryst,
28 & shal do me be baptysed:" & after, shie approched to
hym for to treate a lytel the desyre of hir hert, and
she durst not kysse hym on the mouthe, but on hys
chekes & chynme, by cause shie was a paynym. Thenne
32 florypes Ioyously and by grete loue came vnto a cheste
and opened it tofore the barons, and spredde a fayr
cloth of sylke. And after she dysclosed and shewed the
relyques of whyche I haue spoken tofore, emonge

Floripas tells the
knights how she
has long loved
Guy of Burgundy.
²⁰⁷²

Roland calls on
Guy to come for-
ward and accept
her as his wife

²⁰⁹⁵, but Guy
refuses. ²⁰⁹⁶

Floripas swears
that if he does not
she will have
them all hanged.
²¹⁰²

Guy gives way.
²¹⁰⁴

Floripas kisses
him. ²¹¹²

and after pro-
duces the sacred
reliques, ²¹¹¹

¹ f v.

the crown and
the nails,

which the French
knights devoutly
kiss. (2132)

whome was the gloryous crowne wyth whiche Ihesu
eryste was crowned with in the tyme of hys passyon,
and the holy naylles whyche perced hys holy handes
and feet : and after sayd to Rolland : " Loo ! here is the 4
tresour that ye haue so moche desyred." Whan the
frensshe men sawe thus tofore them the relyques, For
Ioye they alle wepte ¹moche tenderly, and one after the
other wente & kyssed them, knelyng moche humbly ; 8
& after, they were layed in to the cheste where as they
had ben tofore.

¶ How Lucafer neneue of the admyral vyo-
lently entred' in to the chambre, & after 12
was slayn of due Naymes in blowyng of
the cool: capitulo x

Lucifer enquires
of Balan if it is
true that Piera-
bras is a prisoner.
(2147)

Balan says it is.
(2152)

but that he has
twelve French
knights prisoners,
in charge of
Floripas. (2165)

Lucifer says he is
wrong to treat
them to a woman, sayd lucifer, " ye do grete folye. Wymmen al day for
(2166)

BAllant thadmyral beyng moche wroth & sytting
at the table, A paynym fyers & proude, a specyal 16
frende of thadmyral, named lucafer of bandas,
sayd to thadmyral affectuously : ¶ " Syr admyral, is it
trouthe that I haue herde say, that Fyerabras, your sone
and my ryght dere brother, is taken and vaynquysshed, 20
whiche was the beste knyght that euer was a-lyue ?"
Thadmyral said to hym : " by my fayth I shal not
hyde it fro you. A frensshe man hath conquerd hym
—whome Mahoun confounde !" Brullant of Mommiere 24
made grete deffence, and the kyng of Sulye. They bare
them soo wel that they brought to vs fyne of the
gloutons of fraunce, knyghtes of Charles, whyche ben in
pryson, and sythe ryght now we haue other seuen whiche 28
ben comen as messagers ²fro the sayd charles, which
hane vytupered and blamed vs gretelye in reprochyng
our lawe & despysyng my goddes. Florypes my
doughter hath conduyted them in to pryson." " Syr," 32

¹ f v, col. 2.

² f v, back.

lytel thyng ben chaunged and torned fro theyr thouȝt.

neuertheles for the more surete, yf it playse you, and by
your comaundement, I shal goo to them, and shal knowe
and that he will
go see if they are
safe. (2168)

4 what they be, and of what condycion." "Goo forth,"
said thadmyral, "ye say ryght wel, and make my
doughter to retorne wyth you." herupon lucafer, moche
proude and replenysshed wyth grete fyersnes, cam in to
8 the chambre where the doughter was and the frensshe
men, wythoute demaundynge to opene the dore but
lyfte vp his ryght fote, and smote it so stronglye
wyth hys foot that the barres & lockes flewe vnto
12 the grounde. Whan Flerypes saw that she was al
abasshed, And anone sayd to Rolland: "Syr noble Floripas calls on
knyght, I am ryght euyl contente of the vyolence that
is thus done to me. this is he that shold be my husband
16 ageyn my wylle. I requyre you in as moche as ye
wyl do me playsyr that ye wyl auenge thys dyshonour,
For I complayne me wythoute makyng ouernioche euyl
semblaunte." to whome Rolland answere: "doubte Roland promises
20 ye no thyng, madame, For, or he departe hens, he shal
knowe that he hath cuyll doon. And I promyse you
that he bonght neuer locke so dere ne of the prys as he
shal for the brekyng herof." Hereupon Lucafer entred
24 in to the chambre, and behelde the frensshe men al
armed wythout ony doubt he had to them. And
came fyrist to duc Naymes whych was dyscouered and
bare hede, & wythoute other delyberacyon took hym by
28 the berde, and drewe hym to hym so boystously that
almoost he had ouerthrown hym, & after sayd to hym:
"of whens art thou, veyllant? hyde it not fro me."
The duke Naymes ansuerd: "paynym, I am of bauyere,
32 and that is my contree, and am speyal eounceyllour of
Charlemayne, And al these barons that ben here been al
erles and grete lordes, and ben comen for to shewe to
ballant the admiral a message fro the sayd charles,

He goes to Floripas' chamber,
and bursts open
the door with his
foot. (2189)

Floripas calls on
Roland to avenge
this insult. (2186)

Roland promises
to do so. (2195)

Lucifer enters,
(2197)

and first seizing
Naymes by the
beard. (2204)

demands his
name, (2207)
which Naymes
tells him, (2208)

redoubted Emperour; & by cause that we haue not spoken to hys entencion he hath made vs pryonners.

and asks him to let him go. (221)

Neuertheles take your hande from my berde, ye haue holde me longe ynough; And be ye sure that I say not 4 al that I thynke."

Lucifer asks him to describe the French and their games. (221b)

The paynym ansuerd: "I am contente thy folye be pardonne^d the; but I demaunde of the by thy loyalte, what maner folke ben they of

Naymes says some hunt. (222)

¹fraunce, and of what enterpryse, and what playes vse 8 they whan they been in your royme?" "In trouthe,"

some play chess or tables. (222)

sayd the due, "Whan the kyng hath dyned, who that wyl may goo playe where hym lyste. Somme ryde 12 oute on horsback, & somme goo in to the feldes and synge, other make good chere at tables, at the chesse, & other playsaunte games. and in the morne euyer man gooth gladly & hereth masse at the houre whan it is sayd, and been wel charytable to gyue almesse to þ^e 16 poure peple largely and customably.

and that they are all brave and hard to conquer.

Also whan they goo to bataylle they been fyers and hardy, and been not lyghtly vanquysshed. Such been the peple in the contreye of crystente."

Lucifer asks him if he knows the game of the "grete cole?" (223)

Iucafer began to lawhe and sayd: "by my god Mahoun, vylayne & olde dotard that thou arte, thou spekest folysshly. It is no thynge so of yourfeat, ne frensshe men be of no

Naymes says, "No."

valure but yf they can blowe at the grete cole."

"In trouth," said the due, "I herde never therof."

Lucifer takes a ced and shows him how to blow it. (223b)

the Paynym ansuerd: "I shal teche you the manere," and he approached to the due nyghe by a grete fyre, and in goyng^t Rolland made sygne to the due that he 28 shold bere hym wel.

Anone iucafer toke the grettest bronde that was on the fyre, And blew so shaprly that the fyre flewe alle aboue habundantly, and after ²said to due naymes that he must also blowe. The Due took 32 the bronde, and knewe wel the manere that the paynym wold hurt hym, and approached to hym, and blew the bronde so puyssauntly that it fyl al on a flame and came

¹ f vj.

² f vj. col. 2.

to the vysage of the Paynym, in suche wye that it brente
al hys berde. Whan the paynym sawe that, he was
almoost out of his wytte for angre. The Duc Naymes

Naymes blows
one so as to burn
Lucifer's beard,
(2243)

4 wyth that smote hym wyth the bronde in the necke
that he brake the bone, and so raught hym wyth so
grete myght that his eyen flewe oute of hys heedl to the
grounde, and sayd to hym: " Fals creature that thou

and then kills him
with the brand.
(2248)

8 arte, Whome I byseche god confounde, thou wendest to
haue made me to muse in thy folyes. Now lye there
wyth sorowe." Rolland said to hym: " by my fayth,
syr due, ye can wel playe and blowe atte cole. blesseyd

Roland praises his
play. (2253)

12 be that arme that gaf that stroke !" ¶ " Lordes," sayd
due Naymes, " yf I haue maad hym to vnderstonde hys
folye ye ought not to blame me. ye haue seen how he
trussed wyth me." Florypes the curtoys came ner vnto

16 due Naymes, And sayd: " Certes, syr, ye be worthy to Floripas thanks
be honoureld. I see wel that Lucafer hath no more
him, (2256)

charge to playe wyth you at the cole; he is now at his
ease; I see wel that he remeuneth not. And I wote

20 now ¹that he neuer shal haue grete desyre to espouse
me. For by force he wold haue had me and my fader
had gyuen me to hym, but neuer wold I haue suffred it,
but rather haue myn hede smyton of, or suffred vylayn-

and declares she
would never have
married Lucifer.

24 ous deth."

¶ How, by the cunceyl of floripes, the frensshe
men dyslodged' thadmyral fro his paleys
wyth grete bataylle, and' how by enchaunte-
28 ment a gyrdle was taken awaye fro the
douȝter: ea. xj

F¹lorypes was wyse, and had consyderacyon that
Lucafer, whyche was dede, was wel byloned wyth
32 thadmyral, and sayd to the frensshe men: " lordes, Floripas reminds
knowe ye for trouthe that my fader loueth more thyshem that Lucifer

¹ f vj, back.

was Balan's greatest friend, and would surely be missed,

and advises them to arm themselves, (2270)

and suddenly attack the Saracens. (2275)

They arm, and start out two and two at night fall. (2280)

Roland in front,

first slays Cor-suble, (2289) and Oliver Cold-roe, (2291)

The Saracens fly. (2299)

Some jump out of the windows, (2300)

man than ony man lyuyngt. he abydeth for hym to come to dynar, & wyl not be at ease tyl he shal be returned. and yf by aduenture he knowe what is doon ye shal be here encombred and assayllede, and al the 4 golde of the world shal not redeme you but that ye shal be dede. Wherfore I councelyl you that ye doo arme you and put you in poynte. take lyȝtly your helmes and your shieldes, For people that been armed be moche re- 8 doubted of other vnamed. therfore I wyl not that ye be closed ne shette herin, Whan ye come in the paleys where thadmyral is, See that ye bere you and behauie you soo that ye be maysters and lordes of the place, 12 and thenne shal ye be wel lodged." Whan the doughter had thus sayd, they were ryght wel contente, & prestly armed them, and gyrded their swerde aboute them, And two & two yssued ous of the chambre, and 16 goon corageously as lyons, boystously as wulues hungry, in such wyse as they that wold abyde them ought sore to doubte and hane grete fere. And they went ous at the tyme that the sonne wente vnder, & bytwene 20 nyght and day. And the formest of them in the waye was rolland, and the other folowed hym ryȝt fyrsly for to fyght. Roulland eyred to hys felowes that eche man shold do hys parte, & slee al the paynyme and sara- 24 syns that they fonde in the paleys, whyche faylled not. Roulland smote corsuble mortally; Olyuer put to deth the Kynge Coldroe. Ther was not one but that they alle bare them wel. The souper whyche was wel 28 appoynted anone was torned vp so down & easte to the grounde; cuppes of golde and of syluer flewe and sownded in the place; Sarasyns goon to therthe slain and dysmembred: Other lepe out of the 2 wyndowes, whyche 32 after were founden dede: Other were all to-hewen, sholdres & legges smyton of. Thadmyral, all araged, put hym self to flyght ous of a wyndowe and lepe down in

¹ f vij. back, col. 2.

² f viij.

to the depe dyche. Rolland went, after whyche had hym gretely at the hert, & supposed to haue smyten hym, And atteyned the marble stone of the wyndowe in suche

4 wyse that his swerde entred a foot depe. "Brother," sayd Olyuer, "the almyral is escaped fro you." "Certeyn," ansuerd Rolland, "thereof am I euyl contente."

Neuertheles they dyd so grete portement and bare them 8 so wel that they were lordes & maysters of the chyef toure of the castel & palays. And after shettet fast the yates and were alle sure wythoute daunger. Sauf they myght haue noo mete. This passed a lytel whyle

12 the Admyral was in the dyches al affrayed, and yf there had not be somme for to haue drawnen hym oute he had

neuer departed ; and began to crye to his men that they shold come to hym to drawe hym oute. Brullant of

16 mommyere and sortybrant of conymbres drewe hym out. And after that sayd Sortybrant : "Syr Admyral, byleue me another tyme : Alwaye atte tayl of an olde dogge kepe you." Thadmyrall answerd : "I praye you

20 scorne me nomore, I shal ¹wel aduenge me or two monethes be passed. Doo sowne to assaulte for tassaylle the toure." Sortybrant sayd : "it is reson that your wylle be doon ; but the nyȝt is ouer nyghe ; by myn

24 aduys it is better to abyde tyl to morowe, And thenne your excersyte shal be assembled for to werke more surely." thadmyral was contente, and sayd by grete dysplaysance : " Ha, fayr Lucifer ! neuer shal I see you

28 more, I haue loste alle my ioye. O ye frensshe men, accursed be ye ! ye haue taken hym awaye fro me, but by Mahoun my god, to whome I haue gynen my lyf, to morne shal the syege be layed tofore the toure. And I

32 shal neuer departe for none euyl wether that shal come, Ne for thynge that may be, tyl the toure be taken and the walles layed on the eithe. And I shal make the frensshe men to be drawnen at the taylles of my horses ;

¹ f vij. col. 2.

Balan escapes by a window. (2311)

The French are masters of the castle. (2321)

but have no food. (2325)

Balan, who had fallen into a ditch, calls for help. (2330)

Sortybrant and others rescue him. (2335)

He swears vengeance. (2336)

Sortybrant advises him to wait for daylight. (2352)

Balan laments over Lucifer. (2355)

And after I shial make fl-rypes the putayn to be brente

He is sure the French knights cannot hold out, as they have no provisions, (2365)

in a fyre openly, and I am wel sure that they shal yelde them, For they be not vytaylle^t scars for foure dayes.

And of that other parte I knowe wel they may haue no 4 socours of no manⁿ whatsomeuer he be. For we holde

the stronge brydge of mantryble, & they may haue noo socours but yf it come ouer that brydge ; & of that other

parte, charles shal ¹hane noo tydylnges of his barons ne 8 shal not knowe whether they be dede or a-lyue, or in lyberte or in subiectyon." & here vpon they concluden^t

and went to their lodgys tyl on the morne. And on the morne erly, thadmyral sente for al bys subgettes & 12

concluded^t to laye the syege, and sware to holde it senen yere longe but yf he had^t of them his wylle.

Thenne come there so many piynymys in the contreye abouite that theyr lodgyses helde foure myle of space. 16

ye may thynke in what daunger the frensshe men were, whyche were but twelue personnes onely, and had^t none other conduyte ne conforte but to be wythin assyeged^t

in grete peryll of famyne. Neuertheles alwaye where 20 as the sarasyns dyd gretely theyr deuoyr for to entre,

yet they coude no thyng gryeue them^t. Thadmyral called^t one marpyn, a moche fals theef emonge alle humayn creatures, & sayd to hym : " Marpyn, by the berde that 24

I bere on my chynne yf thou mayst do soo moche as for to stele awaye the gyrdle that Florypes bereth, I shal

rewarde and gyne to the largely of my golde & syluer, & thou shalt be my grete frende. For yf I may haue 28

it, I am sure that the frensshe men shal sone be dede for hungre, and thenne may they nomore greue me."

¶ That gyrdle was of suche vertu that ²as longe as it shold hane dured wythin the toure, they wythin shold^t 32

neuer haue be famyned^t. "Syr," sayd the theef, "abyde tyl it be nyght, & I swere to you that to morne,

or the sonne aryse, I shal shewe to you the gyrdle, &

nor can Charles send them any help. (2367)

In the morning the Saracens assemble, (2369)

They cover four square miles.

Balan engages Marvin, "a moche fal-theef," to steal the magic girdle. (2387)

Mmarvin agrees. (2387)

¹ f viij, back.

² f viij, back, col. 2.

shal delyuer it to you." & herupon, whan it was nyght, he entred secretlye in to the dyches, whyche were ful of water, and passed ouer, and after whan he was at the

At night he crosses
the moat, 2493.

4 fote of the toure, moche subtylly with his engynes he mounted vp in to the wyndowes, & entred in to the toure, and took a candel, & after cam to the chambre of Florypes, & fonde it faste shette. But with fals & dyabolike wordes he opened it ; and whan he was wythin, he sawe that al þe barons were fast a-slepe, and he made so enchauntements that for no thynge they myght awake. and thenne he came to Florypes, and serched so

climbs into the
tower, 2406

and comes to
Floripa's cham-
ber, 2495

He sends the
French knights to
sleep by enchant-
ment, 2411,

12 pruyne that he took the gyrdle, & after gyrdre hym self wyth-al, and after thys he behelde the daughter al naked, whiche was moche fayre ; & was enelyned anone to haue defouled hyr, & began to take hyr aboute the necke,

He attempts to
ravish Floripa,
2428

who cries for
help, 2431,

16 whyche sodeynly awoke, & began to crye mochstrongely, and called hyr maydens & the barons. Wherfore the maydens came anone al abasshed & aferde. & whan they saw marpyn the theef as blacke ¹as a moore, the moost

Guy hears her
cries, 2441.

20 hardyest of them began to flee. Anon as Guye of Bourgoyn herde the voys of florypes, he came to hyr wyth hys naked swerde in his honde, and escryed to hyr that she shold not be aferde of ony thynge. And he came

runs to her cham-
ber, 2442,

24 so wel to poynte, that yf he had not come, the theef had defowled florypes, but as sone as the theef herde hym, he sprange oute of the bedde wyth grete haste, and Guye of bourgoyne recounted hym, and gaf hym so

and cuts down
Marvin with his
sword, 2448,

28 grete a stroke that he clefte hym by the myddel, and cutte a two the gyrdle, and the candel quenched. The other barons came after, and whan they sawe the werke,

He throws his
body into the sea,

32 wthy the gyrdle. And whan it was knownen that he had stolen the gyrdle, and was loste wthy hym in the see, there was moche sorowe for the losse of soo noble a Iewel. And Florypes wepte ryght sore, sayeng that

and the girdle is
lost, 2464,

¹ f viij.

the losse of the gyrdle may never be recomenderd.
Neuertheles the barons wyth fayre wordes comforted
hyr, in suche manere that they alle were contente.

¶ How the barons were assyeged' in the toure 4
wyth Florypes and hyr maydens, which
suffred grete hungre, and' how the god⁻¹des
by them were confounded': capitulo xij

Balan is surprised at Marvin's not returning. (2482)

Whan the day was comen, and thadmyral sawe not 8
Marpyn thenchauntour retorne, he was moche
abasshed, and demaunded brullant, Sortybrant, and hys
other lordes, cunceyl what he shold doo, consydered
that Marpyn was not retorne. Sortybrant sayd: "Syr 12
admyral, knowe ye for certayn that the theef is deed,
sytte he is not retorne and comen; but I cunceyl you
that ye doo soun your trompettes for tassemble your
subgettess, for tassaylle the toure and confounde the 16
erysten men." And wyth slynges and other engynes
they doo easte stones & darteres enmenymed, but—blessyd
be god!—the frensshe men doubted them no thyng
After they had contynued the syge a whyle, brede and 20
wyn began to faylle to the barons and maydens, in
suche wyse that they had noo thyng to ete. Thenne
the sorowe of the maydens, whyche were so fayre &
ful of compassyon, was ouer grete, and were al desolate. 24
And emonge the other, the noble florypes was moche
dysplaysaunte for the necessyte of the frensshe men, of
hyr self, and of hyr damoyselles, often tymes shie
swowned & fyl to grounde ²as dede: Guy of bourgoyne, 28
hyr spouse that shold be, took hyr vp moche swetely,
and recomforted hyr to hys power, & sayd to hys
felawes: " My brethern & lordes, ye see the necessyte
that we suffre; it is now thre dayes passed syth we had 32
ony brede. And yet it greueth me more for these

Sortibrant says he is surely dead. (2484)

and advises Balan to order the assault to begin. (2485)

The French defend themselves well. (2492)

but their provisions begin to fail. (2496)

Hunger begins to be felt, especially by the women. (2497)

Guy of Burgundy proposes to his fellows

damoyselles than for my self, And I say you for trouthe
that I may no lenger endure but yf we do otherwyse.
And be ye sure, that I had leuer to put my body in
4 auenture to be hurt and wounded mortally, than I shold
abyde here wythin enclosed wthy thys melancoly.
Wherfor, I say, late vs goo oute for to gete somme
vytaylle; for better is to vs to deye wthy honour than to
8 lyue with shame." Al the frenssh men were of thop-
pynyon of guy. There vpon Florypes sayd: "My
lordes, I wote now wel that your god^t is of lytel power,
whan he gyueth to you none ayde ne comforde; And I
12 say you wel, that yf ye had adoured our goddes, they
had pourueyed for you mete and drynke." Tofore that
she had fynysshed hyr wordes, Roulland^t ansuerd and
sayd: "Madame, I praye you that ye shewe to vs
16 your goddes that ye speke of. And yf they haue the
power that ye say, that they may gyue to vs mete and
drynke, & that they do soo moche that the ¹puyssaunce
of fraunce come hyther for to socoure vs, we shal al
20 bylene on them wythout varyeng." The mayde sayd:
"Anone ye shal see them," & Incontynent after that she
had taken the kayes, she ladde the barons vnder the
erthe, and shewed to them the goddes of the sarasyns,

24 whiche were in a place moche noble, precyous, and ryche.

And there were in grete mageste, Appolyn, Mahoun,
and Termagaunt, the god^t Margot, and Iupyn, and many
other, whyche were alle massy of fyn golde of Arabye,
28 enorned wthy many Iewellys, Odoraunt of bame and
encence; and many other tresours were there assembled.
Guy of bourgoyne sayd, whan he sawe soo grete
tresour: "A ! lord god^t, who wold haue wende that
32 in thys placee had be so grete rychesse assembled?
Wold god^t that Rychard of normandye had now Iupyn
in hys eyte of Roan, For he shold wel accomlysshe
wyth it the chyrche of the holy Trynyte. And that

to make a sortie
to get food. (2514)

Floripas says that
if they would be-
lieve on Mahomet
they would have
food enough.
(2528)

Roland asks to see
her gods. (2531)

Floripas leads
them to the
shrine. (2535)

where were
Appolyn, and
Mahomet, Termag-
ant, Margot, and
Jupiter. (2539)

and great trea-
sure.

Guy wishes they
had all that gold.
(2547)

kyng charles had thother goddes, he shold repayre ageyn þe chyrche of rome whyche is destroyed. And with the remenaunte he shold make men ryche, and to sette them in good poynte.” Florypes answerd and sayd: 4

“Syr Guye, ye speke vylaynsly ayenst the goddes; erye them mercy & adoure them, ¹to thende that they enclyne them to you to doo you conforte.” guy sayd

vnto hyr: “I can not praye to them, Madame, for I 8 see theyr eyen al a-slepe, and ye shal see that they may not here ne see,” and therwyth he smote Iupyn, And

Ogyer danoys smote margot, that they flewe to the erthe, and were anone alle to-broken. Wherfore Roulland 12 sayd to the daughter: “In trouthe, madame, I see that ye haue goddes that be not worth. Of them that been fallen to therthe I see not one of them remene, ne make semblaunte to releue hym.” Fro thenne forthon Florypes 16

had al theyr goddes in despyte, and bylened in Ihesu Cryste, sayeng^t thus: “I see, syr Roulland, that ye say the veray trouthe; but yf euer I byleue on them, I wyl that my body come to an euyl ende, and with good 20 herte I requyre that god that was borne of a vyrgyn, of whome ye haue enformed me, that he sende to you socours of fraunce, and that we fynde maner to gete

vytalle for to satysfyre our hungre.” 24

¶ How the peres of Fraunce went out of the toure, and dyd a grete bataylle, In which they reconerd’ twenty sommyers charged’ of vytaylle: capitulo xijj 28

She faints with hunger. (2584)

² **W**HAN Florypes had sayd, slie fyl down to the erth a-swoone for sorowe & anguysshe. Wherfor guy of bourgoyn wept moche sorowfully for the lone of hyr. H[er]eupon Olyuer the 32 courageous came tofore them and sayd: “My lordes,

I you assure, by the god that suffred deth for creatures humayn, I had leuer that my body were quartred and smyton in pyeces than I shold suffre this pryon, but 4 that I shold fyght quyckely wyth the paynymeſ,” & semblably sayl rolland. Wherfore, wythout other to which all agree. delyberacion, they sette theyr shieldes in good poynte, and mounted on horsbaek, and aualed the brydge, & 8 wyth a stedfast courage made them redy. & whan they were alle afore the toure of marble, Rolland sayd to the other: “Syr Naymes, or ye, syr Ogyer, it byhoueth They sally out. 2615,

that one of you¹ abyde for to kepe the place, that at the 12 retornyng we may entre surely.” ¶ The Duke Naymes conde take noo pacyence, but that he answerd thus: “Syr Roulland, thynke not that I be so vnhappy of persone ne of lygnage that euer I shold be reproched, 16 and that euer I shold be your portyer. I wyl not doo so in noo wyse: though I be olde, yet can I torne myn hors. For I am harde of ²synewes, and haue myn herte wel assured, and wyl be hardy ynough for to smyte 20 vpon myn enemyes whan tyme shal requyre, ne doubt ye no thyng therof.” Rolland ansuerd: “syr, ye say wel, ye shal come wyth vs. Thyerry or geffroy, that one of you two shal abyde.” but it was not their playssyr 24 to abyde enclosed. Nenertheles, at the request of Rolland, thyerry abode with geffroy, whyche shettell the yates surely after that the other barons were wythoute, whyche, eche with his shielde tofore hym and swerde in 28 hys hande, wente mustryng them tofore the castel. Thadmyral lokyng out at a wyndowe, knewe the frenssh men, Wherfor hastily he sente for brullant and Sortibrant to come to hym wyth other, to whome he sayd: 32 “my barons and subgettes, the frenssh men ben comen, and me semeth they wyl fyght. yf they be not al slayn, i shal be euyl contente. Wherfore do sowne your hornes for tassemble your peple; ye tary ouer longe.”

Oliver proposes a sortie, (2595)

to which all agree.

They sally out. 2615,

Roland wishes Naymes or Ogyer to remain behind to guard the gate. 2618,

Naymes refuses,

2619,

and says, though he is old yet he can still fight. 2620,

Thierry and Geffrey agree to remain. 2621,

Balan sees them coming, (2638)

and bids Sortibrant assemble his men to resist them. 2645,

¹ orig. yon.

² g. j. back.

The Saracens
attack them,

but in a little
while more than
100 are killed.
(2656)

Clacion, Balan's
nephew, comes
up with 15,000
men. (2664)

Roland cheers on
his companions.
(2670)

All the Saracens
are afraid of him.
(2679)

After the battle
the French
knights meet 20
pack-horses, laden
with provisions
for Balan. (2692)

They kill the
escort. (2703)

And assone as they had so doon, a grete multytude of sarasyns were there assembled, & came and assayled the frensshe men. But rolland, that helde durandal in hys honde, with his felowes came vpon the mastyn & sarasyns by suche a furour, that in a lytel whyle moo than an hondred were slain. ¹For vnhappy was he that came to socoure the sarasyns. Thenne came Clacyon, whyche was neuewe to the admiral, with xv 8 thousand fyglyng men.—And know ye for certayn, that in that tyme in spayn was noo sarasyn more doubted than he.—Whan the barons sawe hym come, Rolland escryed gherard, Ogyer & Guy: “O noble 12 knyghtes! in thonour of god, eche of you do so his denoyr that at thys tyme, wyth vyctorye, we may obtayne vytaylle for the maydens in the toure.” That sayd, Rolland smote his hors wthy hys spores, and wthy 16 durandal smote a fyers Paynym named Rampyn soo myghtely, that he clefte hede and body at a stroke; wherof they þat were there present were abasshed. & theme the sarasyns doubted so strongly rolland, that 20 there was not a man durst put hym self tofore hym, but yf he thought to deye. Gherard of monlydyer sayd: “My brethern & lordes, Who wyl here-after haue playsyr & be honoured, it is tyme that he shewe hym, 24 for often by one vnhappy man a valyaunt man is in daunger.” Wherfor with that word al these barons were moche more feruent than they had be, to thende that every man shewed hym self suche as he ouȝt to 28 be. & after that þe batayll was fynysshed for that day, as god wold, the barons fonde by ²the tour aforesayd a grete aventure, For they sawe passe by the castel xx sommyers laden wthy vytayl, that is to say, brede, wyn, 32 venyson, & other vytaylles ynow, and a paynym conduyted them of margote vnto the sarasyns: but Inconyent the ledars of the sarasyns and of theyr vytayl

¹ g. j. back, col. 2.

² g. ij.

were slayn anone of the barons, & the due Naymes & Wylyam the scot conluyted & ledde them forth. And Rolland and the other came & auoyded the place, 4 in suche wyse that they were dryuen in to the tour ; but this thyng was not doon without daunger and grete payne.

and drive them
inside the castle
gates. (2704)

¶ How guy of bourgoyn was taken of the
8 sarasyns, beten vylaynously, and' de-
maunded' of thadmyral, and the com-
playntes that Florypes made for hym, &
other maters : capitulo xiiij

12 **A**S I hauе sayd tofore, the barons of fraunce, thus as
they wente in theyr repaire, and' ladde the som-
myers afore sayd, there came so grete habundlaunce of
men of armes of the partie of kyng Claryon, that it was

The Saracens
press heavily on
the French. (2705)

16 merueylle. There was theme an harde and stronge
recountre, in so moche that due basyn was slayn, &
Aulbery hys ¹sone. For whan he sawe his fader deye,
Incontyneant he fyl vpon hym, and there he was slain

Basyn and Aubrey
are slain, (2730)

20 and abode. and yet thys was not the moost harm, For
the noble guy of bourgoyn, after that he was menaced of
kyng Claryon, he auauanced hym for to smyte hym. that
came hym so euyl to passe, that hys hors was slayn
24 vnder hym of the paynmys, & soleynly he was en-
uyronned of moo than an hon bred knyghtes sarasyns,

and Guy taken
prisoner, (2743)

whyche took hym, & took of hys helme fro hys hede, &
after bounde hys eyen, so that he saw nothyng, and
28 ledde hym forth, hys handes bounden behynde hym at

and led away
blindfolded. (2747)

his backe, and whan guy sawe hym thus deteyned, he
began to crye wyth an hye voys : ¶ " O Ihesus, veray
god, whych hast made & formed me ! whyther goo I now,

He prays and
cries for help.
(2749)

32 that am euyl fortunel ? O Ihesus, conforte me ! O
noble Charlemayn, ryght noble emperour, and myn

¹ g ij, col. 2.

vncle, thou shalst never see me!" The kyng^t claryon sayd to hym: "Fayr frende, no thynge shal auayle the, thy cryeng ne thy brayeng. I shal delyuer the al lyuyng^t to the admiral of spayn thys day, And⁴ to-morne thou shalst be hanged." But now ye may wel thynke how the other peres of Fraunce, hys felowes, were euyl contente whan they sawe the Erle Guye soo prysommer.

[¶] Neuertheles¹ they dyd grete 8 feates of armes or they were constrainyd to entre in to the tour, & assone as they were descended, & the yates barred, enryche went to dlyner: and thenne floripes cam anon to rolland, & said to hym: "syr rolland, I 12

The French are so hard pressed that they have to take refuge in the castle. (2776)

Floripas enquires after Guy. (2781)

Roland tells her he is a prisoner. (2783)

Floripas swoons,

and after declares she will surrender the castle if Guy be not rescued before two days. (2792)

requyre you that ye say to me where is syr guye of bourgoyne my husbond become. I wote wel, whan ye departed hens, that he went wyth you emonge thother.

Ye ought to bryng hym to me ageyn. I shal never be 16 Ioyous at the hert tyl I knowe where he is." Rolland^t

ansuerd^t: "ha, Florypes, curtoys lady! in hym trust ye no more, for certes ye haue lost hym. ye shal never see hym; the paynyme haue ledde hym maulgre vs, & we 20 knowe not what they wyl do wyth hym." florypes heer yng these wordes, for sorowe & anguysshe fyl to the erth alle a-swoune more than iij tymes as dede; but rolland^t, whych wepte for hyr, oft releued hyr: & whan she was 24 rysen, she began to erye with an hye voys: "O barons of fraunce, by that god that maad heuen & erthe, yf I haue not guy of bourgoyn, to whome I ought to be maryed, I shal yelde thys toure or the nexte day be 28 passed. O holy vyrgyn marye! I shold be espoused to hym, and for lone of hym be baptysed and^t be crysten. Alas! our loues haue sone faylled. This sorowe hath made me² wel to forgete the hungre that I haue had^t 32 these iij dayes. Alas! I am vnhappy." Rolland^t myght not see the melancholye of thys Florypes, but promyset^t hyr to make hyr glad^t wythin ij dayes, for

¹ g ij. back.

² g ij. back. col. 2.

thenne atte ferhest she shold see syr guye at hyr
playnsyr, and that she shold no thyng^t doubte therof ; Roland promises
“ for knowe ye surely,” sayd rolland, “ I had leuer to
4 be quarterl than he shold not come ageyn, & he shal
be rendred to you, or his deth shal be sore auengedl. &, he will rescue
madame, ye knowe wel that your sorow & wepyng may
not bryng hym ageyn, & ye wote wel that it is thre
8 dayes passed syth we ete, we haue purchacedl vytayl for
vs & these damoyselles, of whome ye see the pyte, late
vs take pacyence of the lytel quantyte, & be we contente
to entretiene the lyf : ” for ye ouȝt to knowe that they
12 myght not recouure the sommyers with vytaylle, by
cause of the trouble of guy of bourgoyn, whyche was
deteyned prysoner. After that Rolland harl said thys,
the barons and the damoyselles thanked god of al, and
16 fedde them suffsauntlye, in praynsyng^t and lawdyng^t
god deouutelye.

and advises her to
take some of the
food which they
had won. (2812)

Now late vs speke a lytel of Guye of bourgoyn,
whiche was ledde tofore the admyral. moche troubledl, Meanwhile Guy
is led before
Balan, 2820

20 dyscolourd, & chaungedl of vysage was the sayd Guye
¹by cause he had not eten in thre dayes tofore, & for þe
daunger that he felte hym to be in the handes of his
enemyes. & there tofore the admyral he was al des-
24 poyled of his armes ; & theane appyered his body wel
membred, & ballant demaunded what was his name &
who he was. the baron ansuerd : “ Admyral, I fere not
to say the trouthe ; I am called guy of bourgoyn, sub-
28 gette to the crowne of fraunce, & cosyn germayn to
rolland the valyaunt, which is the man that ought wel
to be doubted.” ballant ansuerd : “ I knowe the wel
ynough. it is more than vij monethes goon that my
32 douȝter hath had the in grete loue, which dyspleseth me
gretely : & I know wel that she loueth the more than
ony man lyuyng ; & I for that loue haue lost many men
of grete facion, & am put out of my tour, the chyef

who demands his
name. 2826

Guy tells him.
2829

Balan recognizes
him as his daugh-
ter's love,

and the cause of
all his trouble.
2836

strengthle of al my contreye, but yf al be yolden to me
ageyn shortly, þou shalt be quarterd in shiort tyme, &
dysmembred, & more-ouer I demandde þat thou say to
me the trouthe, who been they that ben enclosed in the 4
tour, of whom we haue ben assaylded with so daunger-
ously."

Balan demands
the names of the
knights in the
castle. (2838)

Guy ansuerd: "gladly I shal say to the. Be
thou wel sure that rolland the valyaunte is there,
Olyuer, his felowe, ryght courageous, Thyerry, due of 8
Ardayne, Ryehard of Normandye, Gherard¹ of Mun-
dydyer, Naymes due of bauyere, & basyn the genewey,
whom ye haue slain; but, by the grace of god & helpe
of charles, his deth shal be to you dere soldie." Thad- 12
myral was ryȝt euyl contente of the menaces of Guye;

A Saracen gives
him a blow on the
mouth. (2850)

Wherfore a moche fyers sarasyn took hys fyste and
smote guye on the vysage in suche wyse that the blode
yssued oute of hys nose & mouth habundantly. wyth 16
that stroke, guy was sette a-fyre for augre and furour,
and lefte not for to be forthwith quartred, & he was not
holden, bnt that he toke that same sarasyn by the heyre
wyth one of hys handes, and wthy that other hande he 20
smote hym vpon the grete bone of þe necke behynde,
that he brake it, And, wythoute moeuyng of hande or
foot, he fyl down deed to the grounde tofore the admiral.

Guy seizes him
with one hand,
and with the other
breaks his neck.
(2856)

¶ Ballant was soo euyl contente wthy that stroke, that 24
he was al enraged for the deth of the paynym, as for
the mysprysyng that guy had doon in hys presencee to-
fore his eyen, and eryed with a londe voys that he shold
be taken. & assone as he had sayd the worde, the sara-

The Saracens fall
on him and beat
him nearly to
death. (2860)

syns as wulues enraged, whyche wthy theyr feet and
handes al to-bete hym, in suche wyse that he knewe not
where he was, And had slayne hym yf the admiral had
not commaunded them that ²he shold not be put to 32
deth in suche manere.

¹ g iij. col. 2.

² g iij. back.

¶ How the paynyme had' purposed' to haue
hanged' Guye of bourgoyne, seyng' the
crysten men, whyche socoured' hym
4 myȝtely: capitulo

xv

After that guye of bourgoyn was wel bounden and
astrayly, Thadmyral sente to come to hym brillant
of mommyere, Sortybrant of conymbres, and for many
8 other of his councelyl, and sayd to them: "my frendes,
I praye you that ye gyue to me councelyl what I ought
to do wyth thys prysonner, whyche dothe me so grete
reproche & despysyng^t, as ye see and knowe." "Syr,"

Balan calls a
council. (2869)Sortybrant advises
him to have Guy
hanged. (2884)in front of the
castle,and to set an
ambush for the
French if they
should try to
rescue him. (2880)

12 sayd Sortybrant, "I shal gyue to you good^t councelyl.
yf ye wyl byleue me, ye shal doo reyse vp a galowe tree
nyghe to the dyches of the toure, in whych been the
prysonners of fraunce, & to-morne ye shal do hange this
16 prysoner; & see that ye haue in a secrete place, nyghe
vnsto þ^e said galowes, v thousand turkes, wel arme^t & in
good^t poynte: and I am sure that the frey[n]sshe men be
so hardy and oute of mesure, that, whan they shal see
20 their felowe for to be hanged^t, they shal come oute for
to socoure hym; & your peple that shal be hydde in
1 the busshement shal come out on them & take them.
Thenne shal ye haue them al surely, for to do wyth, your
24 playsyr." this councelyl was approued by thadmyral to
be good, & was therwyth wel content; wherfore, wyth-
oute takyng^t of ony other delyberacyon, the galowes
were made as afore is sayd. & ryght nyghe to the place

28 was a lytel wode, & lete put therin secretly xx M
fyghtyng men, & comanded them to be gouerned by the
kyng claryon & other capytayns. & after, thadmyral made
guy of bourgoyne to be ledde with xxx sarasyns vnto
32 the galowes, whyche cessed not to bete and smyte on
hym with grete stauen, whyche greued hym sore: &
they bonde his handes behynde hys backe moche

This advice is
approved. (2891)20,000 Saracens
are placed in
ambush. (2892)and Guy is led
bound to the
gallows. (2905)¹ g iii, back, col. 2.

straytly, & whan he felte a grete corde abonte his necke, and hys eyen bounden, & sawe no thynge whyther he went, Thys thynkyng, wyth an hye voys he began to crye : “ O redemptour of the world, my maker and my god, for whos name I am in Payne, and goo to deye an euyl deth, the meryte of thy passyon take my soule in to thy kepyng, for the body taketh hys ende ! And lyke as I haue nede of thy helpe, So I beseche and requyre the to councayl and eomforte me. ¶ O noble barons

He calls on his
companions for
help. (2911)

of fraunce, ye shal never see me : yf ¹ye suffre me to be hanged, it shal be to you grete shame. O Roulland, fayr cosyn, remembre me ! or ellys shal ye never see me on lyne.” he thus sayeng, and other pyetous wordes, Rolland was in a wyndowe, and behelde ouer a lytel roche, and sawe the galowes reyset. Wherfore he came to hys felawes and sayd : “ I meruaylle moche what thys meneth, that I haue seen the galowes sette vpon the dyches. I wote never to what purpoos it is doon.”

Roland, from a
window, sees the
gallows. (2913)

and tells the
others. (2917)

Whan the other had seen it, Due Naymes sayd to them, that withoute faute they were made for to hange on guye of bourgoyne, & forthwith they saw hym eomyng al despoyled, and was ledde toward the galowes ; & they knewe wel that yf he were not socoured and resued, that he shold be hanged & put to deth. Whan the fayr florypes herde them plede, slie came to them for to wete what it was ; and after whan slie sawe the galowes reyset, and guy, hir loue and tocomyng husband, so shamefully ledde, ye may thynke in what estate she was reduced ; and began to crye : “ O noble knyghtes, shal ye suffre guy of bourgoyn your felawe to be hanged tofore your eyen ? Truste ye none other, that yf he deye,

Floripes implores
Roland to rescue
Guy, 2928

for she can never
survive him.

by the same god that fourmed me I shal lepe out of the wyndowe, & shal deye in despe²raeyon.” and after she came to rolland, & kneled down on both hyr knees, and kyssed hys feet humbly, in sayeng : “ Syr Rolland, in

thonour of god I requyre the that it may playse the to take the Payne for to rescowe & socoure my loue guye,
and ellys I am a loste woman. Thynke for to arme

She urges them
to lose no time.
(2929)

4 you, and I shal goo and make redy your horses, for the tyme is ouer shhort ; so that by the playsyr of god ye shal be there in tyme.” Thenne Rolland & his felowes arme^d them moche hastily, and gyrdle theyr swerde^s

The French arm
themselves
hastily, mount,
and prepare to
start. (2938)

8 and shieldes, and wente oute of the toure, and on hors backe sprange oute. And or they rode ony ferther,

rolland sayd : “ lordes, at thys houre lyeth our deth & our lyf in suche wyse, that yf we haue not good con-
12 duyte & ¹loyal, we shal neuer retorne. We ne ben but x, & the paynems ben Innumerable & of grete force. In

Roland warns his
companions to
keep together,
(2944)

16 For yf we be deuyde^d, we shal sone be taken and hanged.

and to be ready,
each to help the
other. (2946)

And on that other parte, yf one of vs falle to the grounde, that prestly he be reyse^d, And not to leue hym for lyf ne deth, And that none faylle other. And I shal be he

20 that shal bryng^e you to-gyder by thayde of god ; for I

swere ²to you by my lyf, that as long as I may holde durandal, and may kepe the lyf in my body, ye shal hane of me a good deffendour and waraunt.” and in

Floripes brings
out the sacred
crown, (2960);
which the knights
kiss, (2962)

24 lyke wyse sayd al the other. Florypes answerd : “ my lordes, ye may tarye ouer longe ; ” & she went in to hyr chambre, and opened^d a cofre, in whiche was the crowne

and then pass out
of the gates. (2966)

of Ihesu Cryste, and moche reverently they kyssed^d it

28 & sette it on theyr heedles. Wherfor with a good courage they yssued out, noo thynge dredyng^d the puys-saunce of the paynyme^s. & after, Florypes and hyr damoysellys lyft vp the brydge, & shette fast the toure.

32 ¶ The noble peres of frannee, fayr and in good^d orden-aunce, wente toward^d the galowes alonge the medlowes, & the paynyme^s were vnder the galowes, and were besy to bryng^e vp guy of bourgoyn, which had hys eyen

¹ orig. boyal.

² g iiii, back.

Guy is on the point of being hanged. (2972)

bounden, & hys handes also, and a grete corde aboue hys necke, and whan Rolland sawe that, he hasted hys hors, & the other after, & began to crye to the paynmys sayeng^t: “ha! trayters, mastyns! It shal not be as ye thynk: ye haue begonne suche a thyng wherof ye shal repente.”

but Roland puts the Saracens to flight. (2976)

Of thys bruyt which was made so Impetuously, the moost hardy of xxx that helde guye began

and kills 20 of them.

to flee; and they were so hastily poursyewel that xx 8

The ambush breaks out. (2980)

of them ¹were slayn. here vpon they that were in the wode camen out, makynge a grete bruyt;

and al afore came Cornyfer, a meruayllous paynym, vpon a morel of

grete faeyon, And began to crye: “ha! ye frensshe 12

men dysmesured! come ye for to socoure hym that is

Inged by thadmyral to be hanged? ye haue enterprysed

a grete folye; For al ye shal be hanged wyth hym.”

Whan rolland herde the paynym so say, he was moche 16

Roland charges Cornyfer. (2996)

angry, & helde durandal in hys hande, & came ageynst

hym as a wulf enraged. Neuertheles the paynym

smote on his shielde daungerously; but after that he

and slays him. (3008)

was recoured, he atteyned and smote the paynym so 20

puyssantly that he eleste hys heid down to the body,

and then rides to the gallows. (3010)
unbinds Guy,

and after that he was dede, rolland came rennyng vnto

the galowes, and vnblynsfelde & vnbonde syr guye of

bourgoyne, and bad hym holde hym by hym tyl he was 24

armed. & after that Roulland had slayn another paynym,

Guye, beyng in thassuraunce of thother peres of fraunce,

who takes the arms and horse of a Saracen. (3032)

he armed hym Ineowntynent with tharmes of that paynym

by the helpe of hys felowes, & mounted vpon the Paynmys 28

hors, but thys was not doon wythoute grete Payne and

meruayllous deffence that they made, for anone al the

The French are hard pressed.

sarasyns that were in the wode came vpon the ba²rons of

fraunce, and dyd grete inconuenyents. Neuertheles, by 32

thayde of god, the barons were of so good gournement

& of so entyer courage, of so meruayllous deffence and

puyssance, that at that tyme they put sooo many sarasyns

¹ g iiiij, back, col. 2

² g v.

to deth, that the place was al encumbered, and al were empesshed^t to goo further. Emonge whome guye of bourgoyne dyd^t meruaylles: for after that he was 4 armed^t by the conseruacyon of hys felowes, he dyd^t gretely hys deuoyr, & sayd^t to the sarasyns: "O ye traytres mastyns, I shal shewe you in thys Iourney that I am escaped^t fro your handes." & by thus fyght-

8 yng^t they made the sarasyns to withdrawe a grete bowe draught. They thus fyghtyng^t, on that other syde were moo than^t ten thousand^t sarasyns redy to empesshe them the passage, that they myt not wyth-

12 drawe them. Wherfore Rolland^t, holdyng durandal in hys honde, seyng that, called^t al hys felowes and sayd^t to them: "lordes, it is noo tyme now to wythdrawe vs, but of necessyte we must auance vs for our owne con-

16 seruacyon: yf we may gete the brydge, doublte we no

Guy performs
marvellous feats.
The Saracens begin to give way.
(3911)

thyng^t, & thenne may we wel saue vs." "Roulland^t,

Sayd^t Guye of bourgoyne, "Ye knowe wel that in the toure we haue noo thyng^t to ete, & yf we were^t wythin,
20 how shold^t we lyue? yet had I leuer to haue my body

Roland calls on
his companions to
make an effort to
gain the bridge.
(3952)

daungerously wounded in fyghtyng^t vpon the sarasyns,
than to deye for hungre were wythin, & wythoute daunger. and yf it be the wylle of god^t that in thys day

but Guy reminds
him that they
have no pro-
visions. (3953)

24 we shold^t deye, al be it at hys playsyr, and we shal take
it a worth, as good^t and trewe knyghtes of god^t." Al the
other barons were of hys oppynyon, & goon forth in grete
purpoos for to bere them valyauntly. They beyng^t in

and says it is
better to die
fighting than be
starved. (3958)

28 thys purpoos to bere them valyauntly, as sayd^t is,

All the ethys
agree. (3961)

Florypes was in a wyndowe of the toure, and^t sawe Guye of bourgoyne hyr loue, wherof she was moche Ioyous,
and cryed^t to hym wyth an hye voys, that hit wold^t

Floripa from a
window cheers on
Guy. (3980)

32 plese hym to come to hyr, sayeng, that yf she lyned, for
the prowesse of the barons that hyr fader thadmyral
shold^t ones be in hys daunger. Wherfor Ogyer the
danoys sayd^t: "Lordes, haue ye not herde how nobly

¹ g v, col. 2.

she speketh. She is wel worthy that we doo for hyr. And knowe ye that I shal not be at ease yf we thus retorne." Thenne, wythoute more langage, the frensshe men ronnen vpon the sarasyns hastely, of whome 4 Roulland was alwaye formest, and made soo grete bruyt and descomfyture of paynyme, that they eschewed & made them to flee tofore him as ¹the byrd tofore the sperhawke. Guye of bourgoyn came with a grete cours 8 ageynst a paynym moche fyers, named Rampyer, and attayned hym so harde on the somette of the heed, that he clefte hym to the myddel of hys body. Wherfore whan Roulland sawe hys grete valyanee, he said to 12 hym : "Guy, fayr cosyn, I haue wel seen how ye haue menaced the paynym. Ye haue so doon that Florypes the fayr lady ought to loue you and holde you ryȝt dere."

¶ How the peres of Fraunee aforesayd' were 16 pourneyed' of vytaylles, and' after assyeged' and' foughten by the paynyme: ca. xvij

WHAN Florypes the curtoys, beyng wyth hyr damoyselles in the toure, sawe the barons of 20 Fraunee to be assured tofore the castel, she cryed to hem hyely: "O ye lordes, I praye you to remembre to gete somme vytaylles or ye come entre herein, to thende that we deye not for fanyne. Olyuer vnderstode wel the 24 damoysel, and also roulland, whyche sayd that she had wel spoken, and in tyme: "for yf we entre in to the castel, we may not departe wyth our ease," and therupon al the barons with one ²courage goon ageynst the 28 sarasyns, & smote on them & brake theyr aray, in suche wyse þut they made them to voyde the place, & to wythdrawe and goo backe a grete dele, and thus as they

Floripas reminds
the knights that
they have no food.
(3116)

The Saracens are
driven back.
(3128)

The French meet
with 20 pack-
horses, laden with
ageynst them. For xx sommyers passed forth by, which certeyn paynyme ledde, whyche al were charged wyth

¹ g v. back.

² g v. back, col. 2.

wyn, brede, and flesshe habundauntly. And anone they provisions, (3136)
that ledde them were slain and put to deth, And thenne
the barons enforced them for to lede them hastelye, and
4 so conduyted them tyl they brought them in to the
tonre. & in the waye as they returned, they fonde the
body of basyn whyche haſt be slain the day byfore,
which they took vp, and brought wyth them in to the
8 toure, and were there in surete. For they lyfte vp the
brydge, and entred, and after aualed the drawe brydge,
and made faste the yates, and surely. And thus were
they wel vytaylled for ij monethes & more. ye may
12 wel wete that thadmyral was not ouer Ioyous whan he Balan is furious
sawe that Guye of bourgoyn whyche haſt ben in his
subiectyon was wyth hys felawes, And also whan he
knewe that they were furnysshed wyth vytaylle so
16 abundantly. Wherfor ryght angry and enyl contente
1dyt doo calle hys councelyl, and demaunded brullant
of mommyere, and Sortybrant of Conymbres, and other
of hys councellyours, sayeng^t to them : " My barons, ye
20 knowe that these frenssh men haue ryght euyl gouerned
vs. They haue garnysshed the toure wyth brede, wyn,
and other vytaylles : and yf by aduenture it come to the
knowleche of kyng Charles, we shal be empesshed, for
24 he shal come & socoure them, and we shal come make
to hym contynuel resystence, For hys puysaunce is
ouer grete, ye knowe it wel. Wherfore I am in grete
thought and melaneolye what we may best doo."

28 To thys, Sortybrant answerd & sayd: " syr admyral, Sortybrant advises
I councelyl that evry man be armed, and in grete
poynte, for to sette vp the engynes to assaylle the toure
& breke it, & after to make sowne and to trompe vp a
32 thousand^t trompes and hornes Impetuously. And whan
the Frenssh men shal here them, they shal be so aferde
that we at our playsyr shal mowe entre in to the toure."
Brullant of mommyere answerd to hym & sayd:

¹ g vj.

which they drive
inside the gates
of the castle.

On their way they
take up the body
of Basyn. (3150)

Balan is furious

and calls a coun-
cil. (3163)

to consider what
is to be done.

Sortybrant advises
him to frighten
the French by

blowing of trum-
pets, &c.

Bruillant says he “Sortybrant, frende! ye speke of a grete folye. Byleue
 is a fool,
 not þat the frenssh men that be within the toure ben
 for the French are
 not likely to be so
 easily frightened,
 (3184)

wyth blowyng^t & sownyng^t of hornes. ¹Certeyn ye 4
 haue nothyng to fere them wyth, And I shal say to
 you the reason. The flour of the barons of frauenee is
 there wythin: the moost puyssaut & the moost noble
 Rolland^t is there, whych is so puyssaut and courageous 8
 that who-someuer loyneth to hym, he putteth hym to
 deth: And there is the counte olyuer: knowe ye not of
 his grete fyersnes, whyche conquerd Kynge Fyerabras,
 the myghtyest of all the paynmys? And I swere to 12
 you by Mahoun that he is in theyr compayne. For I
 haue herde say also that there is the counte of mondy-
 dyer, Gherard^t, whyche hath doon to vs grete dommage.
 Also there is thyerry, the due of ardayne, and another 16
 fals olde olde knyght that named^t hym self Naymes, due
 and Gerard,
 Terry,
 Naymes,
 Guy, and 5 others.
 And if they were
 all like Roland
 they would soon
 chase the whole
 Saracen army out
 of Spain. (3204)

and Oliver,
 and Balan is enraged,
 and tries to strike
 him, (3211)

of Bauyere, semblably Guy of bourgoyne, whyche was
 taken from vs whan he was ledde to be hanged. And
 other ther be whyche I haue not named^t. There ben 20
 but xj, for one of them was slayn, and ye knowe wel
 they ben alle of grete resystence.

Roulland^t, the ²neuewe of charles, is of soo grete
 fyersnes that he doubteth no man lyuyng^t, ne stroke ne 24
 shiotte that is gytten hym: and doubt ye not, that, yf
 they were al suche as he is, that ben in the castel, they
 shold chace vs oute of thys royame or they ³shold slee vs.
 And I knowe wel that theyr god waketh for them, for 28
 he hath ryȝt wel kepte them. Our goddes ben accursed^t
 and vnhappy, For it is longe sythe that they haue ony
 thyng holpen vs.” ¶ Of these wordes that brullant
 thus sayd, thadmyral was passyng^t angry, & sayd to 32
 hym: “ye haue ryght euyl and folysshly spoken,” and
 so sayeng, he wold haue smyton hym wyth hys staf,
 but the kyng Sortybrant wythdrowe the stroke, sayeng:

¹ g vj. col. 2. ² orig. nenewe. ³ g vj. back.

“Syr admyral, leue your angre, and late vs thynke for to
assayle thys toure, and late vs so do that these fals
frenssh men be vaynquysshed and smyton in pyees.”

but Sortibrant
prevents him.
(3213)

4 and thus as he had said, thadmyral made to come hornes,
trompettes, and other Instrumentes for to sowne & to
make bruyt and noyse, in suche wyse that al the sarasyns
were there assembled, that they helle þe space of a myle
8 longe aboute the toure. After, thadmyral made to come
a man Ingenyous & enchauntour, whyche was named
Mahon, that made two meruayllous engynes, & with
couertures surely made kept them that were there vnder,
12 that they myght not be hurte of the frensshe men.

The Saracens are
assembled;
they cover a
square mile of
ground. (3221)

And by the moyen of these engynes they conquerd the
fyrst wardes of the castel. wherfore the frensshe men,
furyous and ¹wode as lyons, came to the yates of the
16 toure, & the maydens also al arm'd, whyche with the
barons dyd so wel theyr denoyn, that he that was raught
and smyton by them, was so terrybly hurt, that he ouer-
threw and fyl doun dede. For they were aboue on
20 hye, and threw down grete stones, darteres of yron, &
other mortal engynes, wyth whyche they made con-
tinuel resystence

By means of
engines they win
the outer defences
of the castle,

¶ How the toure was broken and' brente by
24 enchauntement, & the barons in grete
peryl of deth, and' restored' by assaulte
maad' on the Paynyme: capitulo xvij

THe Paynyme perseueryng in thassault afore sayd,
28 Thenchauztour came tofore the admyral, and sayd
to hym: “Ryȝt dere syr, I haue made myn engynes al
redy, by moyen of whyche I shal delyner to you the
frensshe men: make your men of armes to goo a parte,
32 & that I may haue somme to awayte on me.” And
whan they were alle redy as he had deuyseid, he sette
them rounde aboute the tour. And by hys crafte and

but the French
drive them back.
(3239)

¹ g vj, back, col. 2.

The engineer says
he has his engines
ready. (3250)

He sets the walls
of the castle on
fire. (3280)

The French are in
despair. (3284)

but Floripas bids
them fear nothing,

and with a pre-
paration extin-
guishes the fire.
(3292)

Balan swears
vengeance on his
daughter. (3297)

Sortibrant says
the French must
soon give in,

for they have no
more shot nor
stones. (3302)

By a furious
assault the Sar-
acens break down a
large part of the
walls. (3314)

Floripas cheers
the French,

arte he made a flamme of fyre so meruayllous, that þe pylers of marble & other stones bygonnen to brenne & make fyre at vtterauice,¹ wherfore the freusshe men were so perturbed that the one sayd to the other, that by force they must yelde the toure, for they had no moyen to sauе theyr personnes. Wyth thys, florypes sayd to them: "lordes, esmaye you nothyng yet vnto the tyme ye see more." And anone slie wente, & took 8 somme herbes and other medecynes, & dyd tempere them in wyn, For she knewe the manere how that fyre artyfycally brente the stones. thus she made this beurage; and whan it was caste vpon the fyre, it brenned 12 nomore. Wherfore the admiral wende to haue been out of hys wytte for angre. But Sortybrant tolde hym that al was quenched by the moyen of floripes his daughter; wherfore thadmyral was of enteneyon to 16 make hys daughter to deye of an euyl deth. The kyng Sortybrant sayd that he shold do sowne his hornes and trompettes, and recommence the assaulte al newe, and at that tyme by force the freusshe men shold be vayn- 20 quysshed: "For I am sure," sayd he, "that they haue nomore to caste oute vpon vs. For they haue nomore shotte ne stones, but al is faylled to them." And thassaulte was made as it was ordyned Impetuous, that 24 it semed derke for the shotte of arowes, of darteres, stones, & other engynes: in suche wyse that the 2 grete quarters of the murayl & walles fyl and tombled down to the erthe, the barons of frauice moche abasshed, sayd 28 one to another, that thenne they must nedes be vayn-quysshed, For they sawe parte of the walles & the pryncipal of the castel falle down. And they beyng in grete thouȝt, Florypes sayd to them thus: "Lordes, 32 dysmaye ye noo thynge! thys toure is stronge ynough for to kepe vs yet. And of that other parte, the tresour of my fader is herin, which is in grete wedges and

¹ g vij.

² g vij, col. 2.

plates of golde & buyllyon. late vs goo fetche it, And¹ and advises them
as wel may we see the paynyme therwyth, as wyth² to use her father's
stones, and better." Thenne Guy of bourgoyn, hyr loue,
(3327) gold for missiles.

4 came to hyr wyth grete Loye, & kysse³ hyr moche amer-
ously and swetelye. And after she wente & opened⁴
the toure and place where the tresour¹ was Innumerable,
and wyth grete quantyte therof they wente to the
8 batylments of the toure, and thewe vpon the paynyme,
in suche wyse that they made grete dyscomifture.
The French do so,
(3334)

And more-ouer the paynyme, seeyng⁵ the golde falle on
them in suche habundaunce, anone they cessyd⁶ their
12 fyghtyng ayenst the frenssh men, And for the coneu-
pyseunce of that golde they faught and slewe eche
other. Wherfore thadmyral was so dysplaysaunt &
2 angry that he wende to haue dyed⁷, and began to erye

16 wyth an hye voys: "O ye barons sarasyns, leue ye
thassaulte, whiche torneth to me grete dommage Innu-
merable. For I see that my tresour wasteth & is loste,
which I haue wyth grete Payne⁸ & dylgence assembled⁹,
Balan, alarmed
and grieved for
his treasure,
causes his men to
retire. (3348)

20 And ha¹⁰ recomaunded¹¹ it to my god mahon, and ha¹²
made hym kepar of it, whyche how hath faylle¹³ me.
but by my soule, yf I may take hym, and that he come
in to myn holde, I shal make hym wepe." The kyng

24 Sortybrant answerd¹⁴: "Syr Admyral, be ye noo thyng
ameruayllyd of your tresour, ne wroth ayenst Mahon, for
he may nomore do; they may wel take it fro hym, for
he is a-slepe; I bylene none other: for in tyme passed

28 he hath wel watched¹⁵ & kepte it; but those frenssh men
ben so wyly theues þat they haue stolen it fro hym
subtelly." Thadmyral beyng¹⁶ al angry byecause the
nyght came on repayed¹⁷ with his peple toward hys
32 souper. After thys, whan thadmyral was sette atte
table, Roulland, whyche was in the hye toure surely
with his felowes, laye in a wyndowe for to ease hym;

Sortybrant com-
forts him,

and says Mahoun
must be asleep.

The Saracens
retire to their
camp.

¹ orig. tresour. ² g vij, bk. ³ orig. payue.

⁴ orig. And' repayed'.

Roland from a
window sees
Balan at supper,
(3358)

and proposes a
sortie. (3363)

They all arm and
start. (3364)

Balan sees them
coming, (3369)
and sends for
Espoulart, his
nephew, to meet
them. (3372)

Espoulart charges
Roland;

he is unhorsed,
(3386)

but is soon up
again.

Roland stuns him,
catches him up,
and carries him
away on his horse.
(3392)

Balan calls for a
rescue. (3397)

and as he thought & was pensyf, he sawe thadmyral sytting at the table through the wyndowe, and after cam to the other barons and sayd to them : “¹my lordes and brethern, I see that the Admyral is wyth 4 hys pryncypal barons at souper, and thynketh to holde hem wel at his ease, and me semeth it shold be grete honour and prowesse to vs to make hym leue² his repaste.” The other barons, hys felowes, were of hys 8 accorde, & hastily they armed them and put them in poynte, and fayr yssued out, comyng to the place where the admyral was, but the admyral, whiche was subtyl, appereyned theyrfeat, and sente hastily for a 12 paynym, whiche was moche fyers, and was hys neuewe. And sayd to hym : “ Espoulart, eosyn, peraduenture the frensshe men purpose to dystrouble vs at our souper, Therfore depesshe the, and be redy anone, and doo so 16 that they be taken & destroyed.” and anone he was redy. And forthwyth Espoulart took hys hors, and came ayenst the barons, holdyng in hys honde a dart of stele. And fyrist he enceountred Rolland, and hytte hym in his 20 shielde in suche wyse that of the stroke he was al astonyed; but it came soo to passe that it touched not hys flesshe, ne he was not hurte. After this, Rolland came vpon the paynym, and gaf hym a good stroke that 24 he made hym ouerthrowe fro hys hors; but the turke was so valyaunte, and a man of so grete myght, ³that moche lyghtly he remounted vpon hys hors. And Roulland came to hym, & smote hym wyth hys swerde in suche 28 wyse that the paynym wanst not where he was. And as he was fallyng down of hys hors, Rolland moche puysamly caught hym, & laye¹ hym thwart vpon hys hors, and bare hym awaye. The admyral, seeyng thys, al in a 32 rage eseryed hys peple that they shold soconre hys neuewe, but they wanst not what to doo, For in defendyng them many of them were slain and hurte

¹ g viij, back, col. 2.

² orig. lene.

³ g viij.

wythoute nombre; wherfor of veray force the other
paynyme must retorne: & rolland cessed^t not to renne
tyl that he was at the toure. And whan al the barons
4 of Fraunce were wythin, they shiette the yates wel surely,
and had^t noo feare of ony empesshemet.

but the French all
escape into the
castle. (3410)

¶ Here begynneth the thyrd' partye of the
second' book which conteyneth xvij chapy-
8 tres, And' speketh how the barons of
fraunce were socoured & the paynyme
confused'.

¶ Of the moeuyng of the peres of fraunce for
12 to goo shewe theyr affayres vnto kyng'
Charles; And' how Rycharde of Normandye
was ordeyned' for to goo: capitulo primo

16 **T**He peres of fraunce beyng thus assyaged and
deteyned^t, as I haue said afore, had^t taken a turke
moche fyers, and^t grete frende of the admiral,
whome they gaf to florypes for to do wyl hym as it
plesed^t hyr: & they demaunded^t of hyr what man he
20 was, & of hys estate. Florypes ansuerd: "he is sone
of myn aunt, & neuewe to thadmyral, and^t he is ryche
& hath grete puysaunce. And^t yf ye wyl doo grete
dysplaysyr to my fader, put hym to deth." The due

They ask Floripas
who their prisoner
is. (3444)
She tells them he
is Balan's
nephew. (3448)

24 Naymes moche wyse sayd^t to hyr: "Madame, it is not
behoeful to put hym so to deth; but sythe he is a man
of auctoryte, and^t hath audyence wylth your fader, we
been the more Ioyous. and^t I shal say to you wher-
28 fore: yf peraduenture one of vs were taken of our ene-
myes, by the moyen of this man he myght be rendred^t
and chaunged for hym." And^t of thys conclusyon were
contente al the peres of fraunce. Thenne after thys,
32 Rycharde of Normandye called the other his felawes,
and^t sayd^t to them: "ye knowe wel how we ben here

Naymes proposes
to keep him to
exchange for any
of them which
might be taken.
(3452)

¹ g viij, col. 2.

Richard of Normandy proposes

that they should send a message to Charles for help.
(3425)

Naymes says that no one dare go on the message, 3427.

for the country is all covered with Saracens.

Floripes says they had better enjoy themselves as well as they can. 3455.

Thierry again proposes to send a messenger to Charles. 3456.

Ogier asks who will venture on such a dangerous expedition. 3459. Roland offers to go, but Naymes protests. 3467.

enclosed in thy toure. And I am wel sure that at the laste we must nedes faylle, and deye by these Sarasyns. We haue noo moyen by whyche we may sauie our lyf; and me thynketh that it shold be good that we shold¹ conclude to sende to themperour, to thende that he shold come and socour vs, or ellys of vs shal sone be an ende." The due Naymes answerd and sayd: "Syr rycharde, me semeth ye speke of a grete folye. For there is noo man here wythin, that wyl take vpon hym for to do this message that ye speke of. For ye see that the contree is al couerd with sarasyns, for assone as he shal be oute fro vs, it is Imposyble to escape 12 wyth hys lyf. And be ye sure, but yf god doo for vs and shewe hys grace, we shal never departe fro hens." herupon Florypes sayd: "I can not say at thys tyme none other thynge, but that we lede the moost Ioyous 16 lyf that we may, as longe as we shal mowe endure. Ye hane here fayre maydens, eche of you take one at hys playsyr." The me Rolland and his felowes, for these wordes of Florypes were reioyced, and thanked & 20 preyed hyr affectuously. Thyerry the due of Ardayne, whyche was moche angry, sayd: "My brethern and my lordes, I am in grete thought, For we be faste shette here wythin, and knowe wel that in shorte tyme we 24 shal be dyscomfyted: we hane therof experiance yngough tofore our eyen, late us soo conclude that our fayte may be notesyed vnto charles, that he or hys pussyaunce 2 may come socoure vs." ¶ Ogyer answerd and sayd: 28 "for to sende to charles, there is none here soo hardy that dare presume it ne take it on hym." "Yes," said rolland, "I shal do it, and shal enterpryse it myself to goo to hym to morn, and shal doo my deuoyr." The 32 due naymes, or he had fynysshed hys wordes, answerd and sayd: "Syr rolland, dysplayse you not, for emonge vs ye are the moost vneomenable for to goo thyder: for

¹ g viij. bk.

² g viij. bk. col. 2.

whan the Paynyme shold knowe it, we shold not be redoubted as we be. And whan we haue you wyth vs, we been in surete, and our enemys in drede of vs."

4 Guyllam profred hym self to goo forth gladly, Soo dyd^t Gherard; Semblably guye abandoned hym self to goo wyth good affectyon, but Florypes wold neuer consente thereto. ¶ Neuertheles, after many dysputacyons, ryehard^t william and Gerard offer to go, (3471) as also Guy, but Floripes will not let him go, (3477)

8 sayd for conclusion : " My lordes, ye knowe that I am of grete parentage, & haue a sone of grete noblesse, suffysaunt to bere armes, and as I suppose, he shal be valy-aunte. And yf it happene that in doyng thys message

12 I be taken & slain of the paynyme, After my deth he may receyue & hold, myn herytage in my name, and doo seruyce to Charles. And I ought wel to doo it, for to doo playsyr to Charles aforesayd. ¹For whan he had

16 gyuen to me my lande, and possessed^t me in my contrey, I wold not accepte it but by one moyen, which is suche, that yf it happed, a strange man not subgette to my contreye, & that he were bonde, & of thral condycyon,

20 and yf he duelly^t a yere in my londle, that after he shold be free al his lyf, & many other thynges :" & thenne thus it was concluded^t that rycharde shold goo forth on the message. But Rolland^t maad hym to agree, (3499)

24 promyse tofore his departyng, that he shold not tarye in ony place, ne sojourne nowhere, vntil the tyme that he were with Charles, but yf he were greued in hys persone or deteyned prysoner. Rycharde promyssed it &

28 sware, as it is afore sayd. Thenne Rycharde, after his oth made, sayd that, " now we haue not to sorowe, but the maner how I shal mow departe and passe forth, that the men of armes see me not ; for yf I be knownen by

32 them in ony wyse, It shal be Impossyble to me to resyste them." Rolland^t sayd : " by my fayth, I shal say myn opynyon here vpon. I councayll that to morn erly we be wel arm'd, and we shal goo out and make a cours

They consult how he is to get away unseen, (3509)

Roland suggests that they should make a sortie,

and distract the
attention of the
Saracens while

Richard steals
away in the other
direction. (3529)

The knights weep
over Richard's
danger. (3527)

Richard bids them
fear nothing,

for by God's grace
he will soon bring
succour.

vpon the sarasyns, & do gretely our deuoyr, & they shal be besy with vs for to defende them & hurte vs. Rychard shal departe & passe forth & leue ¹vs, & we shal remyse vs to gyder for to retorne in surete. in the mene 4 whyle Rychard, that knoweth wel the region, shal mowe be wel ferre forth on his waye tofore they shal know ony thyng therof; and if it playse god & hys swete moder, he shal saue hym self, by suche manere, that in 8 shorte tyme we shal haue Ioye & consolacyon that we shal hastely goo out surely." Thys sayeng^t, the peres of fraunce, seeyng^t that thys thyng^t was not yet achyeued^t surely, begonnen al to wepe tenderly for the pyte of 12 theyr affayre. The noble duc² rychard, seeyng^t his felowes wepyng^t for hym, sayd to them: "my lordes, ne double ye noo thynge! yf god gyne me the grace, to whom I comaunde my self, that I may passe thys hoost 16 and thys contreye, and in espeyal that I may fynde myself a-lyue by-yonde the brydge³ of mantryble, I may wel ensure you that I shal bryngē you socours in suche wyse that by the grace of god ye shal sone be delyuered." 20 The barons ansuerd to hym: "Ihesus, by hys myght and puyssaunce, graunte you wel to goo, & better to retorne!" After this conclusyon they sayd nomore: the nyȝt cam on, & eueryche of them went to hys repaire, vnto atte 24 morne for to begynne to complysse theyr enterpryse.

⁴¶ How after that rychard was departed, kyng claryon, a ryght myghty kyng', ramme after hym, the whyche was slayn by the sayd' 28 Rychard valyauntly, & of other thynges: capitulo ij

But a great disapp-
ointment was in
store for them.

G Rete gryef and annoye cam to þ^e peres of fraunce whan Rychard of Normandye shold departe for 32 to goo to kyng^t charles. On the morne whan

¹ h i, col. 2. ² orig. dul. ³ orig. brydde. ⁴ h i, back.

they came to the gates of the toure, in whiche they were
in, they fonde grete multytude of peple sarasyns, whyche
kepte the passage that none of the frensshe men shoulde
4 yssue out. Wherfore by the space of ij monethes they
coude not fynde the moyen to yssue oute; but on a day
(monge al other, whan thadmyral was on huntynge a
lytel waye of, & that on a nyght the garde of the
8 bridge was forgoten, Thenne the barons armel them
& mounted on horsback, and wente out rennyng vnto
theyr lodgynges; but assone as they were seen of the
paynynms, they blewe vp hornes & trompettes, & began

12 to sowne so terrybly, that anone peple Innumerable were
there assembled for to renne vpon the peres of Fraunce.
and thus whan they were al enclosed wyth theyr
enemyes, & that euery man was besy for to fyght, The

16 duc Rycharde al in wepyng commaunded to god hys
felawes, And secretely departel, and took hys waye at
al aduenture. & tofore that his felawes were at theyr
lodgyng, many of the sarasyns were hurte & slayn, and

20 in this maner they reentred in to the toure surely, and
mounted in to the bataylement, & sawe a-ferre duc
rycharde, whyche thenne had passed beyonde all the
hoost; and in wepyng they recommanded hym swetely

24 to god many tymes. Rycharde of Normandye thus
rydyng allone, had feare alwaye that he shold be
assayled. whan he had ferre ryden vnto a toppe of a
montayn, his hors was sore chaufsed, & bledde habun-

28 dantly. Thenne he doubted entyerly that he shold be
empesshed, and lyfte vp his mynde to heuen & sayd:

“ O lord god, my creatour, to whom alle my wylle is
ordeyned, thys day preserue my body from myn

32 enemyes, in suche wyse that I lose not my lyf,” &
blessid hym self with the signe of the crosse many
tymes. he beying in that place, the day appyered wel
elerely; & fyrst, brullant of mommyere apperecyued

For in the morn-
ing they found
the castle sur-
rounded by Sarac-
ens, (3549)
so that for two
months they had
no chance of
going out. (3459)

At last an occa-
sion offers, and
they sally out,
(3557) and attack
the Saracens.

While they are
thus engaged
Richard steals off
(3580)

His horse breaks
down. (3612)

In despair he
prays to God for
help,

and crosses him-
self.

Brullant and sor- hym, & after, sortybrant of Conymbres, whyche were
 tibrant see him, bothe to-gydre, the whyche wente hastily to Kynge
 (3628) Claryon, a moche myghty paynym, neuewe of thadmyral,
 and tell Clarion, and brullant sayd fyrt to hym: "Syr Claryon, see ye 4
 yonde messenger, ¹one of the prisoners of fraunce, whyche
 is departed fro his felawes, & gooth towardl Charles for
 socours? And yf ye see not for remedye, there may
 come therby harme to vs; for yf he recounte theyr 8
 affayres to the kyng charles, It may happen to retorne
 to vs grete dommage." Also sone as claryon herde
 these tydylges, anone he armed hym, & mounted vpon
 lys hors, the moost merneyllous that euer was seen, 12
 For for to renne xxx leghes he wold not be very; &
 took hys shielde & his swerd of steele square & sharpe,
 & ramme towardl Due Rychard as he had be enraged,
 & other sarasyns folowed after hym. Rychard mounted 16
 followed by other
 Saracens. (3645) on hys hors, wythoute knowyng that he was poursyewed,
 & sayd: "O my Creatour, holy Trynyte, gyue to me
 consolaeyon & grace, that I may see Charles the myghty
 Emperour, to whom I am sente for the rescows & com- 20
 fort of my felawes, whiche ben in the toure, sorouful
 and sore greued, and that I may make them Ioyeful,"
 & thus as he was in this thought he loked behynde hym,
 & sawe the sarasyns come hastily after hym, whyche 24
 were by comyn estymacyon moo than xiiij M, Of whom
 the Kyng² Claryon, neuewe of the Admyral, vpon the
 courser tofore sayd, came tofore the other a grete waye.
 Nener²thelles, Rychard beyng on a lytel montayn, & 28
 byheldle the hoost of the paynyme came ageynst hym
 with grete courage, ye may wel ymagyne in what estat
 his hert was, what thyng myȝt he thynk that they
 wold do wyth hym, & what tidylges his felowes shold 32
 haue of hym, whan he was there allone for tabyde &
 susteyne the furour & malyee of so moche peple? Thus
 ymagynyng that he myght not flee, Anone was claryon

¹ h ij.² h ij. col. 2.

Richard, looking
 round, sees
 the Saracens
 coming after him.
 (3653)

He is almost in
 despair.

vpon the sayd coursour, whyche ranne faster and more swyftlyer than a grehounle; the whyche coursour was alle whyt on the one of hys sydes as a flour delys, & on

In front comes
Clarion on a
horse, half white,
half red, (3659)

4 that other syde as rede as fyre enflammed, The tayle after the facion of a peacock, the croupe behynde somewhat reyseid & dropped, as smal as of a pastryche; grete thyres & short feet, & platte & rounde, wyth lytel eeres;

with a peacock's
tail,

8 the mane of the necke whyt, his nosethrylles large & ample; he was tofore moche brode, & had eyen grene & clere, a lytel heed, a brode fronte, with a smal mosel; & he was saddled with a saddle of yuorye, & the raynes of

a white mane,
and green eyes.

12 þe brydle entrelaced with gold; styropes of fyn gold; the poytral wel enorned & rychely. & was gyrdle with iiiij stronge syngles, & had on hym moo than an C of smal bellys of fyn golde, sownyng moche melodyously.

His breast piece
is hung with little
gold bells.

16 & þe paynym ¹smote hym with the spores moche sharily, in suche wyse that the hors made a leep more than xxx foot longe. And after escryed due Rycharde the noble knyght, sayeng wyth an hye voys: "by

Clarion calls on
Richard to sur-
render. (3673)

20 Mahoun, my souerayn god, thou messager shalst never achyeue thyn enterpryse, For wythoute goyng ony ferther, thou shalte here ende thy lyf." whan rycharde vnderstode hym, alle the blode in hys body was moeued

24 & chaunged, & ansuerd: "Sarasyn, wherfore arte thou of suche entencion ayeinst me? What haue I trespassed to the? I never offended the, ne robbed thy tresour.

Richard asks him
to let him go, as
he has never done
him any harm.
(3681)

I requyre the by loue that thou dystrouble me not; and

28 yf thou suffre me to passe, I shal take it for a grete seruyse, & I promyse to the that ones it shal be rewarded to the by me." The paynym answerd: "certayn, frensshe man, thou spekest of grete folye; & of

32 mahoun be I cursed yf I doo ony thyng for the. I shal not suffre the to passe for half the tresour of the world."

Clarion declares
he will have his
life. (3686)

Also sone as Rycharde knewe hys entencyon, he auatunced ayeinst hym, & the paynym came to Rycharde, & wyth

¹ h ij. back.

Clarion cuts at
Richard, but does
him no harm.
(3688)

Richard smites
Clarion on the
neck, and cuts his
head off. (3704)

He takes Clarion's
horse. (3705)

and lets his own
go, bidding it an
affectionate fare-
well. (3713)

The Saracens
coming up to try to
catch Richard's
horse, but in vain.
(3730)

hys swerde he smote hym hard vpon hys shidle; but it was so harde that it wente not thurgh. here-vpon richard, which was ful of grete yre ayenst the paynym, by effectuel deth came to hym wyth hys ¹swerde which 4 was trenchaunte, & as the hors lepe forth, the paynym, lyfte vp his hede, & richard attayned ouerthwart the necke so ryȝt in a Ioynte, that he smote of his nede, in suchे wyse that it flewe ferre fro the body, ye, wel a 8 spere lengthe, & he put þe trunke of the body to the erthe al dede; & forthwyth he descended fro hys hors, & mounted vpon that the good courser of the Paynym, whyche was the best hors of the world. Thenne 12 Rycharde myght wel say that he was neuer soo wel pourneyed of an hors; For he was so myghty, that yf he had born vij knyghtes armēd vpon hym, he wold not hane swette a droppe of water; & for to swymme & 16 passe a depe ruyer, ther was noo hors lyke hym. & after that he was thus horsed at his ease, he said to his owen hors by moche good affection: "O gentyl hors doulstyn, for the I am sorouful that I may not conduyte the in 20 to som place at my playsyr. I praye to God of henen that he drawe þe in to suchē a waye that þou mayst come in to the hondes of crysten men & serue them, in many grete bataylles & euyl passages thou hast wel 24 serued me, & of thy grete seruyee, as moche as apperteyneth to me I thanke the gretely." & here vpon he wente and rode forth hys waye. And anone the sarasyns that followed after, came ²& fonde the kyng 28 Claryon dead, theyr mayster, of whos deth they were so surprysed of melancholye & of sorowe, that they coude doo none other thynge but fyrist to renne for to take Rycharde's hors. But there was none soo hardy to ap- 32 proche hym ne sette honde on hym, but the hors maad grete defence, & took hys waye remyng for to retorne to the place that he was departed fro.

¹ h ij, back, col. 2.

² h ij.

¶ How Rychards hors cam & passed' thurgh
thexcersyte of the admyral, & was seen &
knowen of the peres of Fraunce, in soo
muche that they thought that duc Rychard'
had' been deēd'; & how the brydge of
Mantryble was kepte: capitulo iij

¶ **R**YCHARD of Normandye wylth his swerde in hys
fyste rode hastily, & the sarasyns whych ranne
after hym came and fonde theyr kyng deed, of
whome the hede was on that one syde of the waye, &
the body on that other. It byhoueth not to recounte

The Saracens find
Clarion's body,
and lament over
him. (3724)

12 the sorowe that they were in, whan the chyef of alle the
sarasyns of myght and parentage was descomfyteē and
slayn ; and for thyng that they coule do, they coude not
reteyne Rychards hors. & the fyrt that ¹sawe the hors

16 come rennyng was thadmyral, whiche called gorant,
sone of kyng^t grehier, & also sortybrant of conymbres,
& sayd to them : " by my god^t appolyn, whan I wel
aduyse and remembre me, I ought wel to loue my
20 neuewe Claryon, and holde hym dere emonge al other.

Balan sees Rich-
ard's horse run-
ning loose, (3710)

I see wel that he hath put to deth the messenger of the
Frensshe men : that it is trouthe, ye may see his hors
that yonder cometh." and thadmyrall commanded that

and thinks that
Richard has been
killed. (3712)

24 he shold hastily be taken, but whan the hors saw that
they wold hane taken hym, he ranne and smote out, &
cessed not tyl he cam to the yate of the castel in
whyche the barons of Fraunce were enclosed. & whan

He orders the
horse to be
caught, (3714)

28 the frensshe men sawe thus the hors come, whyche was
longyng to rychard^t, they were al affrayed and moeued,
and came & opened^t the gate, and anone he entred^t in ;
and after that the yate was shette, they arengeē them

but none can
catch him.

32 aboute the sayē hors, for compassyon of sorowe, wepyng
pyetously. ¶ And Due Naymes spake fyrt and sayē :

The knights admit
him inside the
gates,

and lament over
Richard's death.

The are all in
great grief, (3754)

"Ha, Richard of Normandy! I praye to god that he be in thy comfort and that he haue pyte of thy soule. I knowe wel that for thy deth we shal neuer haue socoure, Ne of thy partie we shal neuer haue none 4 helpe." Roulland and Olyuer heryng these ¹wordes, & also the other, wepte bytterly. here-pon came florypes the curtoys in grete heuynes, and sayd to them :

but Floripas com-
forts them, (3763)

"Lordes, in the honour of god, leue your lamentyng 8 and sorowe : we knowe not yet the trouthe of the mater." thus as they were in these grete thoughtes, the Sarasyns came, whyche had lefte Rychard ryde forth, And in grete sorowe & torment brouȝt the body of kyng 12 Claryon. And whan thadmyral sawe them come, he beyng in the ethroclites in hys entendement, cryed and sayd : "and how is it ? is myn neuewe in good poynte ?"

The Saracens re-
turn bearing the
body of Clarion.
(3775)

The sarasyns ansuerd : "Syr admyral, we may not lye to you. Claryon is dede, it nedeth nomore to demaunde therof." Thadmyral heryng thoo wordes, fyl doun to therth al in a traunse, and he swouned more than iiiij tymes as he had been dede. thus emonge al the sara- 20 syns was a grete wepyng, & made grete sorowe. The sarasyns thus makyngh thys lamentacyon, the barons of fraunce herde and vnderstood them, & specially florypes, which knewe better the langage. & after that she 24

Balan swoons on
hearing of his
nephew's death.
(3785)

knewe the cause of theyr sorowe, she came to the barons, and sayd to them in spekyng to rolland : "Syr, knowe ye wherfore the sarasyns demene suche sorowe? it is trouþ that Rychard your messenger ²hath slain the 28 kyng claryon & wonne his hors, to whom is none lyke ne pareyll of bounte in al the world. & as wel for þe deth of claryon as for the losyng of the hors, they demene & make al thys sorowe & torment that ye see & 32 here. Wherfore I praye you that euery man doo hys deuoir, to lede a good lyf and to make good chyere."

There is great
grief over Clarion.
(3792)

Olyuer sayd to rolland Ioyously : "O my felawe of 36
¹ h iij. back. ² h iij. back. col. 2.

Floripas explains
to the knights
what has hap-
pened. (3800)

armes, ye knowe not how glad I am of these tydynges
 that we here, & I ensure you by my soule that I am
 as sure to passe thys daunger that we be in, as though
 4 I were in the strengest castel of fraunce. blessyd be
 richard of god, for he hath borne hym nobly!" and
 semblably sayd al the other his felawes. After that
 richard rode thus, thadmyral made a man to come to
 8 hym named^t Orages, & made hym to take a dromedary
 hastely, & comanded hym to bere his lettres to galafre,
 which kept the stronge brydge of mantryble: "I charge
 the to reyne as faste as the dromydary may bere the, to
 12 mantryble, and^t say to Galafre wherfore he suffred^t the
 messagers of charles to come ouer the brydge, the
 whyche haue doon to vs so moche greuaunce and^t
 ennoaunce, as thou can wel telle to hym. & I swere by
 16 mahon my god, that he dyd^t a grete folye. & sythe on
 that other parte the ¹messager of the frensshe men
 goeth thyder, and^t yf he recounte his message to Charles,
 it myght happen he shold put me in subgectyon, Ther-
 20 fore say to galafre that he kepe soo wel the brydge, that
 noo persone passe: and^t say to hym more ouer, that, yf
 he do otherwyse, I shal put oute hys eyen, and^t make
 hym deye shamefully." "Syr admyral," sayd^t Orages
 24 the messager, "I shal do your commaundemente; and
 I assure you I shal ryde as moche waye in one day as
 that other shal do in four dayes. for, for to ryde an
 hondred^t leghes contynually, I shal never be wery."
 28 And thus he departed from the admyral vpon a dromedary,
 & taryed^t not tyl he came to mantryble, and^t spake
 to Galafre, sayeng: "Galafre, I shal not hyde fro the
 that the admyral is not contente wyth the, by cause thou
 32 suffredest the frenssi men to passe ouer the brydge,
 whyche haue doon to hym grete dommage, for they be
 lodged in the chyef toure, & holden in their subgectyon
 the goddes, with floripes his douzter, and haue slayn

Balan sends a
message to Galafre,
the bridge-
ward of Mantrible,
(3825)

that he is to allow
no one to pass the
bridge,

on pain of death.
(3845)

Orages starts on a
dromedary.

He arrives at
Mantrible and
delivers his
message, (3869)

many of the moost valyaunte of the courte of thadmyral. & the cause wherfore I am thus hastelye come, is thys: After me cometh a messager, whyche is one of the barons of Fraunce, whyche gooth for to fetche ayde, 4 vnto Charles theyr ¹kyng; the whyche hath slayne kyng^t Claryon. wherfore kepe wel thys passage that he passe not. For yf thou doo otherwyse, thou shalt not conne fynde the manere to sane thy lyf, but that thou 8 shalt deye vylaynsly."

that he is on no account to let Richard pass.
(3875)

Galafre in a rage

tries to strike Orages,
but is prevented by the by-standers.
(3854)

He sends 15,000 men to look out for Richard.
(3898)

Of these wordes Galafre was perturbled and replenysshed of yre, & for hys angre he made moche foule chyere, and began to scumme at the mouth lyke a bore enchaffed, and took a staffe, and 12 had smyton the messager yf it had not be letted by them that were presente. ¶ Neuertheles he mounted vpon a tourrette, and with the sowne of a trompette he assembled many men of armes, whyche were in nombre 16 xv M, whyche were anone of horsback, and passed the brydge. And whan they were ouer, it was anone lyfte vp, and they wente and rode here and there for to recontra þe messager of the frenssh men, yf by aduen- 20 ture they myȝt fynde hym.

¶ How rychard of normandye passed the ryuer
of flagot by myracle, by the moyen of a whyt
hert which cam tofore hym : [ca.] iiiij 24

Richard is in great doubt how to pass Mantrible.

He sees the Saracens covering all the country,

and begins to pray for help.
(3804)

RYchard^t of Normandye, messager of the frensshe barons prisoners, rode in grete doubte, ye may wel thynke and ymagyne, how he onely by ²hym self myght passee the stronge and daungerous brydge. And 28 in ryding^t he behelde behynde hym, and sawe al the contree couerd wyth men of armes, thus byholdyng them he was sore troublid in hys mynde, [&] began to crye : "O Ihesus, kyng^t of glorie, at thys tyme be thou 32 kepar of my body, & conseruatour of my soule, For I

¹ h iiiij. eol. 2.

² h iiiij. back.

see wel the declyne of my lyf. yf I put my self to fyght,
 I shal haue my hede smyton of; and yf I entre in to
 this hydous ryuer, I shal not conne passe ouer. Thus
 4 at thys tyme I muste nedes deye. Andt yf I by force
 returned to my felawes, I shold make a grete defaulte to
 therle Rolland, to whom I haue promysed¹ faythfully
 to doo my deuoyr for to doo my message. Wherfore,
 8 my godl, my maker, I wote not what to say, but that thy
 wylle be fulfilled and doon of me. thou knowest myn
 entencion : after the same gourne me!" he beyng² nyghe
 the ryuer, the sarasyns maden grete bruyt in comyng³ to
 12 hym, emonge whom a neuewe of the admyral auaunced⁴
 hym to renne ageynst hym, & cryed⁵ wyth an hyghe
 voys: "O messager, what somener thou be, thynke for
 to dye! thou hast now ryden ouer ferre; now is þ^e hour
 16 come that the deth of kyng claryon shal be aduenged.⁶"
 These wordes so herde of ryehard were ²not to hym
 ouer playsaunt; but he was euyl contente, and sodeynly
 he spored his hors ayenst hym, holdyng⁷ a swerde in
 20 hys honde, square & sharpe, whiche he had⁸ conquerd of
 Claryon: and came to hym, and smote hym so daunger-
 ously ayenst the breste, that it perced⁹ thorugh the
 shielde in to hys body, that he fyl doun to therthe al
 24 deed¹⁰; & after took hys hors by the brydle, whyche was
 ryche of golde, and went to the ryuage of the water, and
 byhelde it that it ranne lyke a quarel out of a erosbowe,
 and rored¹¹ lyke thundre, in suche wyse that galeye ne
 28 other engyne myght not goo surely vpon hyt.

¶ Thenne by grete contrycion of hert he recom-
 maunded¹² hym self to our lord, that he shold preserue
 hym from deth tyl that he had¹³ sayd¹⁴ hys message to the
 32 Emperour Charles. Thenne god of heuen, that neuer
 leueth hys seruauntes at their nede, shewed vnto hym a
 grete token of loue that he had¹⁵ to Charles, for Rycharde
 of Normandye beyng¹⁶ in thys medytacyon and thought

By the time he
 gets near the
 river the Saracens
 are close upon
 him. (3922)

Mandysee calls on
 him to turn and
 fight. (3922)

Richard turns and
 kills him, (3922)

and takes his
 horse.
 He rides to the
 bank of Flagot,
 which runs like a
 bolt from a cross-
 bow.

He commands
 himself to God.
 (3919)

¹ orig. pormysed'. ² h iij. back, col. 2.

God sends a milk-white hart,
which goes before Richard. (3955)

The water rises till it is level with the banks.
The hart enters the river,

and Richard follows it. (3962)

The Saracens dare not follow him.

The river sinks to its usual level.

Galafre lets down the draw-bridge. (3976)

Richard is now safe,

and rides on slowly.

for to passe ouer, god sente a whyte herte which passed tofore rycharde : & in comyng ye ought to wete that the ryuage of the water was moche hye, ye, as hye as a man from bynethe myght caste vp a stone wyth hys honde. 4 And the ryuer began to aryse ¹soo hye that it flowed ouer the banke, and the herte entred in to the water ; and Rycharde loked behynde hym, & sawe many sara-syns come in a grete multytude for to put hym to deth ; 8 and thenne he recommanded hym to god wyth good hert, and made the sygne of the crosse vpon his body, hanynge in hys hert the holy name of Ihesus, that he myght perseuere fro drede in suche wyse that he myght 12 passe ouer the ryuere ; and soo toke the water & folowed the hert. The paynymeys seyng that, were al abasshed and troublede, and there was not one that durst folowe hym. Fro Incontynent the water aualed, and 16 retorneled in to hys former estate and beyngt. Thenne the paynymeys made grete duel and sorowe by cause they myght not haue the messenger. ¶ Galafre, whyche that was moost wroth & werst contente, cam to the bridge 20 and aualed the chaynes, and commanede the paynymeys, vpon paine of deth, that they shold not cesse tyl that rycharde were taken, or ellsy they shold be all in the Indygnaeyon of thadmyral, and in daunger to be loste. 24 Rycharde of Normandye came ouer in good poynte, and devoutelye thanked god of the grace that he had sente to hym, and descended fro hys hors for to vngyrde and lose hys saddle. ² And after resengled hym, and took his 28 hors and rode forth at hys ease, and ladde that other hors on hys ryght syde. & doubted thenne nomore, For in shorte tyme he supposed to fynde thexersyte of kyng Charles. The paynymeys seyng thys, retournd 32 soronfully, & wente to vnarne them, For other thynges conde they not do.

¶ How charles was in purpoos to retorne,
wythout goyng ony ferther, by the coun-
ceyl of ganellon traytour, and his felowes ;
4 & other maters : capitulo

v

IN as moche as rychard rode, whyche was moche
wery ; and out of grete thought Themerour Charles
was passyng moche pensyf & sorowful for hys barons,
8 whyche were deteyned of thadmyral. And he, seeyng
that he had no tydylges, he sente for to come to hym
Ganellon, Geffroy, dantesuyle, aubert, maehayre, and
many other, and emonge the other, cam reyner, fader of

Meanwhile,
Charles is in great
trouble about his
knights. (1094)

12 Olyuer, to whome he sayd : " lordes and frendes, I am
in moche grete trybulacyon. the cause is ynough ap-
parent, whyche is of my speyal barons, whyche were
sente as messagers to ballant, thadmyral. I see that

He calls his
barons,

tells them his
trouble,

16 ¹no persone reporteth ne bryngeth ony tydylges from
them ; wherfore knowe ye, that of my dede that I dyd
I despysse my self. Thenne by more strenger reason
the other ought more to despysse me. And I you en-

and declares his
intention of re-
signing the crown.
(1015)

20 sure that I shal neuer regne more, but shal leue alle.
Take ye there, loo ! the crowne of mageste, take it !
For I depose my self from hens forth." Ganellon was
there which was Ioyeful, what someuer semblaunt he

24 made, and sayd : " syr emperour, yf ye byleue me, I
shal gyne to you gooþ councayl. ¶ Anone comaunde
that our lodgys and habytacions here be take vp, &
that euery man trusse hys gheer vpon the sommyers,

Ganelon advises
him to give orders
for a return home,
(1025)

28 and thynke to retorne. For yf ye goo ony ferther, ye
shal neuer retorne. The contree of Aygremore is moche
stronge ; And sythe that, ballant the admyral is of grete
fyersnes, and wyt that, he hath alle the paynymeys &

for Balan is too
strong for them,

32 sarasyns capytayns in to hys ayde ; And by cause that
Fyerabrus hys sone is deteyned by you, & maad¹ crysten,
so moche more is he affectyoned ayenst you : And on

¹ h v, back.

now that the
douzeperes are
dead.

In time, he says,
their children will
be grown up,

and then Charles
can return and
conquer Spain.

Charles swoons
for grief.

He mourns over
his disgrace.
(4051)

He asks his barons
for their opinions.
(4069)

All Ganelon's
friends support
his advice. (4081)

and declare they
will go no further
(4084)

that other parte your barons be not a-lyue, I ensure you: Retorne we in to Fraunce. We hauie lefte there many of our chylldren and parents that shal wexe grete; and or it be twenty yere, they shal bere armes. And 4 thenne they with vs ¹shal come in to spayne, for to conqueste the londes and seignouryes that we hauie enterprised. And shal reconure the holy relyques, of whome I hauie grete pyte. And more ouer ye shal reuenge the 8 deth of Roulland, the noble erle, for whom ye hauie thys melanolye; For certayn ye shal neuer see hym." Whan Charles herde these wordes of Ganellon, he was smyton wyth soo grete sorowe, that after, he fyl doun² in a 12 swoune, And spake not the space of a grete houre; and in wepyng bytterly he sayd to hym self: ¶ "O poure caytyf and vnhappy, what shalt thou do³ yf thou retorne, þou shalt be dyshonoured. yet were it better to 16 lose the lyf than to be thus shamed." After that he was comen to hymself, he sayd to hys barons that were there: "Loo! ye see the councayl that ganellon gyueth to me, whych in no wyse may playse me. yf I retorne, 20 wythout takyng vengeance of my noble barons which ben thus deteyned, there shal nener man sette by me, but I shal be shamed, and wyth good ryght." Machayre, aulbery, and geffroy, and other, moo than an hondred, 24 wliyche al were parentes & traytres wyth Ganellon the moost parte, & also were moche myghty to-gydre, sayd alle wyth one consente: "Syr emperour, purpose ³ye not to do otherwyse than ganellon hath sayd, For he 28 hath spoken wysely; and therfor conclude ye to retorne in to fraunce wythout gooyng ony ferther on. we ben xx thousand that hauie made oth to-gyder that, for ony thynge that ye say or do, we shal not goo noo ferther. 32 For sythe that Roulland is dede, they hauie loste theyr conforte, & hym that was chyef of the conservacion of their persones." Charles, al heuy, answerd: "O god of

¹ h v, back, col. 2.

² orig. donn.

³ h vj.

heuen, how am I determyned? yf I retorne wythoute
to auenge my barons, I shal doo pourely, sythe they
haue susteyned & borne vp the crowne Imperyal and
4 my wylle, and I now to retorne wythoute to auenge
them—He that gaf me suche counceyll, loueth me but
lytel, I see wel.” Reyner of genes, fader of Olyuer,
aroos vp and sayd: ¶ “O Emperour, yf thou byleue
8 these wordes that haue ben said to the, thy gouernance
shal be so euyl, that by them al fraunce shal be wasted
& brought to nought. And who someuer haue damage,
they retche not, but passe ouer lyghtly.” Thenne they

12 that were of the partie of the traytres cam forth and
sayd: “Reyner of genes, ye haue lyed of that whiche
ye haue sayd. And yf it were not by cause the kyng⁴
is present, ye shold lose your hede and it shold be

16 smyton of. we knowe wel what ye be: your fader
garyn was neuer but a pour man and of lowe condy-
eyon: Alle your lygnage ne ben but people of nought.”

¶ The duc Reyner myght not suffre thys Inurye, but

20 came to hym, and smote hym wyth hys fyst in suche
wyse that he ouerthrew to grounde; and there were
made many reproches and ylle talent, in so moche that
yf the kyng had not be present, and made the pees and

24 tranquylte, they had slain eche other. For anone there
were moo than a thousand of the lygnage of ganellon.

But fyerasbras, which was present, blamed them strongly;
And on that other syde the kyng sware by hys crowne

28 that yf there were ony persone that began bataylle or
fyght, that he shold do hym be hanged as a theef at-
taynt, of what someuer estate that he were, and by thys
they were aferde for to offend, and was nomore spoken.

32 Not-withstandyng that, the counceyl was taken emonge
them, that they shold put Reyner to deth as sone as
they shold be in Fraunce. Charles sent for them to
come to hym, and said to them: “ye haue done to me

Rayner warns
Charles not to
trust Ganelon or
his friends. (409c)

Ganelon's friends
abuse Rayner,
4103

who knocks
Alorys down.
(4147)

A great disturb-
ance ensues,

which is quieted
by Fierabras and
Charles. (4136)

Ganelon's party
vow vengeance
against Rayner.

¹ h vj, col. 2.

Charles orders
Alorys to beg
Rayner's pardon
on his knees.
(4149)

a grete shame; but yf it be not amended now tofore me, I shal do opene Iustyee. Alwaye nedes must the kynge be obeyed." in suche wyse that alory ¹on hys knees cryed due Reyner mercy, but he wold neuer haue 4 doon it yf it had not been for to appease the furour of kyng charles; & thus they maad the pees. And after themperour sayd his oppynyon, that yf he torned backe that it shold be to hym grete dyshonour. Therfor cam 8 geffroy daulteuylle, fader of Ganellon, whyche sayd:

"Syr Emperour, I am olde, and haue seen moche thyng, wherfore me semeth that ye ought to bylene me as wel as ony persone of your compayne. ye knowe wel that I 12 and Ganellon my sone haue alwaye loued you, And, how that it be that he comeyl leth you to retorne, hath good ryght. I haue now my body alle to-brusid for beryng of armes; and be ye sure, that tofore that twenty yere 16 be passed, the chyldyn that be now in fraunce shal be grete & myghty to bere armes, and they shal be so grete a compayne, that lyȝtely ye shal mowe conquere spayn, and anenge the deth of rolland and of hys other felowes." 20 Whan Charles vnderstode these wordes, he wepte byterly, & saw that by force he must ayenst hys wylle retorne in to fraunce, and leue hys enemyes. Wherfore by the sowne of trompettes was cryed the retraytte. 24 And anone the artylleryes were assembled and the harmoys trussed, wherof ²the compayne of traytres were loyous, and many of the other were euyl contente, & in especyal Reyner, whych returned withoute hys sone 28 Olyner, wherof ye may wel thynke in what estate was hys herf, by cause he hath³ loste al hys confort.

Charles gives way,

and orders the
retreat home to
France. (4189)

To the great grief
of Rayner and
others. (4195)

¶ How after the complaynte of Charles,
Rychard come vnto hym, whyche tolde to 32

¹ h vj. back. ² h vj. back, col. 2. ³ orig. hast.

hym thaffayres of the peres of Fraunce:
capitulo vj

WHAN charles was mounted on horsback, and in
4 wage for to retorne, he took remors of Rolland,
Olyner, and of other, how he lefte them without
oute to do otherwyse his deuoyr: he taryed sayeng:
“O vnhappy that I am, I may wel sorowe whan I now
8 leue the men that I loue best in the world, and retorne
fro them, whan I ought by good ryght to auenge them.
I shal be reputed for a fool, & sore blamed. O Rolland,
how I hame loued you! may euer your vncle so longe
12 lyue that he may see your deth auenged? God defende
that euer I bere crowne on my hede, seen the pouerte
of my fayte.” thys sayeng, almoost he fyl a swoone to
the erthe for the dysplaysaunce that he had: ^{he swoons from} ^{grief, 14221/}
16 heuynes had he that tyme. “Alas!” sayd Charles,
“Rolland, I was moche euyl auysed whan I consented
that thou sholdest goo to thadmyral! wel am I cause of
al your perdyeyon!” In makynge thys heuynes, the
20 hoost made soo grete bruyt to retourne, that it was mer-
naylle. & thus as they began to ryde forth, The em-
perour loked toward the cest, and from ferie he sawe
rychard come rydynge vpon an hors sore rennyng, and
24 helde in his hande a swerde al naked. wherfor the Em-
perour sente for to come to hym the moost grettest
lordes of hys companye, and made thoost to tarye and
goo no ferther forth. “I see,” sayd he, “yonder comyng
28 a man on horsback, which maketh grete haste, and
ledeth on hys ryght syde a fayr courser, as me thynketh;
and he semeth by hys rydynge that he is Rycharde of
normandye. Now I praye to god almyghty that thys
32 day he sende me tydylnges of rolland and of the other
barons, that they be alyue.” Thenne the hoost taryed,
and anone came richard, whyche maad hys hors to lepe

Charles laments
over the loss of
his barons; (1407)

he swoons from
grief, 14221/

The army pre-
pares to start
home. 14227/

charles sees
Richard coming,
14229,

and orders a halt.
14233,

He recognises
Richard. 14247,

moche gentilly tofore the kyng, whome he salewed
moche humbly. And thenne charles sayd to rycharde
of normandye: “Sone of noble baron, how is hyt wyth
you? what is bycomen of my neuewe Rolland and of 4
myn other ¹barons? be ye come alone? be they alyue
or dede? telle me, I praye you.” Rycharde ansuerde:
“Syr Emperour, Rolland & the other, whan I departed
fro them, were al hole and in good poynt, and been 8
in aygremore, in a stronge toure, bysyeged by ballant the
admyral of spayne and fader of Fyerabras; & there been
aboute them an hondred thousa[n]d sarasyns. And
knowe ye for certayn that thadmyral is a man moche 12
fyers & terryble, whyche hath sworn by his god mahoun
and Termagaunt, that he shal never departe fro thens but
that they shal be hanged by the necke. And on that
other syde your barons haue wyth them floripes, the 16
curtoys daughter of thadmyral, the fayrest that euer
was seen, the whyche hath in hyr kepyng the relyques
that ye soo moche desyre to haue. and sende you worde
by me that ye shold come and ayde them for to sauie 20
theyr lynes. And yf it please you to remembre them,
ye shal mowe conquerre the contreye of spayne, & other
goodes ynough.” Grete consolacyon had kyng Charles,
And thenne he conceyued wel that Ganellon was a 24
traytre and ful of wyckednesse, And never after hys
counceyll ne sayeng shold be herde ne allowed in hys
courte. For he sawe wel, that as for hym it abode not
²but Rolland and hys felowes sholde haue dyed. “Now 28
gentyl Rycharde,” sayd the kyng, “is the toure in
whyche they been bysyeged, stronge & wel garnysshed
of vytayl for to defende them ony whyle? yf they may
holde vij dayes, I shal make thadmyral to dye, and al 32
hys complyees.” “Syr,” answerde Rycharde, “I shal
say to you the trouthe, they haue noo vytayl but they
gete it with the swerde. thadmyral is meruayllously

Charles enquires
of Richard how
Roland and the
others are. (1257)

Richard tells him
how they are
besieged by Balan,
(4265)

that they have
Floripes and the
saered reliyes,
(4271)

and have sent him
to beg Charles to
come to their
help. (4276)

The king is
pleased,

and says if they
can hold out for
six days he will
deliver them.
(4300)

¹ h vij. col. 2.

² h vij. back.

fyers and ful of eruelte, and hath of people a multytude
Innumerable, the whyche holde the space of two myle.
the town is stronge, where he habyteth, & also there is

Richard tells him
that the tower is
surrounded by the
Saracens,

4 on thys syde of the tomm the brydge of mantryble, where
the passage is moche daungerous, and the walles of that
eyte ben made of marble eymented and fortifyed with
toures, and there renneth a ryuer ryȝt hydous, whyche
8 is named flagot, and is of depthe of ij speres of lengthe,
& renneth so fast and Brayeth, that there is noo bote ne
shyppe may passe theron, and the brydge is half a myle
longe, And in the myddes there is a toure¹ of marble
12 so stronge that it may not be beten doon ; & the yate is
garnysshed and kepte wyth barryers of yron fast locked.

and that he will
have to pass the
bridge of Mantri-
ble, (4309)

¶ The portyer that kepeth thys plase is a paynym hydous
and grete, massyf, stronge and felonious, whyche bet-
16 ter resembleth the deuyl than ony man or persone. he
is as blacke as pythe boylded, & hath x thousand
knyghtes in his compayne. wherfore I wote wel that by
force we may not passe ; For by ony assaulte that may
20 be doon to them, they doubt not. And yf we passe
not by engyne and subtyllte, we may not goo ouer the
brydge ; For by force we may noo thyng do, but it

which is kept by
a giant,

byhoneth vs to passe in guyse of marchaunts ; And
24 somme of vs shal be wel armed vnder our clothes ; and
there aboue we shal were a mantel of cloth, & theyr
swerdes vnder, And there shal come after vs grete som-
myers charged with marchaudyses. And ye wyth al
28 the chyualrye shal tarye in a lytel wode, & that every
man be in grete poynte, & after whan we hane gotten
the fyrist gate, I shal sounē & blowe myn horne, And
wyth motye ye shal come on. And thus we shal hauie
32 the passage, by the playsyr of god, and we shal come to
our enteneyon." Thys councelyl was wel approued by
the kyng Charles, whyche ofte blessyd rycharde by cause
he had so wel sayd, & thenne he resembled al his peple.

He proposes a plan
by which they
may pass it by,
disguising some
knights as mer-
chants. (4315)

¹ orig. tonre.

² h vij, back, col. 2.

charles approves
of the plan. (4356)

The standardes were reysed, and the loryflam dysconerd.
 Rychard took hys hors, and gaf it to due Reyner, And
 wente & ¹bonde heye and grasse to-gydre, and made
 trusses vpon many sommyers, in the guyse of mar- 4
 chauntes. euery man wel arm'd vnder hys cloke, &
 swerde gyrd, and so take theyr horses, to thende that
 they shold not be espyed: and were in nombre v hon-
 dred knyghtes, alle men of grete faeyon, and dryne to- 8
 fore them the sommyers for a good enterpryse. Rychard
 went tofore as chyef enterprenour, due howel of Nautes
 folowed, Guye de vallee, Ryoll du mauns, Due Reyner,
 fader of Olyuer, & other, whyche rode forth wythout 12
 taryengt. And Charles wyth alle hys baronnye abode
 in a wode, as tofore I haue maad meneyon.

¶ How by the moyen & councayl of Rychard
 of Normandye, wyth iij other barons, the 16
 strong brydge of mantryble was wozne,
 not wythoute grete payne; And what
 maner man galafre was: capitulo viij

Themperour charles, with an hondred thousand men, 20
 abode in the wode tofore sayl, & Rychard of nor-
 mandye, howel of Nautes, Ryoll, and Reyner, & other
 peple whyche were valyaunte of theyr persone, were on
 the waye to goo toward man²tryble, and ladde wyth 24
 them a quantyte of sommyers charged, whan the felowes
 of Rychard sawe the ryuer of flagot so roryng, And
 thentree of the cyte of mantryble so stronge, the brydge
 soo daungerous to passe, & the yates barred and en- 28
 chayned so wyth yron, they were moche abasshed.
 For, for to come thyder by assaulte, alle the puyssance
 of crystendom myght not entre by that place, but they
 aualed the brydge and chaynes of yron. Ryol de- 32
 maundek of Rychard: "What may there be of this

Richard and his party ride on,

driving the pack-horses before them. 1626.

His companions
 are frightened at
 the sight of the
 river and the
 strength of the
 bridge. 1695.

place?" And he answered: "knowe ye that thys is the strongest cyte that is bytwene thys and Acres. And there been in the same cyte moo than a thousand men
 4 of armes." Hoel of Nautes was alle afraied, And commaunded hym self to god, prayeng hym to kepe theyr persones. Ryehard sayd: "lordes, I wyl goo before, & shal speke fyrst; and whan we haue passed the fyrst
 8 yate, see that ye take of your clokes for to smyte vpon the paynyme: & for ony thyng that happeth, see that the one of you faylle not the other." Ryol answered:
 "doubte ye not that whan I am emonge the sarasyns
 12 but that I shal doo my deuoyr that it shal appyere: and yf I doo not as I say, I wyl that ye reclame me reereaunte, and repute me as rebouted." After these wordes they hasted theyr sommyers toward the brydge;
 16 & galafre sawe them fro ferre, and stode restyng hym nygh to the fyrst gate, & helde in his honde a grete axe of fyn stele bended and affyled that there was noo syde but it cutted. Thys paynym was grete, and fourmed so
 20 hydously, and of suche representacyon, that he semed better a denyl than a resonable persone. he had eyen al enflammed lyke fyre, & he was as blacke as boylded pytche; hys necke large & grete, his nose half a fote
 24 longe, his eeres so grete that they myȝt conteyne wel half a busshel of whete, hys armes longe & crooked, & his feet stode ouerthwart; & as of the remenaunte of hys body, was lothely ynough. Ballant thadmyral loued
 28 hym moche, & was his neuewe, and for the grete confydence that he had in hym he gaf to hym the kepyng of the brydge of mantryble, by cause that it was the moost strengest passage that was in al the marches of
 32 that contreye. And the sayd paynym was constable of al the londes of thadmyral, wherfore it was necessarye that none of the frensshe men shold haue be knownen of hym. For yf there had ony be knownen, there shold

Richard encourages them, and tells them to follow him. (4113)

Galafre sees them coming. (4127)

He is as hideous as a devil,

pitch-black, with flaming eyes,
his nose is six inches long,
and his ears big enough to hold half a bushel of wheat.

Balan loved him greatly

and had made him constable of all the country about. (4115)

neuer none haue escaped¹ but he shold haue ben dede.
Thus, thenne, whan they were ¹at mantryble, Rychard
passed¹ afore, and whan he was at the entre of the gate,
Galafre came to hym & sayd¹: "vassal, what are ye ²&
wherfore come ye hyther?"

Galafre challenges
the French
knights. (4451)

Richard tells him
they are mer-
chants on their
way to the fairs,

and bearing pre-
sents to Balan.
(4456)

Galafre says that
twelve Frenchmen
had passed the
bridge without
paying toll. (4475)

as well as a
messenger,

who had slain his
cou-in Clarion,
(4487)

wherefore Balan
had ordered him
to let no one pass,

¶ Rychard¹, whyche was wyse, chaunged his langage,
& began aragon, and sayd¹: "Syr, I am a marchaunte
whyche cometh fro Taraston wyth these other mar- 8
chauntes, & brynge grete quantyte of draperye, and wyl
goo to the fayres, by the helpe of mahon, to whome we
goo to present our marchaudyses; and yf we were at
Aygremore, we shold soiourne there, and gyne to thad- 12
myral somme precyous yeftes that we here brynge.
These other marchauntes that ben here wyth me ben al
esclaines, and knowe not the langage, wherfor, fayre syr,
we praye to aduyse vs what we may best do, & by what 16
waye we ought to goo." Galafre answere¹: "knowe ye,
that I am kepar of the brydge and of the passages that
been fyfty myle here aboue. But not longe sythen
passed hereby xij glotons of fraunce, whiche were mes- 20
sagers of the emperor Charles, which yet owe to me
theyr trybute for theyr passage. Neuertheles my lord¹
thadmeral kepereth them in pryon, And¹ one of them
that other day escaped preuyly away as a theef, whiche 24
rode vpon an hors the best that euer I sawe, & ²passed¹
ouer thys rennyng water; whyche also slewe my eosyn
the kyng¹ Claryon, for whome I am in grete melancolye,
now wold god Mahon that he were now here vpon thys 28
brydge, I shold cleue hym vnto the myddle of his bely
wythout to haue ony mercy or pyte on hym.

Syth that tyme thadmyral doubteth of treason, For
his sone fyerabras whyche hath renye¹ mahon and¹ the 32
paynym lawe for to beeome crysten. And¹ he com-
maunded¹ me thre tymes that I shold not suffre ony
persone, lord¹, knyght, ne seruytour, to passe, And¹ that

¹ h viij. back, col. 2.

² i. j.

I shold serche wel al for to knowe the condycyon of
theym that come thys waye. Therfore I wyl knowe
what ye be." Rychard heryng thys, bowed his hede:

unless he is
known, 4501)

- 4 Ryol du mauns, Hoel of Nauntes, and Reyner of genes
goon forth ouer the brydge, whan galafre saw them, he
began to doubte, and sayd to them that there shold
nomoo entre, and auauncd hym and drewe vp the
Raoul and two
others pass on to
the bridge, 4509)
- 8 brydge; and there were nomoo wythin but four, whyche
he dreid not, and sayd to them in grete fyerste: "ye are
ouer bolle & hardy to entre herein wythout my com-
maundemente, And therfor ye four shal be sette in
Galafre raises the
bridge, 4514)
- 12 pryson, and the other that come after you also. And
to-morn I shal sende you prisoners ¹to my lord thad-
myrall, he for to doo with you his playsyr. Take of your
mantellys or clokis, for I wyl see what ye haue there
and calls on them
to surrender.
(4517)
- 16 vnder, For ye seme people for to do euyl." Thus say-
eng, he toke noel by the cloke, & drewe hym therby
foure tymes aboute: "By god," sayd Ryol, "I may no
lenger tarye to see hym do thys Iniurye to my cosyn;
20 yf I suffre lenger, be I confounded!" And therwyth
he threwe of his cloke, and smote vpon the paynym; but
he was so strongly armid that he myght do hym no
harme, sauf that he smote of a lytel of hys ere. Rychard
Raoul strikes at
him,
- 24 and Reyner semblably caste of theyr clokis, and eche
of them with a swerde in theyr hondes smote to-gydre
vpon Galafre, and gaf hym many strokes; but the heed
ne the body they myght not hurte, For he was armed
and cuts off a piece
of his ear.
- 28 with the hyde of on olde Serpente harde and maylled.
¶ Thys Paynym was angry, and supposed for to haue
smyton Ryol, and enhaunceid hys axe that was grete
and heuy and also sharpe, but Ryol sawe the stroke
The others cut at
him, but cannot
hurt him. (4541)
- 32 come, and was habylle, and lepte a syde, and the stroke
smote vpon the grounde in suche wyse that hyt clasfe a
marble stone on whyche the stroke lyghted.
- Galafre cuts at
Raoul with his
axe, 4552)
- but misses him.

¹ i j. col. 2.

"Ha! god of heuen!" sayd Reyner, "how he smyteth outrageously! ¹ I am al abasshed of the puysaunce of thys deuyl whom we may not conquer ne gryene." He thus sayengt, he took a grete brananche of ⁴ a tree whyche was longe and stronge, and aduyseſt and marked the paynym wel, and he smote hym therwyth in suchē wyse that he made hym to ouerthrowe to therthe; & whan he was ouerthrown, he maad a crye ⁸ so hye and hydous that the Ryuer and the rockes made grete bruyt. Wyth thys voys the paynymeſt of mantryble were moeued and assembled, that within a lytel whyle there were redy armēd moo than x thousand. ¹²

Rayner knocks Galafre down with a branch of a tree. (1563)

1000 Saracens assemble. (4573)

Richard lets down the bridge, and the 500 knights enter. (4581)

Then he blows his horn. (4575)

Richard took hys horne and sowned it hyely thre tymes. Charles thempour vnderstood it wel, whyche was in the wood aforesayd with al his puyssaunce. Enery man was on horsback moche redyly, and there was not one that cessed to renne tyl he came ²⁴ to the brydge. ²¶ Ganellon, whyche after was traytour, bare hym valyauntly. For he was the fyrt that cam to the brydge wyth hys confanon reyſed; but the loyalte & trouthe of hym ne of hys kynnesmen endured ²⁸ not longe, as the laste book shal more playnly shewe, by the playsyr of god.

and Charles with all his men come up. (4587)

Ganelon in front. (4589)

¶ How by force and' strengthe of bataylle
Charles entred' in to mantryble, after that ³²
Galafre was slayn, not wythstondyng' that

¹ i. j. back.

² i. j. back, col. 2.

alory the traytre was contrarye to hym;
and' many other maters: capitolo viij

AT thentre of mantryble were moche hurt people & In the fight at the
4 confounded, as wel of frenssh men as of sarasyns. gate of Mantrible
Charles and
Ganelon bear
them well. (4595)

and at that tyme themperour bare hym wel, For whome he attayned wyl hys swerde named Ioyouse, he must nedes deye, he smote so rudely, and that day was alway 8 by hym Ganellon, whych dyd wel hys denoyr. The dyches of the towne were depe and ful of water, wherin many were drowned. ¶ Thus as Charles passed tofore, and hys people after, He sawe galafre on þe grounde, 12 which was not dede, and that semed better a deuyl than a resonable persone, And helde alwaye hys ¹axe in hys honde, wyl whyche he had slayn thyrtty frenssh men. And the Emperour, seeyng the harme that he had doon 16 to the frensshe men, anone commaunded to slee hym; & so moche they smote at hym wyl axes and stones, that they slewe hym. The bruyt and noyse was so grete, that fyue myle abouthe was anone knownen that the 20 brydge of mantryble was taken and conquerd; wherfore there came L thousand sarasyns, for to gyne ayde to the 50,000 Saracens
come to help those
of Mantrible,
(4639)

24 stronge that it semed a thyng Imposyble to conquere or destroye. ¶ To thys medle came a geaunt moche fyvers, named Ampheon, And had a wyf named Amyotte. Amongst them a
giant and giant-
ess, named Am-
pheon and
Amyot. (4652)

And she was departed fro her gesyne, For she had 28 borne two sones, whyche were but iij monethes olde, and were two foot brode in the breste, and ten foot longe, as thystorye sayth. Thys geaunt opened the gate, & helde in his honde a club of yron grete and massyf, 32 And whan he was passed that yate, wyl hys voys tenebrouse and dyabolyke he cryed: "Where is charles Ampheon chal-
enges Charles,
(4669)

and threatens him. (4672)

relyques to Saynt Denys? by malon, by the whyche I
comforte my self, it were better ¹for hym, olde dotard,
that he were now at parys. And late hym knowe cer-
tainly, that yf thadmyral may haue hym, he shal neuer ⁴
haue mercy on hym, but he shal do hym be flayn, &
hanged alle quycke, or brenne hym in a fyre." after
that he had thus spoken, he smote doun many frensshe
men wyth hys club of yron. ¶ In thyſ recountre were 8
seen and founden so grete a multytude of dede men
that they letted men to passe. Charles, whyche sawe
the facyon, descended and lyght of hys hors, alle wroth
in hys courage, & sette hys sheldre tofore hym, wyth hys 12
swerde in hys hande, and hys barons came after hym
ayenſt the geaunt. & after that the kyng & he were
assembled, Charles wyth hys swerde Ioyous smote hym
soo myghtely that he clefte hym in two pyees, & 16
myghtely recouerd hys stroke, that he maad hym falle
to the erthe, And soo he was deed. Wherfore the
Sarasyne were all moeued and affrayed, And as people
enraged smote vpon the Frenſſhe men with darteres, 20
plombettes, and other engynes mortal.

Charles attacks Ampheon,
and with his sword cuts him in two. (4686)

Charles calls for help. (4691)
Richard and three others join him,

and drive the Saracens back into the town. (4699)

The Saracens surround them. (4703)

¶ And thenne Charles cryed socours for to assemble
hys people. And wyth that crye came to hym Ryeharl
of Normandye, Reyner of genes, hoel of nauntes, and 24
Syr Ryol du mauns, ²whyche alle had courage lyke vnto
lyons. These fourre barons wyth charles made the pay-
nymis to remene, and to reentre ageyn by force in to the
towne of mantryble. And anone the turkes, whyche 28
were moo than x thousand, cam to the yate for to shette
it, in makyngr grete defence with bowes and other shotte,
besyde them that came after, whyche kepte the passages,
which were wel, as thystorye maketh meneyon, fyue 32
thousand; but al'e they conde not fynde the maner to
lyfte vp the brydge, For it was conserued and kept
ayenſt the sarasyns by the frenſſhe men. There was

¹ i ij. col. 2.

² i ij. back.

grete bruyt in thys recontre; And though Charles doubted, it was noo meruaylle. For he knewe wel that yf the sarasyns had lyfte vp the brydge to the yate of 4 the towne, It had not be possyble to hym to haue passed ouer. And he, seyng them reyse vp toward the yate grete barres of yron, supposed not to haue passed, And wyth a moche wooful herte began to wayle Roulland 8 his neuewe, and the other hys felowes, as he shold neuer haue seen them.

charles is almost
in despair. (4712)

¶ Rychard of Normandye consyderyng thys, eservyd and sayd: "Syr Emperour, in the honour of god esmaye 12 you not, but thynke to destroye and smyte doun these Turkes, and god shal ayde & helpe vs. Ye knowe wel that there is none so franke ne valyaunte that wyl acoward hymself, but that he ought to be despysed, and 16 wyth good ryght. ¶ And I praye to god that he be confounded that suffreth hymself to be taken a-lyue for to dye afterward, and that had not leuer be hewen in pyeces than to retorne. And wythoute more, late vs 20 auaunee vs, For now it is nede that eche man proue hys strengthe and the value of hys persone." Wyth these wordes of a grete courage, entr[ed] in to the towne, Charles, Reyner, Hoel, Ryol, and Ryehard, These fyue 24 onelye, eche wyth a swerde in hys honde. And ye ought to wete that they entred not wythout grete slaughter of turkes and of Paynyme[s].

Richard encour-
ages him. (4715)

and the five pass
forward into the
town. (4725)

Charles, seyng come grete multytude of sarasyns, 28 cryed "a larme and soours" moche hye and furiously. Ganellon vnderstood hym, and had of hym grete pyte; Not wythstondyng at the laste he founde hym not good; & came to geffroy, & eservyd hauteuyle his fader, & the 32 other hys kynnesmen, whyche were arm'd moche rychely to the nombre of M vij C, and al they came afote for to assayle the yate. The turkes maad grete deffence wyth brondes and barres of yron and mortal shotte, where as

charles calls for
assistance.
Ganelon hears
him,

and wishes to
help him. (4729)

¹many were dede and herte, of the people of the sayd Ganelon.

Thenne alory, the traytre, sayd to ganellon : "in sayth, we ben grete foles for to late vs thus deye, & suffre thys torment." And after he sayd to ganellon yet : "late vs goo and departe. Charles is wythin wel empesshed : god forbede that he euer departe ! & thou mayst wel see now, that of hym and of Reyner we are wel auenge^k of the contradydctyons that they made to vs, & of theyr subgettes also. And enyl deth mote he deye that foloweth them ony ferther. for we may wynne Fraunce at our ease and wylle, & holde it wythout contradydction, 12 Seen that there is no baron that wyl be to vs contrarye." Ganellon ansuerd : "God of glorie forbede that euer I shold do suche trayson to my ryȝtful lord ! we holde of hym al our londes & seygnouries. I shold 16 be holden for an ouer vntrewe man yf I consented to hys deth. We haue none other cause but that we ought to do our denoyn for hym," whan Alory vnderstood hym, he enraged almoost for angre, and after sayd to ganellon : 20 "ye be a veray fool, that ye tarye whan ye now may wel aduenge you. yf thempour Charles be slain, al the other barons shal haue theyr heedes smyton of, And thus we shial be aduenged on al our eⁿemnyes. Ther- 24 fore leue of, and come on." Ganellon ansuerd : "god forbede that euer I shold be a traytre to my lord, ne that I leue hym vnholpen, but doo my denoyn to ayde hym. I had leuer to be dysmembred, than to be shamed and blamed in this dede." ¶ Of these wordes were enyl contente Alory and also geffroy damilteyle, in suche wyse that there was grete debate emonge them. Vpon this came Eyerabras in good araye and grete 32 poynte, and began to erye : "where is Charles ?"

¶ The Traytre answerd : "Syr, ye shal never see hym. He is wythin enclosed, and I suppose he be

Alorys presses
Ganelon to retire,
and leave Charles
to his fate. (4739)

"God forbid!"
says Ganelon.
(4739)

Alorys calls him
a fool. (4739)

but Ganelon is
faithful to Charles.
(4765)

Fierabras comes
up, and asks
where Charles is.
(4775)

dede now.' Fyerabras answerd: "And ye emonge you, what doo you here? what tarye ye? why socoure ye hym not in thys nede? ye may be reproched of 4 treson wylle good ryght." And after bygan to crye "socours and ayde" moche lowde; and by hys voys all the frensshe men came, wythoute ony taryeng, to the belfraye, and fonde Fyerabras and Ganellon, that thenne 8 had lefte the Traytres at the entree of the brydge.

¶ And Fyerabras thenne was wel Ioyous whan he sawe that the brydge was not drawen up, And thenne he and Ganellon dyd gretely theyr deuoir, for to entre 12 in to the cyte. ¹ And whan they were wythin, & the traytres sawe the toun wonne, by a manere to do gretely theyr deuoir, entred in a foot, & smote down wyth the other comunelye. And grete habundiance of blode 16 runne thurgh the towne oute of the dede bodyes, that eche man meruaylleth that sawe it. The paynynms cryed and brayed as wulues enfamysshed, whan they sawe that they coude not resyste them. They sente to the ad- 20 myral that he shold socoure them, and cryed on mahon & Termagaunt that they wold come to theyr ayde; but for all that, they were dyscomforde sorowfully, put 24 oute of theyr habytacyons, robbed, pylled of theyr rychesses and goodes, and destroyed. Thus doyng, a messenger departed secretly for to goo to Aymore, for tacompte and telle the tydynges of theyr destructyons.

¶ How Amyotte, a geantesse, wyth a sythe
28 greued' gretely the crysten men, and' how
hyr two sones were baptysed of the Em-
perour Charles: capitulo ix

32 **W**HAN mantryble was taken, many strokes were gyuen; but when Amyotte, the geantesse, knewe & herd the crye of the cytezeins, whiche ²were

¹ i iij, back.

² i iij, back, col. 2.

and calls on them
to succour him.
(4780)

Fierabras and
Ganelon fight
nobly,

and the town is
won. (1792)

The Saracens send
to Balan for help.
(4800)

troubled!—She was as blaeke as pytche boyld!: hyr eyen were rede as brennyng fyre: shie had a grete vysage & crooked as hye of lengthe as a spere, & gretely affrayed of the deth of hyr husbond!, & also aferde for 4

Amyot the giantess rushes out, armed with a scythe,

and slays numbers of the French.
(4820)

Charles shoots her with a cross-bow.
(4832)

The town is sacked.
(4845)

Charles remains at Mantrible three days.
(4845)

He finds the children of the giantes Amyot, whom he causes to be baptised, under the names of Roland and Oliver.
(4865)

hyr ij sones, of whyche shie was late delynerd! ;—soo shie in a rage lepte out of hyr hous, and fonde a sythe trenchant and meruayllously sharpe, and cam vpon

the frensshe men so Impetuously that shie maad! grete 8 dyscomfyte, in suche wyse that none durst wel approche hyr. Kyng Charles seeyng thys, was euyl contente of the deth of hys peple, and demaunded! a crosse bowe.

And! whan it was bende, he shiotte so ryght that 12 he atteyned! hyr bytwene the browes, so that shie fyl down deed! to the erthe. She began to cast oute of hyr throte a flamme of fyre, moche hydons. Neuertheles, shie was smyton so wyt hones and other thynges, that 16 she neuer moeued after; wherfore after that, the yates of the towne and other deffences were not kepte ne defended!, but that Charles dyd his wylle of alle.

¶ Grete rychesse was founde in that fayre towne, and 20 the subgettes of the Emperour Charles were there wel refresshied! of gold and syluer, whiche there habounded!. For thadmyral Ballant, by cause that place ¹was so stronge & sure, had layed there grete tresours. The 24 kyng ordeyned! in suche manere, that bothe grete and smale were wel contente wyt hym. And! there he abode thre dayes in departyng² & destroybutyng the goodes, after the degrees & qualytees of hys subgettes. 28 And! after, as charles wente sportyng by the ryuer flagot, In a caue were founden the ij sones, yonge chyldren, of the fornamed geantesse Amyotte, of whome he was wel Ioyous, and! were baptysed! ; & one he named! Roul- 32 land!, and! that other Olyuer; and dyd do them wel to be nourysshed. But after, wythin two monethes, they were bothe founden dede in theyr beddes, wherfore

¹ i iiii.

² orig. dapartyng.

themerour was euyl contente. Neuertheles, in that same tyme, whyche was the moneth of may, that the stronge cyte of mantryble was taken & put in subge-

4 tyon, charles made to come to hym Rycharde of Normandye, Reyner of genes, hoel of nauntes, Ryol of mauns, & took cunceyl who shold kepe the brydge and passage of mantryble, tyl they had destroyed bal-

Charles consults
as to whom he
shall leave in
charge of
Mantrible. (4875)

8 lant the admiral, & delyuered oute of pryson the other peres of fraunce. Rycharde answered: "syr emperour, me semeth it shold be good that hoel & syr Ryol shold abyde for to kepe þe brylge & toun wyth fyue thousand

By the advice of
Richard Howel
and Raoul are left
there with 5000
men. (4881)

12 men." ¹and lyke as Rycharde sayd, so was it doon. and there they ij abode, and the hurt men for to be heled at theyr leyzer. and after, with sowne of trompettes, the hoost of the emperour began to depart toward

16 aygremore; and there was so moche peple and so grete estate, that it was merneylle. Thus as they were wel on theyr waye, The Emperour wente vpon a lytel hylle for to byholde his peple and subgettes; And seeyng the

Charles, seeing
the magnitude of
his forces, thanks
God. (4907)

20 multytude, he lyfte vp hys eyen to heuen, and sayd: "O lord god, my creatour, whiche by thy grace and playsyr hast made me lord and condyntaxour of thys people, wyth ryght good hert I gyne to the, thankynges

24 and laude. Thou hast gynen to me grete puyssance sythe they be at my wylle and commaundemente."

After that he had sayd thus, he blesseyd hym, And in the name of Ihesus he took forth hys waye. And the

28 sayd Emperour had in hys compayne an hondred thousand men wel fyglyng, And the Admyral had the fyghtars of thyrteny contreyes. the frenssh men rode forth: Rycharde of normandye was in the anaunte garde,

He has 100,000
men.

32 And the Duke Reyner² in that other. Anone the tyllynges came to thadmyral that galafre was slayn, & that mantryble was taken & dyscomfyted,³ wherfore he swowned for sorowe, and cryed out, "haroo!" as a

Balan is told of
the death of
Galafre, and the
capture of
Mantrible. (4923)

¹ i iiiij, col. 2.

² orig. Reyuer.

³ i iiiij, bk.

In great grief and
rage he curses
Mahoun, (1927)

and smashes his
image. (1939)

Sortibrant advises
him to repent and
humble himself
before his gods,
(1943)

and to send out
spies to see if
Charles is coming.
(1951)

Balan is per-
■ mated and
repents. (1963)

man fro hym self, sayengt: "ha! ha! god mahon! thy power is nought. O cursyd god & recreaunte, thou art nothyng^t worth te me! he is a moche fool that trusteth in the, whan thou suffrest my men to be slain, and hast 4 consented to my dyslionour, as I now wel see, whych ouȝtest wel to haue doon the contrarye." Thys sayengt, the admiral took a clubbe with his two handes, & ranne to mahon & his other goddes, & smote Mahon 8 soo grete a stroke vpon the heed^t, that he fyl doun, & was al to-broken. yf thadmyral and the other paynynms were not wel abuse^d, they myght knowe elerely theyr Infydelyte and fals creaunce, for to Inuoke the ymages 12 that can not speke ne gyne comfort, and hane no consolacion. A lytel vnderstondyng and lacke of wytte, & also contrarye to nature, for to gyne fayth of helpe to a thynge made with the hande of a man. Neuertheles, 16 Sortybrant of Conymbres, seyngt the desolacyon of thadmyral, councaylled hym, that as moche as he myght, to chastise hym self of the Iniurye doon to Mahon. Thadmyral said to hym: "I may not enelyne to do to 20 hym obeyssance, Seeyngt that Charles hath wonne by his puissaunce my cyte and stronge tour¹ of mantryble, where as I had^t my laste conforto to kepe me moost sure." Sortybrant ansuerd: "Syr admiral, sende forth 24 an espye for to wete yf the hoost of charles cometh byther ageynst you; And^t yf it be soo, late vs ryde ayenst hym in bataylle to-gyder. And^t yf ye may, late hym be taken, and hange hys people, or brenne them, 28 without ony mercy or pyte. And^t thenne after ye may caste out of your tour these glotons that kepe it, and smyte of the heed^t of Fyerabras, thy sone, that aydeth them." Whan the admiral ballant had herde Sorty- 32 brant, consyderyng^t hys affectyon, humbly he retorne^d to mahon, purposyng^t to do as he had^t sayd.

¶ How the peres of Fraunce were assayld'
more strongly than euer they were, And'
the toure quasi put to therthe, and' recom-
forted' by the holy relyques, by them
adoured, and other maters : capitulo x

SOrtybrant prayd^t soo moche thadmyral, & with
8 hym the olde kyng^t Coldroe tempest^t hym, &
brullant de mommyere, that for thyniurye that he had
doon to Mahon tofore them al he shold make amendes.
The admyral beyng content for their ¹affectyon, sware
that he shold encrerce Mahon, and Augment of a thou-
12 sand^t wey^t, after their custome, of fyn gold^t and other
precyosytees. And^t anone dy^t do sowne trompettes
and other Instruments, at the sowne of whome were
assembled sarasyns Innumerable, al arm'd. And the
16 admyral maa^t to brynge hys engynes for to throwe
grete stones at the tour, for to brynge it down, and^t also
for to destroye the frensshe men & hys daughter. And
thus, more feruent than euer he had been, cam for
20 tassayle the toure, and laye theyr engynes therto ; wyth
whych the paynmys made fyne grete hooles in the
toure, that thurgh the leste myght passe a carte at his
ease. whan thys was doon, Olyuer & Rolland^t, wyth
24 theyr sheldes tofore them, and^t theyr swerde^s in theyr
hondes, stode in the wyndowes, and yet they were not
soo hardy emonge them but that they were abasshed,
not wythstondyng^t they had good wylle to defende
28 them. Alway hym that they myght attayne with
stones or other thynges, they soo hurte hym that he
dy^t them nomore hurt ne damage. This doyng^t, thad-
myral cryed : "O my fiendes and subgettis, doo your
32 denoyr to brynge to the eith thys toure ; For yf ye so
do, ye shal haue my loue entyerly. And after I shal

badan humbles
himself before his
gods,
and promises
them gifts. (1965)

He orders batter-
ing-engines to be
brought up
against the tower.
(1970)

Five great
breaches are
made in the wall.
(1977)

Rolland and
Oliver defend the
tower well.
(1971)

Balan threatens his daughter.

¹make Florypes the putayne to deye shamefully in a brennyng fyre, for shie hath wel deserved it, doyng to me the dyshonour that every man knoweth." ¶ After

The Saracens swarm in at the breaches. [5011]

these wordes the paynyme were more feruent than they ⁴ had ben tofore, & surmounted by strengthe, sealed the toure, and mounted vp, and entred in at holes, in suche wyse that the x barons helde not but þ^e last stage that was. Rolland seyng thys, sayd to them:

Roland cheers on the French knights.

"lordes & brethern! in thonour of god our maker, late vs wylt one courage bere vs valyauntly, ellys we shal not passe thys day, but that we shal be surpryzed, taken, and defteated." "Brother & felowe," sayd ¹²

Oliver proposes a sally. [5020]

Olyuer, "we been here of vs x, as longe as it shal please our creatour, & we been al good fyghtars. In the name of God, I cunceyl that we yssue oute for to assayle our enemyes. I had leuer to dye there withoute, ¹⁶ and suffre to be hewen, than to dye here wythin wyth dyshonour." Ogyer the danoys, and the other, sayd semblably. Florypes, seyng thys, was al abasshed, and demandid the barons yf they wold goo out for to ²⁰

Floripa encourages them. [5032]

goo assaylle the paynyme, & sayd to them: "ye noble knyghtes of honour & of good partie, I praye to god that at this tyme yeue you grace to doo wel, And I promyse you ²yf ye put them oute from thys assanlte, I ²⁴ shal shewe to you a thyng wherof ye shal be Ioyeful."

and they drive the Saracens back.

wyth tho wordes³ the barons goo smyte and hewe down the turkes so vygorously, that many of them were dede & hurt whiche were in the holes of the walle, & smote ²⁸ them wyth stoones in the tour, in suche wyse that they were caste in to the dyches and drowned. And anone

and stop up the breaches.

as they had gotten thoo holes, they stopped them & faste enclosed them. and after florypes axed fyrst of naymes ³² due of bauyere, & of Thyerry due of Ardyne, and sayd: "Lordes, on a tyme ye promyset me, and sware, that ye shold not do ony thyng ayenst my wylle. I

¹ i v. col. 2.

² i v. back.

³ orig. thordes.

wyl shewe to you the crowne of Ihesus, & two of the nayles that he was nayled with to the crosse, whyche I haue long kept." The barons heryng thys, wepte for 4 Ioye, & sworen to hyr that they shold do no thyng to hyr, but al loyalte and trouthe. Florypes wente thenne and fette a lytel coffre, moche ryche & fayre, and tofore them she opened it ; & assone as the relyques were taken 8 & vnwounden, there was seen a grete clerenes and a meruaylous resplendysshour.

Floripa brings
out the sacred
relics, 5045.

Thenne the barons kneled down to the erthe, devoutely smytyng^d them self on their brestes by con-
12 tryeyon of hert. Due Naymes ¹of bauyere was the fyrist that kyssed them wyth grete reverence, & the other after, & after came to the wyndowes, For the paynyme were mounted on hye. And assone as they 16 sawe them, they tumbled down to þe grounde, dede, & al to-broken. Whan Naymes sawe that, he sayd : " O lord god of glorie, whyche mayst do al thyng, I thanke the, & gyue to the lawle & praysyng, For now I see 20 wel and knowe that these ben the reliques of whome we haue ofte spoken." And Incontynent he took hardynes and courage, and after sayd to hys felawes : " Brethern, now we be recomforted, so that we shal never fere ne 24 doubte paynyme ne sarasyns." And after, Florypes remyseþ the relyques in the coffret honestly. Thadmyral sawe the prynees at the wyndowes, & hys doughter wyth them ; & he, ful of a fals enteneyon, escryed 28 hyr wyth an hye voys, by cause he wold be vnder- stonden : " O florypes, fayr doughter, I see wel where thou art. A grete fool was thy fader whan he trusted the, & ful of folyssh counceyl was he that put in thy 32 hanle, by the moyen of thy language, the fyrist prysoneers. I haue herle say longe sythe, that a man that trusteth in a woman, of thyng of Importaunce, is a moche fool. but neuertheles thy puterye shal ²not endure

which the knights
kiss with great
reverence. 5052

At the sight of
the reliques the
Saracens fall
down dead from
the walls. 5065.

Balan sees his
daughter at a
window and
abuses and
threatens her.
5083.

¹ i v, back, col. 2.

² i vj.

longe, as I truste, For I swere to the that I shal departe
the loue that thou hast wyth the glotons of Fraunce,
& wythoute pte I shal doo brenne you al." Florypes
herde these wordes, & took a baston in her honde, & 4
made a sygne as though she ha^t menaced hir fader;
wherfore thadmyral, seeyng^t that, began to sowne to
gadre hys peple, and comauanted to shote & lose the
Instrumentes ayenst the toure, in suche wyse that anone 8
a grete partye of the walle was ouerthrownen to therthe.
Thenne the barons doubted moche of them vpon the
walle. And Rolland, Olyuer, and Ogyer went in to a
chambre, where as were Mahon, Appolyn, Termagaunte, 12
& Margotte, goddes of the Paynyme, whyche were
moche ryche. And Rolland took Appolyn whyche
was hevy, and threwe it vpon the Paynyme: Olyuer
lyfte vp termagaunte, & Ogyer Margotte, and smote 16
wyth them the sarasyns, in suche wyse that them that
they attayned dyd them neuer hurte after.

Whan thadmyral sawe thus his goddes vytupered
and throwen, he took suche angre and so grete yre in 20
hys courage, that for sorowe he tombled doun as a dede
man to the erthe. Sortybrant, with moche sorowe, took
hym vp, and many wepte & made grete ¹desolacion for
sorowe. and after thadmyral sayd: "lordes & frendes, 24
he shal euer be my frende & speyal byloued, þat wyl
aduenge the shame that these glotons haue doon to my
goddes." Sortybrant dyd grete Payne to recomforte
hym, sayeng^t that in shiort tyme he shold be auenged 28
on them al, "seen that the toure is broken in moo than
xv partyes." "O Mahon," sayd the admiral, "thou
hast wel forgoten me; at the moost nede thou faylleſt
me: thou arte now so olde that thou doatest. I haue seen 32
the day that þou haddest grete puyssaunce." ¶ Sorty-
brant ansuerd: "Syr, ye haue an euyl custome, whan
ye speke so euyl ayenst Mahon. Ye knowe wel that

Floripa threatens him with a stick.
(5083)

The Saracens make a furious assault and a great part of the wall is broken down. (5101)

The French use the Saracen idols as missiles. (5113)

Balan swoons with rage. (5117)

and again abuses his gods. (5123)

Sortybrant reproves him. (5127)

¹ i.v. col. 2.

there was never borne, ne never shal be, so good a god :
he gyueth vs plente¹ of whete, of wyn, and of other
goodes also ; he shal doo for vs whan he hath bythought
4 hym. he is yet euyl contente for the stroke that ye
smote hym on the nose. Abyde a lytel tyl he be better
aduysed, And the frensshe men shal yelde them vnto
you soo that ye shal holde you pleased." Vpon these

and begs him to have patience.

8 wordes Mahon was broughte tofore hym, And a deuyl
entred in to hym, whyche sayd in thys manere after
that he had adoured hym : "Admyral, ryche lord, ne
dyscomfort you not : do sowne your trumpettes &
12 hornes,² and assemble your peple, & after assayile the
toure ; and at thys tyme ye shal take the Frensshe
men." wyth these wordes thadmyral was al reioyced,
and alle thengynes and Instrumentes he dyd do sette

A false devil,
under the form of
Mahon,

16 ayenst the tour, and threwe stones and maacl grete shotte
ageynst the toure, whyche was thenne al to-broken, and
almoost al ouerthrownen. The peres of Fraunce seyng
thys, had grete doubte of daunger, and not wythout

urges Balan to
renew the
assault,
promising him
success. (5110)

20 cause. Neuertheles, Ogyer the danoys sayd to hys
felawes : "O loyal compayonis, replenysshed of fy-
delyte, For ony payne or doubte of deth emonge vs, late
none be founde wyth ony treason, ne suffre to entre in

Balan is delighted,
and orders his
men up again.
(5117)

24 to hym ony euyl thought of Infydelyte and cowardyse.
ye see now þat the tour gooth to grounde, And almoost
these sarasyns be meddel wyth vs. But as touchyng
to me, I swere by god my maker, that tofore my soule
28 shal departe fro my body, yf I haue the puyssance to
holde in my hande Cortayn my swerde, I shal make so
grete a dyscomfyture of these paynynms, that euery man
shal meruaylle." With these wordes Rolland byhelde

The French are
almost in despair,

32 durandal ; and Olyuer, with eueryche of the other, by-
helde theyr swerdes, & were alle renewed wyth strengthe
and courage. And al wyth one wylle goon vpon the
3 sarasyns, and there dyd suche dylgence, that alle-

but are comforted
by Ogier. (5171)

and they drive
the Saracens
back again.
(5189)

¹ orig. pleute. ² i. vj. back. ³ i. vj. back, col. 2.

waye they were lordes of the toure, & made the sara-
syns theyr enemyes to goo abacke. Florypes, consyder-
yng^t theyr assayre, was sorowful that no socours com to
hem, and also remembryng^t the menaces of hyr fader 4
hadmyrall. But Guye of bourgoyn recomforted^t hyr
alwaye, in suche wyse, that of al shē was contente.

¶ How the peres of Fraunce had' tydynge
of^t thoost of charles, and' the admiral also ; 8
and' how Ganellon bare hym merueyllously,
which allone was sente to the admiral, and'
what he dyd' : capitulo x[i]

THe Frenshe men beyng^t in thy contynuel payn 12
of bataylle for to defende þ^r toure, Due Naymes of
bauyere went vp on hye, and sawe oute of a wyndowe,
& sawe bynethe in a valeye the sygne of saynt denys,
whyche was brought hastely, & after, a grete companye 16
of men of armes : And thought in hym self that they
came for to socour and ayde them. and anone sent
for hys felawes for to come & see them. Assone as
Florypes vnderstood^t it, shē came to Guy of bourgoyn,
sayeng: "O gloriouſ² vyrgyn marie, moler of Ihesus,
worshypped^t mote ye be for these tydyngeſ that I haue
herde ! O noble knyght, guye of bourgoyn, my dere
lone, approche ye to me yf it playſe you, and kyſſe 24
me." Of the Ioye of Florypes, were Ioyeful the erles
and lordes, ye may thynke that they were wel com-
forted whan they sawe the ſtandard of fraunce, wherin
was the dragon wel fygured. Grete Ioye and grete 28
consolacion was emonge them, & they had^t cauſe, ſeen
the daunger wherin they were. Anone a paynym cam
to thadmyral, & ſayd^t to hym, that Charles wyth an
hondred thouſand men of armes came makyng^t grete 32
bruyt. The kynge Coldroe councayled^t anone that

¹ orig. yf.

² i viij.

Naymes from a
window ſees
Charles and his
army coming.
(5207)

Floripas thanks
God for the news,
(5223)

and they all
rejoice.

A messenger
tells Balan that
the French army
is coming. (5231)

euer man shold be armed, and that they sholl goo
mete wthy hym at the fyrist poynte. Hys cuncelyl
was approued by thadmyral and by thother. Wher-

4 fore anone L thousand turkes were assembled in He sends 50,000
men to meet
them.
grete poynte for to kepe the grete vale of Josue, to
thende that he myght not come in to Aygremore.

Rolland sawe Rycharde of Normandye wthy hys con-
8 fanon reyset vp, whyche came al afore: and alle
taryed in a medowe for to bayte and refresshe theyr
horses, and to tarye there al the nyght, whyche was
nyghe. And wythoute makynge lodgyses or other
12 thynges, they ¹there rested them al nyght, For theyr
tentes were lefte at mantryble. On the morne erly, the
Emperour dyd do arme his peple, & sette them in good
araye, and in grete poynte, And after sente for Fyera-

16 bras, and sayd to hym: "Ryght dere frende, thou
knowest that I hane doo the be baptysed, wherfore I
loue the the better. yf thou myȝtest pourehaee and
make that thy fadre be baptysed, and renye Mahon

20 and al hys dyabolike goddes, I shold be wel glad and
Ioyous. And I promyse to the, that of al hys goodes
I shal not take a peny. And yf he wyl not so do, I
promyse that by force I shal fyght ayenst hym; & yf

24 he take harme, wyte it not me, ne conne me noo maulgret,
for I may not lette it." "Syr Emperour," sayd Fyera-
bras, "take a messager, and late hym demaunde hym,
yf he wyl soo doo as ye say, and I shal be content.

28 For yf he gaynsaye it I shal never praye for hym, ne
hane pyte of hym, though I see hym hewen and deye."
Hereupon charles demandide Reyner and ryehard of
Normandye, whyche were his nexte cunneyllours, and

32 sayd to them: "Lordes, whome seme you moost pro-
pyee for to sende on thys message to the Admyrall?
By myn aduys, ganellon shold be good therfore, yf he
wold, for to recounte & speke hooly thys ²message. I

The French
bivouac for the
night. (5251)

In the morning
Charles tells
Fierabras that if
Balan will be
baptised he shall
keep all his
kingdom. (5263)

Fierabras advises
Charles to send a
messenger to his
father. (5275)

charles proposes
to send Ganelon.
(5283)

¹ i vij, col. 2.

² i vij, back.

Richard approves
of this,

and Charles sends
for Ganelon

and gives him
his instructions.
(5291)

Ganelon arms
himself,
and starts. (5307)

He rides up to
Balan's tent,
(5322)

and delivers his
message to the
Sultan. (5325)

knowe hym for wel suffysaunt, & ye knowe wel that he dyd wel hys deuoyr at the entre of mantryble. yf ye wyl conseute, he shal doo the message." Rycharde answerde, and Reyner also, that he shold doo wel the 4 message. The kyng sente for ganellon, and sayd to hym : " My frende, we haue chosen you for to goo say to thadmyral Ballant that he be baptysed & renye malion, & that he take Ihesu Cryste for hys god, & 8 that he bylene in hym, & in hys passyon that he suf-fred for al humayn creatures ; & after, that he yelde to me my barons, whyche he holdeth in hys pryon, & also the relyques that longe tyme I haue demaunded of 12 hym. & yf he wyl do this, we shal leue to hym hys contreye & hys landes : & yf he wyl do otherwyse, we shal make to hym mortal warre, and shal take of hym no mercy." Ganellon was contente for to goo thyder 16 allone, And took & sette on his helme, & mounted vpon his hors, named gaseon, and henge on hys necke his shidle, wherein was paynted the lyon, & after went in to the vale of Iosne hastely. and anone he was 20 taken of the turkes that kept the passage ; but whan they knewe that he was a messenger for to speke to thadmyral, they troubled hym not, but lete hym goo, & he taryed¹ not tyl that he came tofore thabytaeyon of 24 thadmyral, & he lente vpon his spere with a knyghtly countenaunce, & moche resembled a baron of grete value, for to say wel hys message. whan thadmyral knewe of his eomyng, he came to hym, And thenne 28 Ganellon spake hardyly to hym in this manere : " Sarasyn, take hede & vnderstonde me : I am a messenger of the noble charles, kyng of fraunce & ryght myghty Emperour, & he sendeth the worde by me, that thou 32 renye and forsake Mahon & thyn other goddes dyabolyke, & bylene in Ihesu cryst, the redemptour of al the worlde, whyche took on hym humanyte, and suffred

¹ i viij. back, col. 2.

deth, eruel & bytter, in the tree of the¹ crosse, for
to redeeme al the wro^k. & yf thou so do, thou art
assured not onely [not] to deye, & also not to lese thy
4 londe, ne none of thy good, but thou shal alwaye be
byloued of hym, & of Fyerabras thy sone. and yf thou
wylt not accorde herto, & withstande it, knowe for cer-
tayn, that of Charles thou art deffyed, & al thy people.

calling on him to
become Christian
on pain of death.
(5357)

8 & yf thou wylt sau^e thy self, thynke to flee and wyth-
drawe the fro thys contreye; For yf thou may be taken
and holden, thou shalt be delyuered to daungerous deth,
and alle thy subgettes shal be dysmembred & slain,

12 & after, he shal gyue thy royme and thy rychesse to
his² seruauntes. Therfore aduyse the wel." Whan thad-
myral had herde hym, he was almoost in a rage of hys
wordes, and by destresse of angre he took a stafie for

Balan, in a rage,
threatens him
with a stick.
(5343)

16 to smyte the messenger, and sayd to hym: "Gloton
payllard! thou art dysmesured in thy langage. by
mahon, to whome I am yeuen, at thys tyme thou hast
be ouer hardy, & lytel loued the Charles, whan he sente

20 the to me. For thou shalt be wel sure that thou shalt
neuer recomte to hym thy message." Ganellon, seyng^t
that he was not wel sure wyth them, he took hys
swerde, whyche was heuy & sharpe, & gaf wythal a
24 stroke to brullant of mommyere in the breste, that he
ouerthrewe & fyl at the feet of the admiral, whyche
seyng that, escryed moche strongely tauenge hym.

Ganelon draws
his sword and
cuts down
Brullant. (5353)

Thenne wyth thys voys assembled moo than fyfty
28 thousand turkes, for to take Ganellon, whyche ranne
after hym thurgh the vale of Iosue; but he escaped
them al, and was not taken. Due Naymes was at a
wyndowe, and sawe hym chased, & demaunded Rolland

Balan calls on
his men to seize
Ganelon.

but he rides off
and escapes.
(5369)

32 & Olyner what he was; & they knewe for certayn that
he was crysten, and by presumyngt made emonge them
they Iudged^t that it was Ganellon that had spoken to
thadmyral. ¶ "Alas!" sayd Rolland, "I praye to

The knights in
the tower
recognize him.
(5371)

¹ orig. ithe.

² i viij.

Ihesus our redemour that he graunte ¹ hym grace to
passe wel without daunger. I shal be euyl content yf
he come not to his good^t desyre." ¶ The other barons
sayden semblably, & prayed god to kepe hym fro peryl. 4

Ganelon turns on
his pursuers,

Ganelon ran alwaye forth tyl he came to the toppe of
a montayne, and there he torned hym ayenst the

Paynyme, & sawe comyng to hym a grete paynym of

the cyte of Aygremore. and anone he took hys swerde 8

named murgall, moche trenchaunte, & atteyned the

paynym vpon the helme, and clefte hym to the breste:

And after, he slewe Tenebre, whyche was broder of

kyng^t Sortybrant. Olyuer sawe al hysfeat, and sayd 12

to Rolland: "Brother, beholde the valyaunce that thys

baron dooth; I praye god that he conserne hym. And

wete ye wel that in my hert I loue hym. Sane you &

charles, I loue none better. Now wold god that I 16

were in hys compayne, I shold make grete marterdom

on these Paynyme." Neuertheles he was strongly

chaced of the paynyme. But whan they sawe the

hoost of Charles, they returned aback, and wente & 20

tolde the assayre to thadmyral, & how Charles had moo

than an hondred thousand fyghtyng men. wherfore

they couencyled that every man shold arme hym, &

that couneyl was approued. but whan sortybrant 24

²knewe that hys broder was dede, he made to come an

Innumerable compayne of sarasyns, tauenge his deth in

menaeyng to do harm to Charles. Of hys entencyon

was moche glad thadmyral, bycause he myght the better 28

come to hys desyre.

¶ How Charles emperour ordyned' ten
bataylles, and how they dyd' & were
recountred' of the puyssance of the 32
admyral, where as themperour dyd' mer-
uaylles, and' of other maters: capitulo xij

¹ i viij, col. 2.

² i viij, back.

and slays two of
them. (5385)

Oliver sees this
feat,

and wishes he
were with him.
(5395)

The Saracens
Pursue Ganelon

till they see the
army of Charles,

WHAN Ganellon was comen to kyng^t Charles, themperour ordyned x bataylles after that

4 Ganellon haſt tolde hys message, whyche was suche :

“ Syr emperour, I say to you that thadmyral ne fereth you ne your dedes, neyther god ne hys sayntes. I was wel happy that I escape^d, For I haue been chace^d

Ganelon reports
the result of the
message to
Charles, (5439)

8 wyth xx thousand sarasyns, after that thadmyral wold haue had me, & after these wordes, I slew one of theyr kynges.” wherfore he was praysed of the kyng & other.

And anone they sowned^d hornes and trumpettes, & was

12 open warre on alle partes in thoost of Charles. Roland herde the sowne, and the voys of ¹the frensshie hoost, wheroft he and al the barons were al reioyced & made good^d chyere. whan the ij hostes recounted, al

who divides his
army into 10
divisions, and
prepares for
battle. (5453)

16 the contrey shone of theyr armes, ther were so many of them. after, as I haue sayd tofore, kyng charles made ten bataylles : In the fyrist, he ordyned^d Rychar^d of Normandye ; Due Reyner of genes haſt the second,

Richard leads the
vanguard, (5455)

20 Ganellon the thyr^d, Alory the fourth, Geffroy the fyfthe, Machayre the vj, Hardre the seventh, Amangius the viij, Sampson the ix, And^d of the tenth was con- duytour charles the kyng^t. & in eche bataylle were x

and Charles
himself the rear.
(5457)

24 thousan^d men of armes wel fyghtyng atte leste. Whan

Ballant the admyral sawe the kyng^t comyng^t, he sayd to brullant, “ who shal be the fyrist that shal entre in to bataylle with an hondre^d thousan^d paynynms ; ”

Balan bids
Brulliant to attack
the French first
with 100,000 men.
(5459)

28 & sayd that yf he took t'charles, he shold not slee them ne fyerabras, for he wold after smyte of theyr heedes, & vpon thys poynte the warre was open, & Brullant began to goo a grete bowedraught tofore the other, and

Bruillant rides out
and challenges
Charles. (5471)

32 began to crye “ haro ! haro ! where is charles themperour wyth his euyl chere ? loo ! I come to the ! thou hast enterpryseg^d a grete folye whan thou passeth the see, & ouer late thou shalt repente the. On thys day

¹ i viij. back, col. 2.

shal be the ende of thy lyf and of thy subgettes lyf.
And ¹wythoute faulte thou shalte be yolden to thadmyral, & alle thy contreye shal be destroyed." Themperour herde wel these wordes ; wherfore alle in a furye ⁴
he lete renne hys hors, & came ageynst the paynym, &
attayned hym in suche wyse that hys harnoys brake,
and after, he drewe hys swerde, and neuer lefte hym
tyl he was dede. fro thens with his spere he came to a ⁸
turke kynge of pyetrelee, and smote hym in the breste
that he fyl deed to the erthe. and whan his spere was
broken, he dyd grete deuoyr with Ioyouse hys swerd ;
for hym that he attayned, dyd neuer hurte after. At ¹²
that tyme he bare hym meruaylously, that one of the
hoostes medell eche wyth other in suche wyse that
there was nener seen warre so mortal, for they that
were lyuyng were lette by them that were dede. ¹⁶
Thenne emonge the paynmys there was a turke, named
Tenebres, which cam makyng grete bruyt vpon the
frensshe men, and attayned fyrist the noble Iehan of
pountayse vpon his shelde, and brake it in pyees, & ²⁰
smote hym thurgh the body that he fyl deed to the
erthe ; and after drewe hys swerde, & put to deth
huon, and guernyer thanneyen, and after sayd to the
frensshe men that on that day Charles and hys sub- ²⁴
gettes had loste theyr myght. Rychard of ²Normandye
had despyte of hys wordes, & came ageynste hym, &
attayned hym so daungerously that he brake his haw-
berke, and brake his shidle in quarters, & so smote ²⁸
hym, that he fyl doun deed wythout ony more reproach-
yng & sayeng enyl wordes. & after, by force of
strengthe they passed the vale of Iosue, & came and
fonde thadmyral wyth alle hys puyssance, whyche ³²
was accompanied wyth iiiij kynges crowned, & wyth
an CM fyghtyng men, as wel a horsback as a fote.
Anone a messenger came to the admiral, & tolde hym

¹ k. j.² k. j. col. 2.

Charles charges
at him,

and stays him,
5485,

and afterwards
many more of the
Saracens. (5196)

Tenebres, a
Saracen king,
makes great
havoc amongst
the French,
(5523)

but is himself
slain by Richard.

The French force
the pass,
and approach
Balan's division.
(5563)

how brullant his brother was dede, and many in hys companye. Thenne he sente for tempest, hys neuewe, & for Sortybrant of conymbres, his moost specyal 4 frendes, & said to them : “ My barons and trewe frendes, yf euer ye haue loued me, & haue entencion to do me playsyr, Doo so moche that ye fynde charles the kyngt. For I wyl goo to hym, and haue concluded[¶] 8 in my self to fyght in my persone ayenst hys persone ; & sythe I shal deye ones, it suffyseth me that I myght slee hym, & thenne shal I be contente to deye, yf I deye after. For I retche not yf I aduenge me or I 12 deye.” Sortybrant & many other, consyderyng^t thastate of thadmyral, bygomen to wepe for pyte in comfortyng^t hym.

Balan determines
to seek out and
engage Charles in
single combat.

[¶] ¶ How in thys bataylle folowyng^t, Sortybrant 16 was slayne by Reyner, fader of Olyuer, and after how thadmyral dyd^t meruaylles and^t grete ennoye to the frensshe men : capitulo xijj

20 **B**allant thadmyral rode vpon an hors, the beste remnyng of alle the contreye, ryght wel armes^t, and it was blacke as a more, & hym self was grete of body, well membrede^t, & had^t hys berde hangyng^t to 24 the sadel, whyche was whyte as snowe. & after dyd do sowne hys trumpettes & hornes tassemble his hoost, & made the archers to goo byfore, whyche coude wel shote wyth bowes turquoys, & al furiously that one ayenst 28 the other goo shote, and make mortal warre, so that the shotte flewe in thayer thycker than hayl. So moche people was there slayn that the wayes were empesshed & lette by dede bodyes. The Duke Reyner passed^t 32 thurgh forth, & the fyrst that he encountered was kyng Sortybrant, & gaf to hym a grete stroke with- out faynyng, that hys shidle auaylle^t hym not ; hys

A general engage-
ment ensues,

and the slaughter
is immense.
(5516)

Reyner attacks
and slays
Sortybrant.

^t k. j. back.

hauberk al to-brake, so that he made his spere to plunge
and bayne in hys body soo depe, that he abode there
deed^l lyke a beast ; & after, wyth hys swerde made so
grete murdre & slaughter of the fals turkes, þat it was 4

Balan grieves
over the death of
Sortybrant.

¹meruaylle. Anone the admiral knewe the deth of
Sortybrant, wheroft he was almoost oute of hys wytte
in a rage, and sythe sayd^t: “O Sortybrant, my special
frende, I see wel now that I shal be auenged yf I 8

He charges into
the French,

venge not thy deth.” with thyse wordes he maad^l his
hors to renne vpon þe frensshi men so despytously that
whome he attayned he put to deth, and came to huon 12

and slays Huon of
Milan and 20
others. (5571)

of myllan, & slewe hym. thenne he dyd^l grete dom-
age, and fought that tyme so strengely, that he put to
deth wel seuen frensshe men & xiiij Normans moehe
valyantly, sayeng^t: ¶ “O ye vnhappy frensshe men, I 16

shal now make you knowe that thadmyral of spayne is
comen. in this day shal thoost of fraunce be destroyed,
& shal neuer repayre home ageyn in to fraunce. I 20

shal lede awaye with me the kynge Charles with his
florished herd, & I shal do hange or brenne hym, &
also with hym, Rolland & Olyuer, & their felowes.” &
with these wordes the paynems enhardyed^l them in
suche wyse þat they dyd^l gretely theyr deuoyr ayenst 24

Ganelon and his
friends make
great slaughter of
the Saracens.

the frensshe men. At this medle the counte ganellon, 24
haldre, alory, & geffroy daulteuyle, & þat lygnage, dyd^l
gretely theyr deuoyr and bare them wel. For in a shorte
space by them were slayn moo than a M paynyms.

Thadmyral, moost valyaunt of the sarasyns, ²attayned^l 28
the counte myllon by hys helme, that almoost he had
abyden in the place, and with a stroke thadmyral smote
of hys hors hede that he fyl to the erthe. and after he

Milo's horse is
killed by Balan,

took hym, & layed^l hym tofore hym, for to haue born 32
hym awaye, but the lygnage of ganellon saueld^l hym,
notwythistondyng^t that many of theym were slain and
dede. Neuertheles the frensshe men surmounted the

but he is rescued
by Ganelon.

¹ k j, back, col. 2.

² k ij.

paynyme, and that was by the ayde of fyerabras, which for loue of Charles dyd fyght, and made grete dyscomfyture of the sarasyns. for there he put to deth
4 Tempeste, and the olde Rubyon, and mo than fyfty other of these mastyns mysereantes. & he there bare hym in suche wyse that there was not one persone that durst come tofore hym to resyste hym.

Fierbras slays more than 50 Saracens.

8 ¶ How the peres of Fraunce whyche were in the toure came oute whan they sawe the hoost, & how thadmyral was taken & holden prysoner : capitulo xiiij

12 THe paynyme & frensshe men, alwaye perseuerynge in mortal bataylle, coude not make thende, eche one of other, For the multytude of the paynyme was so grete that they myȝt not be dyscomfyted.

16 Whan ¹the barons that weie in the tour sawe the fayt, & that they that kepte the toure were goon to the socours and crye of thadmyral, they sprange out, & eche took an hors of them þat were dede, which ranne at al

The French knights, seeing the battle, sally out, and seizing each a stray horse, (553)

20 aduenture ; and eche also took his swerde in his hond, & sodeynly cam vpon the sarasyns for to passe thurgh them to the frensshe hoost, & made so grete bruyt that the moost hardyest of the paynyme gaf them waye, &

charge the Saracens, and force their way through them, (554)

24 lete them passe, and in especyal rolland, for where he smote with durandal, cam neuer after tofore hym. & at thyss departyng was derly recomandé guy of bourgoyn of florypes, for she had fere of hym. Neuertheles, whan

scattering them like larks before the hawk, (555)

28 they were assembled wyth the other, wythoute letyng them to be knownen, went vpon the sarasyns, & helde them soo short that anone they slew them in suche wyse þat the other put them to flyght : for there was neuer

32 larke fledde more ferfully tofore þe sperhawke than the sarasyns fledde tofore rolland. Thadmyral knewe wel

¹ k ij, col. 2.

hys destryuyn by the comyng¹ of the peres that were
in þe toure, & cryed wyth an h[ye] voys : “ mahon, my
god, to whome I haue gyuen my self, and haue doon to
so moche honour, thou hast forgoten¹ me ! Remembre 4

with threats.

He is unhorsed
and taken
prisoner, (5647)

me now ! ¶ For and euer I may gete the, I shal bete the
bothe flankes,² hede & vysage, and also put out thyn eyen,
fals recreauant goþ that thou art.” he thus sayeng, he
was so pursyewel and smyton that he fyl doun vnder 8
his hors, and was taken, and not slayn, at the request of
hys sone fyerabras, to thende that he shold be aduyseg³
to byleue in Ilhesu cryst, & in the holy Trynyte, &
byecome crysten, & al his contreye. Thenne the bataylle 12
took an ende ; and he that wold not be conuerted was
incontynent put to deth. Somme fledde, and somme
were taken. Thenne after thys the Frensshe men
wente & vnarmed them, & Charles sawe there hys 16
barons whom he desyred so moche to see, & in especial
his neuew rolland, & Olyuer, whom he loued so moche,
& were so gretly valyaunt. It can not be sayd no
expressed¹ the Ioye that was emonge them ; & the con- 20
solacyon & reioyeyng¹ of kyng charles was Inestymable.
Thenne they recounted alle thynges what were happend¹
to them, & of theyr daungers and leopardyes whiche
they had escaped¹, & sorowes & lamentacions that they 24
had endured¹, wherfore Charles and many other wept for
pyte. And thys endured¹ many dayes, there where as
the hurt men & seek were heeled¹, & they that were
hole passed theyr tyme in deduyte, tryumphe, and 28
Ioye.

The army rests
some days to
recruit their
strength.

³¶ How ballant, thadmyrall, for ony admoney-
cyon that was shewed' to hym, wold not
be baptysed, and how after, guy of bour- 32
godyn espoused florypes, & was crowned

¹ orig. forygoten. ² k ij, back. ³ k ij, back, col. 2.

kyng, and she quene of that contreye :
capitulo

xv

W han charles had al appeased, he took ballant
4 the admyral tofore hys noblesse, & sayd to Charles sends for
hym in this maner: "ballant, al creatures
resonable owen to gyue synguler honour & pertyculer
loue to hym that hath gyuen to them beyng, knowleche,
8 & lyf, & it is wel requesyte & nedeful that he haue
honour and reuerence that hath made heuen and erthe,
& al that therein enhabyteth. Wherfore by good ryght
he is superyour and abouen al; And a grete abusyon
12 is compryse^d in hym which gyueth fayth and hope
in that whyche he hath made wylt hys hondes, & of
mater dede, Insensyble, and that hath neyther reson
ne soule, as thy goddes dyabolyke, whyche may not
16 ne can gyue consolacyon to theyr subgettes. Wher-
fore I warne the for the helthe of thy soule, and for the
preseruyng^t of thy body & of thy goodes, that thou
take awaye alle these Iniquytees and peruerse affectyons,
20 & byleue in the holy Trynyte, fader, sone, ¹and holy
ghoost, one onely god almyghty; and byleue that the
sone of god, for to repayre thoffence of our formest fader
adam, descended^d in to thys world, and took humanyte
24 in the wombe of the blessed vyrgyn marie, whyche was
al pure and wythoute spotte. And bylene in the
artycles of the fayth, and obeye and kepe hys comande-
mentes, which he hath gynen to vs for our helth. and
and the articles of
the Christian
faith.

28 byleue how he was taken of the Iewes, and by enuy
hanged^d on the crosse for to redeme vs fro the paynes
of helle. Bylene hys resurrexyon and asceneyon in hys
body gloryfyed, and the other thynges, as the holy
32 baptesme whyche he hath establisshed, wyth the other
sacramentes. & yf thou wylt thus bylene thou shalst
be saued, & thou shalst neyther lose body ne goodes."

He recounts
Christ's crucifix-
ion, resurrection,
and ascension,
and says that if
he will be con-
verted, nothing
shall be taken
from him. (5722)

Balan: swears he
will never forsake
Mahon. (5749)

Charles threatens
him with death.
(5756)

Fierabras inter-
cedes for his
father, who
agrees to be
baptised. (5783)

The font is pre-
pared. (5789)

but Balan spits in
it, and nearly
kills the bishop.
(5809)

who is saved by
Ogier.

Fierabras again
intercedes for
Balan. (5813)

but Floripes urges
Charles to put
him to death at
once. (5819)

Thadmyral answerd that he wold no thynge do so, and sware that for deth ne for lyf he wold not leue Mahon. Thumperour holdyng a naked swerd, sayd to hym, that yf he forsoke not Mahon he shold do put 4 hym to deth. Fyerabras, seyng thys, kneled down to dherthe, & prayed hys fader to do as the emperor had sayd. Thadmyral fered the deth, & sayd that he was contente that the fonte shold be blessed. Charles was 8 glad, and dyd do make redy a fonte wyth ¹fayr water in a fayr vessel; and the bysshop wyth other mynystres of the chyrehe dyd halowe the fonte, and made alle redy. & after, whan thadmyral was vneladde, the bysshop 12 demaunded hym, sayeng: "Syr ballant, forsake ye mahon, and crye ye mercy to god of heuen for your trespasses? and bylene ye in Ihesu cryst, the sone of the vyrgyn marye?" whan thadmyral vnderstode these 16 wordes, al hys body began to tremble. than, in despyte of Ihesus, he spytte in the fonte, and caught the bysshoop, & wold haue drowned hym in the fonte, and had plonged hym therin, ne had not Ogyer haue been, 20 whyche letted hym, & yet notwythstondyng, he gaf a grete stroke to thadmyral, that the blood came oute of hys mouthe habondantly. Of thys were al abasshed that were present; and themne the kyng sayd to 24 Fyerabras: "ye be my speyal frende, Ye see that your fader wyl neuer be crystened, And also the outrage that he hath doon to the fonte, it can not be excused but that he must be dede and dysmembred."

28

¶ Fyerabras requyred hym yet of a lytel paycenee, and yf he wold not amende hym, that themne he shold doo hys wylle.

¶ Florypes, the daughter of the Admyrall, seyng 32 thys, sayd:

¶ "O Syr Emperour, wherfore ²delaye ye so moche to put thys deuyl to deth? I retche not though

¹ k iij, col. 2.

² k iij, back.

he be put to deth, so that I onely may haue guye
of bourgoyne to myn husbond^l, whom I haue so moche
desyred." Fyerabras answerd: "fayr suster, ye haue
4 grete wronge. For I ensure you, and swere by god
whiche hath made me, that I wold that I had lost
two of my membres, on the condycyon that he were a
8 good cristen man, & were baptysed^l and blyeuend^l in
Ihesu Cryst. ye wote wel that he is our fader whiche
hath engendred^l vs; we ought to honour hym, and to
loue hys helth. ye are wel obstynat whan ye haue of
hym noo pyte." And after in wepyng^t sayd to his
12 fader: "O moost dyer fader, I praye you to be better
aduyised, and blyeu in hym that hath fourmed^l you
to hys ymage, whyche is Ihesus, god souerayn, lyke as
themperour hath sayd^t; and leue mahon, which hath
16 neither wytte ne reason, ne noo thyng^t is but gold &
stones, wheroft he is composed. yf ye thus do, ye shal
do to vs grete Ioye, & of your enemyes ye shal make
frendes."

Fierabras re.
proves her for her
unfilial conduct,
(5823)

20 Ballant ansuerd: "fool & glouton that thou art,
speke nomore to me therof, thou art al oute of reson!
I shal neuer blyeu in hym that deyed V. C. yere a-goon,
& aeursed be he that putteth in hys blyeu that he is
24 arysen fro deth ¹to lyf. by mahon, my god, yf I were
on my hors back, or I were taken, I shold angre charles,
that fool." whan fyerabras had al vnderstonden hym,
he said to charles that he shold do wyth hym hys
28 playsyr, "For by good^l ryght he ought to deye." Anon
themperour demanded who wold^l slee ballant, the vn-
mesurable felon. Thenne Ogier was present which
hated hym in his hert, & forthwyth he smote of hys
32 heed^l, & Fyerabras pardonne^d hym gladly. Thenne
after this, florypes sayd to Rolland^l that he shold
accomplysshe his promesses by-twene hyr and guy of
bourgoyn. rolland ansuerd: "ye say trouth," and

and implores his
father to consent
to be a Christian.
(5823)

Balan calls him a
fool, and declares
he will never do
so. (5843)

Charles asks who
will kill the
Sowdan. (5859)

Ogier volunteers,
and smites off his
head. (5863)

¹ k iij, back, col. 2.

Roland reminds
Guy of his promise
to marry Floripas.
(5871)

Guy says he is
quite ready. (5875)

Floripas is
stripped to be
baptised. (5879)

All are struck by
her exceeding
beauty,

and especially
Charles. (5889)

She is baptised,

But her name is
not changed.
Guy and Floripas
are married,

and crowned king
and queen of
Spain. (5905)

after sayd to guye: ¶ “Syr, ye remembre wel what wordes and loue hath been bytwene you & the curtoys Florypes: kepe your trouth and promesse to hyr.” Guy answerēt that he was redy to do al that 4 themperour wold haue hym to doo. Charles was contente. Thenne anone afore theym alle shie was despoyleēt, and vuelad hyr for to be baptysed. She beyng there al naked, shewedēt hyr beante, whyche was 8 ryght whyte and wel formeēt, so playsaunt and amerouse for the formosyte of hyr persone, that euery man merueyldēt. ¶ For she hadēt hyr eyen as clere as two sterres, a fayre forhede and large, hyr nose ryght wel 12 stondyng in ¹the myddes of the vysage; hyr chekes were reed & whyt meddeēt, hyr browes compaceēt as it hadēt been a lytel shadowe to the colour of the vysage; hyr heyr shynnyng as golde, & that in soo good an ordre 16 accymyld that it henge bynethe hyr ²knees; hyr mouth was wel composed with an attemperat roundenes, a smal longe necke, and hyr sholdres fayr & wel sytting, & ij pappes tofore, smale, rounde, & somewhat enhaunceēt 20 lyke ij rounde apples. Andēt so wel was shie made, and so amerouse, that shie smote the hertes of many, andēt enflammedēt theyr enteneyon wyth concupyscence, andēt specyally of charles the Emperour, how wel that he was 24 ameyen & olde; and in the fonte whyche was ordeyneēt for the Admyral hyr fader, shie was baptysed. Andēt charles & Due thyery of ardayne were her godfaders, wythout chaunchyng hyr name. Andēt anone after, whan 28 shie was honourably cladde, the bysshop weddeēt them, & after, themperour comanded to brynge forth the crowne of ballant, andēt crownedēt wyth-al guy of bourgoyn andēt Florypes. Andēt the bysshop sacred and blessed them. 32 And so tho said guy was kyng of that contreye, & gaf a partie to Fyerabras, by condyeion, that yf Fyerabras wold haue it, he sholdēt holde it of guye, andēt all ³that

¹ k iiiij.

² orig. kuees.

³ k iiiij, col. 2.

¹euer guye shold haue, he shold holde it of charles.

After thys, the feest of the wedlyng^a and espousaylles The wedding festivities last 8 days. (5913)

endure^b viij dayes. And charles abode there two 4 monethes and two dayes, tyl that the contreye was wel assured.

¶ How Florypes delyuerd the reliques to
themperour, and how they were proued'
8 by myracle, & of the retournyng' of
Charles, and of the ende of thys book.
[capitulo xv]

12 **C**harles dyd suche dylygence in aygremore and in
the contreye adiacent, that he that wold not be
baptysed was put to deth, and so serched oueral.
And on a sonday after masse he sente for florypes, and
sayd to hiyr: "fayr daughter, ye knowe how I haue
16 crowne^c you and maad^d you quene of thys contree. I haue
accompllysshed^e your desyre as to guye of bourgoyn,
your husband^f, And more ouer ye be baptysed, and in
waye of sauacyon, and ye haue one of the valyauntest
20 body that is from hens in to Affryque. ¶ And he
and fyerabras your broder shal haue thys regyon, And
I shal lene with hym xx M of my subgetes, to the
ende that the paynyme^g be alwaye in drede; but ye
24 haue not yet shewed ²to me nothyng^h of the holy
relyques that ye kepe." Florypes answerd: "Syr
emperour, they shal be redy whan it pleseth you," and
thenne she brought forth the chest in whyche they were
28 honestly.

¶ Themperour kneled down on bothe his knees, and
enclyned bothe wyth hert & body, and bad the bysshop
to opene it, & shewe them, and so he dyd. And fyrst
32 he shewed the preeuous crowne with whyche Ihesu
Cryst was crowneⁱ wyth, whyche was of prycykynge

Charles reminds Floripas of all he had done for her, (5923)

and calls on her to produce the sacred reliques. (5931)

Floripas brings him the coffer containing them, (5936)

which Turpin reverently opens.

^a orig. ener.

^b k iiii, back.

The bishop takes
out the holy
crown of thorns,
(5950)

which remains
unsupported in
the air,

emitting a delight-
ful odour. (5951)

The other reliques
are proved in the
same way.

Charles thanks
God for his
mercies to him.

Turpin blesses the
army with reliques,
and replaces them
in the coffer.

Charles's glove, in
which is a small
piece of relique,

thornes & of Ionques of the see, and wylt grete deuocyon it was shewyd & adouored. And many there wepte & wayled the deth of our lord Ihesu Cryst, and were in grete deuocyon & contemplacyon. The bysshop, 4 which was deuoute & wyse, wold preue it, And lyfte it vp on hys in the ayer, & wythdrew hys hond, and the crowne abode by itself in the ayer. & thenne the bysshop certefyed to the ¹peple that was present, that 8 it was the crowne of Ihesu cryst, which he had on his hede in the tyme of his passyon. Thenne euery man honourede it deuoutely; & it had so grete an odour that eueryche meruaylled. and after, the bysshop took 12 the naylles by whyche god had hys handes² & feet perced, and preued them as he had proued the crowne tofore, and semblably they abode ³in the ayer myraeuously. And Charles, seyng⁴ al this, thanked humbly 16 God in sayeng⁵: ¶ “ O lord god eternal, whyche hast gyuen to me gracie that I hane surmounted myn enemyes Infydelis, and hast put & sette me in the waye, and gyuen conduyte to fynde your relyques whyche I 20 hane so longe desyred, I humbly rendre and gyue to you thankes and praynges. For now my contrey may wel say that it shal be perpetuel honour to hit to possede and hane thys precious tresour, whan it shal be 24 conteyned therin.” The bysshop blesseyd alle the people there in makyng⁶ the sygne of the crosse with the said reliques, & after he sette them deuoutely agyn in their places. And the emperour dyd do sette them 28 on a ryche cloth of golde deuoutely. And whan they were theron, the remenaunt that abode of them as smale pycces, he took them deuoutely and put them in hys gloue; and after, he beyng⁷ in purpos to retorne in to 32 hys contreye, he thrawe the gloue to a knyght, but the knyght took none hede & took it not; & whan Charles was a litel withdrawen he took hede of hys gloue, &

¹ orig. peyle. ² orig. handes. ³ k iij, back, col. 2.

retorne^d and sawe hys glone,—in whyche the said smale
pyeess of the sayd relyques were,—abode hangyng in
thayer without susteynyng of ony thyng. Thenne

remains miracu-
lously suspended
in the air

4 ¹was this myracle seen eydently, and al thys was
shewed to the peple, For it abode in that maner whyles
they myght haue goon half a leghe. And by this they
were al reconfermed to say that there was none abusyon
8 in byleuyng & adouryng the sayd relyques. And these
thynges tofore writon in this second book ben vnder-
stonden in the best partie & sygnifacacion that I can
or wold^t say, And I haue not sayd ony thyng but that
12 I haue been wel enformed by writyng. And as for the
book ensuyng, it shal make mencion of somme bataylles,
and of the ende of the barons of fraunce, of whome I
haue tofore spoken al alonge.

for an hour. (6002)

16 ¶ Here begynneth the iij book, whyche con-
teyneth two partyes, by the chapytres
folowyng declared'. The contents of
the third book.

20 ¶ The fyrist partie of the thyrd book con-
teyneth xiiij chapytres, and speketh of the
warres made in spayne, and' of two mer-
uayllous geauntes.

24 ¶ How Saynt Iames appyered' to Charles,
and how, by the moyen and' the conduyte
of the sterres, he went in to galyce, &
what cytees he subdued : ca. j

28 C Harles, the noble Emperour, after he had taken
muche payne for to mayntene the name of god^t
for tenhaunce the crysten fayth, and to brynge al
the world in one trewe fayth and bylene, & that he
had gotten many contrees, he purposed never more to

Charles wishes
after all his
labours to rest
from fighting,

and to devote himself to religion;

but in a vision he sees a line of stars,

pointing to Galicia.

A man appears to him,

who declares he is St. James, the Apostle of Galicia,

and reproaches him for not recovering that country from the Saracens,

fyght ne to make bataylle, but to reste & lede forth a contemplatyf lyf, in thankynge his maker of þe grace that he had gyuen to hym in surmountyng hys enemyes. Neuertheles on a nyght it happed hym that he byhelde 4 the heuen, & sawe a quantyte of sterres in ordre tendyng alle the nyght one waye and one path. And they began at the see of friselond in passyng bytwene alemayn and ytalye, bytwene Fraunce and guyanne, 8 And passed ryght the say sterres by gascoyne, bascle, Nuarre, and espayne, whyche contrees he had by hys puyssanee and contynuel payne conquerd and maad crysten. And after, the ende of the say sterres thus 12 goyng in ordre, cam vnto galyee, where-as the body of the holy apostle was, he nat knowyng the propre place. Euery nyght charles byhelde the waye of the say sterres, and thought moche contynuell what thys 16 myght be, & that it was not wythoute cause. ¶ In one nyght emonge the other that ¹charles thought on thys waye, a man appyered to hym in vysyon, whyche was so fayr, so playsaunte, and so shynyng, that it was 20 meruaylle; whyche sayd to hym : "what doost thou, my fayre sone?" Charles, beyng al rauysshed, answerd : "who arte thou, fayr syr?" That other answerd : "I am Iames, the apostle of Ihesu Cryst, the sone of 24 Zebedee, and propre broder of saynt Iohan the euangelyst, & am he whom god chaas to preche the crysten fayth and hys doctryne in the londe of galyee and of galylee, by hys holy grace, and he whom herode dyd 28 put to deth by swerde; and my body abydeth emonge the sarasyns, whyche haue entreated it vylaynsly, & lyeth in a place whyche is not knownen. But I merueylle that thou hast not conquerd my londe, Seen and 32 consyderyd that thou hast conquerd so many regyones, townes, & cytees in the world. wherfore I do the to wete, that lyke as god hath chosen the, and made the

¹ k v, back.

superior in worldly puyssaunce aboue al other kynges & worldly prynces, in lyke wyse emong al them that lyuen thou art chosen of god, after the conduyte of
 4 the sterres, to delyuer my londe fro the hande of the mescreaunt sarasyns and enemyes of crystendom. ¶ And to thende that thou sholdest knowe in to what ¹place thou sholdest goo, thou hast seen on the heuen the 8 sterres by dyuyne magnyfycence. And for to obteyne the more Ioye & gretter glorye in heuen, by haultayn and grete puyssaunce, thou shalt surmounte thyn enemyes, & in that same place thou sha[1]t make and doo
 12 edefye a chyrche in my name, to the whiche shal come the cristen peple of al regyons, for to gete helthe & pardon of their synnes. After that thou shalt haue vysited my sepulture, and hane made the waye sure, and
 16 ordeyned cristen men for to kepe and conserue the place, it shal be a memoyre perpetuell." Thus in thy maner appyered thre tymes saynt Iames to the emperorour Charles. After these vysyons and certifycacions of
 20 god, he calle^d and assemble^d hys subgettess, whome he dyd do put a grete multytude in good poynte, & after took hys waye & drewe toward the contre where the sterres had shewed the waye aforesayd, and came fyrst
 24 in to spayne: and the fyrst cyte that was rebelle to hym was panpylonne, whyche was ryght stronge of murayl and towres, & garnysshed wyth sarasyns. and he abode tofore it thre monethes, or he coude fynde maner
 28 to confounde it. Thenne Charles knewe not what to do, but to praye god and saynt Iames, for whom he went, ²that in the vertu of hys name he myght take that cyte, and sayd in thy manere: " Fayr lord god,
 32 my maker, helpe me that am comen in to thys contree for to enhaunce the cristen fayth, for to establissh and mayntene thyn holy name. And also thou holy saynt Iames, by the reuelacion of whome I am in thys

as God wishes him.

He promises him success, and bids him raise a church to his name,

as a perpetual memorial.

After this vision had appeared thrice,

Charles starts with his army for Galicia.

He besieges Pampluna in vain for three months,

and then invokes in prayer the help of St. James.

¹ k v, back, col. 2.

² k vj.

Journeye, I requyre the that I may subdewe thys cytee,
& entre therin, for to shewe the mysbyleng^t peple the
cause of theyr error, to thende that this begynnyng
may the better determinye the ende of myn enteneyon." 4

Immediately after
his prayer the
walls of the city
fall down.

Assone as Charles had fynysshed his oryson, the walles of the cyte, whyche were of marble merueillously strong, ouerthrew to the erthe, & fyl alle in pyeces ; and after, charles and his hoost entred in to the cyte ; 8 & he that wold be baptysed & byleue in god wythoute fyctyon, was sauad and put a-parte, and who sayd the contrarye, was forthwyth put to deth. Al the people of that contre, whan they knewe of these tydylnges & 12 meruayllous operacyons of this cyte, torned in to Ruyne at the symple postulacyon of charles, without contradyctyon came and yelded them to the mercy of kyng charles. And thus many were baptysed, and chyrches 16 were ordeyned, and al the contreye reduiced to certeyn trybute vnder the fydelite of the emperour charles, and brought theyr trybutes fro the cytees wyth-oute ony other gaynsayeng in sygne of seygnourye. 20

All the country
yields to Charles,
who causes the
people to be bap-
tised, and builds
churches.

¶ Of the cytees gotten in espayne by charles,
& how somme were by hym destroyed'.
[capitulo ij.]

Charles arrives at
the tomb of St.
James,

at a place called
Petronium.

After that charles had the domynaeyon quasi in al 24
Aespayne, he came to the sepulture of Saynt Iames,
where he dyd hys deuocyon, and made deuoutely hys
prayers ; & after came to a place in þe lond whiche was
so ferre, that he myght goo no ferther, and there fyxed^t 28
& pyght hys spere, and that place was called petro-
nium ; & thanked god and saynt Iames, that by theyr
suffraunce he was comen so ferre wythoute ony contra-
dyctyon surely vnto suche place that he myght passe 32
no ferther. And in that londe who that wold byleue

in god, tharchebysshop Turpyn baptysed them; & who that wold not, he was slayn, or put in pryon. And after Charles wente from one see to that other, and theanne he
 4 gate in galye xij cytees, emonge whome compostelle
 was thenne the leste. In espayne he had xvij grete
 townes & stronge, emonge whome ¹was onsea, in which
 were wont to be x stronge toures, & a toun named
 8 petrosse, in whyche was made the fynest syluer that
 had themme cours. Also another cyte named attentyua,
 where as the body of saynt Torquete rested, whyche was
 dysceple of saynt Iames, and there vpon the sepulture
 12 was an olyue tree, [whyche dyd] florysshe & bere rype
 fruyt a certayn day of may euery yere withoute faylling.

He captures 13
cities in Galicia,
and 16 in Spain,

Alle the contreye of spayne that tyme was subgette
 to charles, That is to wete, the londe of alandaluf, the
 16 londe of perdoures, the londe of castellans, the londe of
 maures, The londe of portyngale, the londe of sarasyns,
 the londe of nanarre, the londe of Alemans, The londe
 of byscoys, the londe of bascles, the londe of palargyens,
 20 and somme of theyr cytees taken by warre, subtyl and
 mortal, And somme wythoute warre, he coude not
 wynne the grete towne of Lucerne, tyl at the laste he
 layed syge tofore it by the space of foure monethes.
 24 and it stode in a grene valeye. And after, whan he saw
 that they wold not yelde them, & that he coude not
 wynne them, he made hys prayer vnto god, and to
 saynt Iames, that he myght be vyctorious, seen that he
 28 had nomore to termyne in that contreye, but that cyte
 onely. hys oryson was herde, soo that ²the walles fyl
 doun to the erthe, and was put to destractyon in suche
 wyse, þat never man dwelled therin after, and after it
 32 sanke, and therin was an abysme or swolowe of water,
 In whyche were founden after, fysshes alle blacke.
 Emonge the other cytees that he took, there were iiij
 that dyd hym moche Payne, or he myght gete them, &

the whole of
which was subject
to him.

He besieges
Lucerne for 4
months,

but in vain,

and then prays to
St. James,

when the walls
fall down, and
the city is taken,

and turned into a
lake containing
black fishes.

¹ k vj, back.

² k vj, back, col. 2.

therfore he gaf them the maladyctyon of god, and they were cursed, in suche wyse that vnto thys day there is in them none habytacion; & the sayd cytees been named lucerne, ventose, caperce, & adame. 4

¶ Of the grete ydole that was in a cyte,
whyche coude not be smyton doun, and
of the condycyons and' sygnes therof:
ca. iij 8

WHAN Charles had doon in spayne & other places,
wyth the Inhabytauntes of it at hys wylle, Alle
thydolles and other symylacres that he fonde, he dyd
do destroye and put to confusyon. But in the londe of 12
Alandaluf, in a cyte called Salancadys, in arabyque, was¹
the place of a grete god, as the sarasyns sayd. That
ydolle was made of the honde of Machommete in the
tyme that he lyuet, & was named Mahommet ²in 16
thonour of hym: and by arte magyke and dyabolyke
he closed therin a legyon of deuylls, for to kepe it and
make sygnes for to abuse the peple. and thys ydolle was
kepte so by deuylls, that noo persone lyuyng coude by 20
strengthe destroye it, ne put it doun. In suche wyse
that yf ony cristen man came nyghe for to see it, or to
coniure it, or to destroye, Assone as he began to coniure
and preche, anon he was perysshed & destroyed. And 24
the sarasyns that came for to preche, adoure, make
sacrefyse, or doo obeyssance therto, were wythout
peryl; and yf by aduenture, a byrde fleyng came &
rested vpon it, Incontynent it was deed. The stone 28
vpon whyche thydolle was sette was meruayllously
made. It was a stone of the see, wrought of sarasyns,
and grauen subtylly of grete and ryche facyon, the
whyche was enhauized vpryght, not without grete 32
crafte & connyng. toward the erth it was meruayllously

Charles destroys
all the idols;

but at Salancadys
was a great idol,

kept so by devils
that none could
destroy it,

and which no
Christian dare
approach.

It stood on a
large stone,
richly carved,

¹ orig. and was.

² k viij.

grete, & alway vpward it was lasse ; and that stone was so hye as a crowe myght flee : vpon whyche stone was thydolle sette, whyche was of fyn yuorye, after thassemblaunce of a man stondyng^t vpryght on his feet, & had^t hys face torned^t to the south, & helde in his ryght honde a grete keye, & the sarasyns were certefyed^t for trouthe that whan a kyng^t of france shold^t be borne, & in strengthe to subdue the contreye of spayne, and brynge it in to crysten fayth, the ymage shold^t lete falle the keye, whych shold be a sygne þut the kyng of fraunce shold^t conquere them. So therme in the tyme

and was of fine
ivory,

and held in his hand a key,

which was to fall
when a king
should come to
subdue the
country.

12 that the noble kyng^r charles regned in spayne, for to
brynge it to the crysten faith, the ydolle lete the keye
falle doun to the grounde. And whan the sarasyns
sawe that, They hydde theyr tresours, as golde, syluer,
16 and precyous stoones, in therth, by cause the crysten
men shold no thyng fynde therof, & they al wente in
to another regyon, and durst not abyde the comyng of
the kyng^r.

On the approach
of Charles the
key falls.

20 ¶ Of the chyrche of saynt Iames in galycie,
and' of dyuers other whyche Kyng' Charles
founded: capitulo iiiij

iii]

24 **C**harles beyng in galye had Innumerable quantite
of golde, of syluer, and of precyous stones, of many
kynges, prynces, and other lordes, and of trybutes of
cytees that was gyuen to hym as lord.

Charles, having
an immense
quantity of gold
and silver,

¶ Also he had moche of the tresour that he conquer^d
28 of the townes and contreyes of Spayne ²aforesayd.
Thenne he, seyng the grete habundaunce of good, dyd
do compose and make a chirche of Saynt Iames, in the
place where-as he had founde the body of hym. and
32 he abode there the space of thre yere wythout departyng,
and in that same place he ordeyned a bysshop, and

builds a church
to St. James,

¹ k vij, col. 2.

² k vij, back.

and three canons.

He endows the church,

and supplies vestments and ornaments.

Another church
he builds at Acon
to Our Lady,

and four to St.
James,

besides abbeys
and monasteries.

founded there chanonnes reguler, vnder the rule of saynt Ysodore the confessour; & bought & ordeyned for them rentes & trybutes suffycyent, and gaf to them synguler seygnourye. He furnysshed the chyrche wyth 4 belles, vessellys of golde and syluer, adournements of preeuous clothes, & al thynges necessarye & apperteynyng in a chyrche pontyfical also of bokes, vestimentes, chalyces, & other holy escriptures. And of 8 the resyidue of gold and syluer, that he brought oute of spayne, he dyd doo edefye these chyrches folowynge.

¶ Fyrst, at Acon, in almayne, where as he is buryed, he dyd doo make a chirche of our lady; and though it 12 be lytel, yet is it moche rychely made. The chyrche of Saynt Iames in the toun of vyterbe; also the chyrche of saynt Iames in the cytee of Tholouse: The chyrche of Saynt Iames in gascoyne; also the chirche of saynt 16 Iames in parys, bytwene the sayne & the mounte of martres. & abone the chyrches aforesayd, he founded, rented, & releued many & dyuers chyrches, monasteryes, & other abbeyeys in the world, in many and dyuers 20 places.

¶ How, after that Aygolant the geaunt had taken spayne & put to deth the crysten people, Charles recouerd' it, and' other 24 maters: capitulo

v

After Charles's
return to France,

Aygolant, an
African giant,
reconquers Spain,

and puts the
Christians to
death.

After that charles was returned in to Fraunce, a kyng^t sarasyne of affryque, named aygolant, wyth grete puyssance came in to spayne, and remysed it in 28 hys subiectyon. And the crysten which charles had left there, as many as he myght gete, he put to deth, and the other fledde. And in shorte tyme the tydynge came vnto kyng^t Charles, wherof he was moche abasshed 32 & angry, bycause it was shewed to hym so pyetously.

wherfore Incontynent he assembled^t a grete hoost, & wyth a grete multytude of fyghtyng^t men he went thyder wythout taryeng^t. And he made the conduytour 4 of them al Mylon of angleres, the fader of Rolland^t, & they cessed not tyl that they had tydynge where Aygolant the geaunt was, whyche had doon thysfeat. whan charles knewe where Aygolant was lodged^t, ¹ and 8 semblably aygolant knewe where Charles was, Anone the geaunt sente to charles that he wold delyuer bataylle suche as he wold^t. That is to wete that Charles shold sende to hym xx of hys men to fyght ageynst xx of hys 12 sarasyns, or xl ayenst xl, or an C ayenst C, or a thousand ayenst a thousand^t, or two men ayenst two, or one man ayenst one man onely. kyng Charles, seyng^t thentencyon of aygolant, for thonour of noblesse he wold not 16 refuse hys demaunde, but sent to hym an C knyghtes in grete poynte, and the geaunte sente another hondred^t ayenst the crysten men, but anone the sarasyns were vanquysshed^t & put to deth, and after were sente by 20 aygolant two hondred sarasyns ayenst two hondred crysten men, whyche Saracens were anone wythoutre grete resystence put to deth and slayn. Aygolant was not contente, ne wold^t not leue herby, but sente two 24 thousand sarasyns ayenst ij M crysten men, and whan they were in batayll, many of þ^r sarasyns were slayn, and the other put to flyght for to sauе them self. The thyr^t day after, Aygolant maa^t certeyn experyences, 28 and knewe that yf Charles made warre to hym he shold^t haue grete losse, and sent to Charles to wete yf he wold^t make playne warre. Charles ²was contente, and there vpon they made redy theyr peple, and 32 speccially charles, for hys subgettess had^t grete affectyon to goo to bataylle without ony fere of deth. And also somme of the crysten men, the day tofore the bataylle, dyd do amende and araye theyr harnoys, and sette

Milo, Roland's father, is put in command.

Aigolant challenges any number of Charles's men to fight against an equal number of his.

Charles sends 100 knights,

who slay the 100 Saracens;

and after 200, who also kill their opponents.

Aigolant sends 2000 Saracens,

but they also are defeated.

Both sides prepare for a general engagement.

¹ k viij.

² k viij. col. 2.

theyr tentes nygh a ryuer named ceye, and pyght there
theyr speres, euen in the place where as the bodyes of
saynt faconde and saynt prematyf rested, where after
was made a chyche deuoutely founded, and also a 4
stronge cyte by the moyen of the sayd Charles, and in
the place where the speres were pyght, our lord shewed
grete myraele. For of them that shold deye there and
be gloryfyed marters of god & crowned in heuen, theyr 8
speres on þe morn were founden al grene, floresshed
and leued, whyche was a precedent sygne that they
whyche shold deye shold haue the Ioye in heuen.

¶ Eche man took his owne, and cutte of the bowes & 12
leues, wyth whyche the leues were planted and vnder-
rooted, wherof in a lytel whyle after grewe a grete wode,
whyche stondeth there yet. It was grete meruayle of
the Ioye that the horses made, whyche dyd theyr 16
deuoyrs as wel as the men after theyr qualyte, whyche
was a grete token. Thenne L valyaunt ¹erysten men
were slayne, And emonge the other was slayne due
Myllon, fader to Roulland. Also that same day the 20
hors of charles was slayn vnder hym, & whan he was a
fote he maad grete murdre wthy hys swerde Ioyouse,
and dyd so moche that the sarasyns, dredyng the
euening, fledde & wythdrewen them in to place of 24
surete. And as it was the wylle of our lord, the next
day after came to Charles in to his helpe iiiij marquise
of ytalye, accompanied wthy iiij M stronge fyghtyng
men & chosen. wherfore Aigolant, assone as he knewe 28
of theyr comyng, he fled and wythdrewen hym ouer the
see toward hys contree, but they myȝt not for hast bere
with them al theyr tresours, wherfor fraunce was
erryched meruayllously aboue alle other contrees. 32

¶ And whan charles sawe his departyng, he came
wyth al hys rychesse in to fraunce, and thenne, duryng
seuen yere, he dyd do ordeyne the seruyee and offyee of

By a miracle it is
shown which of
the French
soldiers should be
killed in the
battle.

From their spears
springs up a great
wood.

Mio and 50
knights are slain,

but the Saracens
are put to flight.

Reinforcements
come to Charles,

whereupon Aigo-
lant flies to Africa.

Charles returns to
France,

¹ k viij. back.

the chyrche by preestes & clerkes, and the festes of sayntes of all the yere ; and grete vertu & meruayllous effect was comprysed in thys man. For whan it was
 4 not warre for to mynnysshe thynfydellys and encrēace the crysten fayth, For tenhaunce the name of god he made the offyces and legenedes of holy sayntes, & dyd ¹ reduce in to mynde and remembraunce the passyons of holy
 8 marters in establisshynge^g theyr feestes, to thende that we shold ensyewe them, and to eschewe al euyl. And the magnytude of thys kyng^t was wel preued^b by sygnes seen on the heuen. For in the same yere the mone
 12 derked thre tymes, and the sonne ones, and compagnyes of people were seen meruayllous, whyche shewed^b that thys Charles was of grete magnytude, that is to wete bytwene heuen and erthe.

and occupies him-self in drawing up rules and services for the Church.

This year were three eclipses of the moon, and one of the sun.

16 ¶ How Aigolant sent to charles that he shold' come to hym trustely for to make Iust-warre, and' how Charles in habyte dys-symyled' spake to hym, and' of other
 20 maters : capitulo vj

AS I hane sayd the kyn[ge,] Aigolant the geaunte, fledde in to hys contreye, whan socours cam to Charles of foure marques. he slepte not vpon his
 24 purpoos, but maal^b grete dylgence for to assemble hys people, whyche were sarasyns Innumerable, for he assembled^b mores, Moabytes, Ethiopiens, Affrycans, and percyens ; he brought wyth hym also the kyng of
 28 arabye, the kyng^t of barbarye, the kyng^t of malroste, the kyng of ²maioryke, the kyng of meques, the kyng^t of cybylle, & the kyng of Cordlube, the whych cam with
 peple wythout nombre, certain, in to gascoyne, in to a
 32 stronge cyte named Agenne, and took it. And after sent to Charles that he shold come to hym peasyblly &

Aigolant collects an immense army,

and again invades Gascoyne, and captures the city of Agenne.

¹ k viij. back, col. 2.

² l j.

Aigolant invites Charles to visit him unattended.

Charles sets out with 2000 knights,

whom he leaves, except 10, near the city.

He himself, in disguise and with only one attendant, enters the city,

and presents himself as a messenger from Charles,

to say he had come with only 40 attendants.

Aigolant replies that he will go and meet the French king.

trustly, with a fewe peple, promysyng^t to hym for to gyue to hym ix hors laden with gold, syluer, and pre-eyous stones, yf he wold thus come at hys desyre. this paynym shewed to hym this by cause he wold knowe his persone, for hys strengthe & puyssance knewe he wel by experyence, and also to thende whan he knewe hym that he myght in the warre flee hym. whan kyng charles knewe this mandement he gadred not grete peple, but he came onely wyth ij M knyghtes of honour and of grete strength. And whan he was foure myle nygh the cyte, where Aigolant and al the kynges tofore named were, he left his people secretly, & came vnto a mountayne nygh the cyte, accompanied wthy xl knyghtes onely. And fro thys place they saw the cyte, by cause to wete yf the multytude of peple were departed, soo that he shold not be deceyned. Neuertheles vpon thys montayne he lefte hys people secretly, and took of hys clothes, and cladde hym in the guyse of a messenger, and ¹took one knyght onely with hym, whyehe bare his spere & swerde and boeler vnder hys mantel, and soo came in to the cyte, and anone he was brought tofore aigolant the geaunt. And whan he was tofore hym he sayd in thys manere : “ Charles the kyng hath sente vs vnto the, and leteth the wete by vs that he is comen lyke as thou hast comanded, accompanied wthy fourty knyghtes onely, for to do that he ought to doo. Now themne come to hym wthy xl knyghtes, withoute moo, yf thou wylt accomplysse and holde that thou hast promysed.” Aigolant sayd to hem that they shold retorne to charles, and that they shold say to hym that he departe not, but abyde hym there, and he wold come and vysyte hym. After this that charles had knownen the geaunt, and after vysyted the towne, for to knowe the feblest parte for to take and conquer it whan he shold come agayn, & sawe al the kynges

¹ 1 j. col. 2.

forsay^t & their puyssances, he after retorne^d to his charles, having
peple whiche he had^t left vpon the montayne, & after spied out all the
came to hys ij M knyghtes. & anone after aygolant,
4 accompanied^d wyth vij M knyztes, came after them city, departs.
withoute taryeng^t. But charles took hede whan he cam
that there were many moo paynyns than crysten men,
and ¹wythout lenger taryeng charles & his peple de-
8 partek^t, and retourned^d in to fraunce wythout hauyng
other delyberacyon.

¶ How Charles, accompanied with moche
12 peple, retorne^d in to the place aforesayd &
toke the cyte of agenne, & other maters :
[capitulo] vij

A After that enarles was retorne^d in to fraunce he Charles assembles
assembled moche peple, & after came to the cyte a large army,
16 of agenne, & assyeged^t it there by grete facyon,
the spaec of vij monethes. Aygolant was therin &
many sarasyns, & the crysten men had made fortressis
& castelles of tree tofore this cyte for to greue it. Whan
20 Aygolant & the grete lordes of his companyo sawe þat
they myght not endure, they maa^t hooles & caues vnder
therth for tescape oute secretly : in that maner they came
out of the cyte, & passed ouer a ryuer, which rauine by
24 the cyte, named goronna, and so they saned them self.

The next day after, whan there was noo grete resyst-
ence made to the crysten men, Charles wyth grete
tryumph^e & puyssance entred^t in to the cyte, & put to
28 deth x M sarasyns that he there fonde. The other,
seyng^t that, put them to flyght by the ryuer. Aygolant
² was in another stronge toun, & whan charles knewe it
he came thyder & assaylled it, & sente to hym to delyuer
32 ouer the cyte. aygolant ansuer^d that he wold^t not so and after besieges
doo, but by a moyen that was, that they shold^t make a the city to which
Aigolant had fled.

¹ 1 j, back.

² 1 j, back, col. 2.

Aigolant proposes a general battle.

Those of the Christians who were destined to die are again pointed out by a miracle.

The Saracens are utterly defeated.

batayll, & he that shold wynne the bataylle shold be lord of þe toun, & so they assygned the day of the bataylle. and nygh to that place, bytwene the castel thalabourt & a ryner called carantha, somme of the 4 crysten men planted^t theyr speres in the grounde, especially they that on the morn shold deye, & obteyne the crowne of glorye as marters of god. and on the morne they fonle their speres al grene & myraelously leued^t, 8 & ful of bowes, wherof the eristen men were moche loyous of this myracle, and^t raught not for to deye for þe crysten fayth in mayntenying the name of god. After that they cutte of theyr speres and^t wente to 12 bataylle, and^t put many sarasyns to deth. But in thende were slayn and martred^t, of crysten men moo than iiiij M whyche were saned^t in heuen ; & that tyme the hors that Charles rode on was slayn vnder hym, 16 and at that bataylle were slayn by the sayd^t Charles the kynge of Agabye [&] the kyng^t of bugye, merueyllous myghty sarasyns.

¶ Of the vertuous operacions that charles 20 made whan he was returned^t in to fraunce, & what barons he had^t in hys compayne, & of theyr puyssaunce : ea. viij

After his defeat Aigolant flies to Pampeluna.

Charles returns to France for reinforcements.

THe bataylle toforesayd^t made, Aigolant fledde and^t 24 came in to panpylone, and^t sent to kyng^t charles that he shold abyde hym for to gyue hym bataylle more ample & large. Whan charles knewe hys desyre he retourned^t in to fraunce for to haue helpe of hys 28 peple, and^t made an open manndement thorough out al Fraunce that al maner peple that were of euyl condycyon and in bondage, that they that were present, and theyr successors, shold^t be free, & there vpon tabellyons shold 32 be delyuernd accordyng^t to the lawe, that wold goo with

hym ayenst the mysereantes. Also alle prysонners
 that were in fraunce, he delyuered them al out of
 pryson, & to al them that shold haue ben delyuered to
 4 deth for felonnye, murdre, or treason, he pardonne
 them & gaf to them theyr lyf; and to al poure peple
 that had not wherby to lyue, he gaf to them good
 largely, & them that were euyll clad, he clothed them
 8 after theyr degree. alle them that were at debate he
 pleased them & accorded; Alle them þat were dys-
 heryted & put oute from theyr lyuelode he restored al
 to them; Alle þe peple¹ that myght bere armes he
 12 armed them. The valyaunt squyers of theyr persones
 he made knyghtes, & al them that were in hys Indyg-
 naeyon & pryued [f]ro hys loue, & bannysshed for the
 loue of god, he was constrainede to pardonne them, &
 16 made pees with every man. and thenne he was four-
 nysshed of moo than an C thousand men wel fyghtyng,
 wythoute them that were a-fote, whyche were Innumer-
 able. And for to gyue courage to the prynces of Charles,
 20 Turpyn sayd in this maner: “I, Turpyn, archebysshop
 of Raynes by the grace of god, shal gyue good courage
 to crysten people, and shal slee the Infydelis, sarasyns,
 with myn owne handes.” ¶ Wyth Charles was
 24 Roulland of Cenonye, neuewe of Charles, sone of hys
 syster, dame Berthe, & of Duke Mylon, wyth foure
 thousand fyghtyng men; Olyuer, due of genes, sone of
 duc Reyner, with ij M fyghtyng men: Aristagius,
 28 kyng of brytayne, wyth vij thousand fyghtyng men;
 Not wythstondyng that in brytayne was another kyng,
 Eugelius, whyche was duke of Guyan, whome Au-
 gustus Cezar haþ ordeyned, wyth the byturciens, the
 32 monyques, pictauyns, seauctonens, and Elogysmes,
 eytees with their prouynce vnder guyan: & he cam
 with ij M horsmen ²good fyghtars; Garfernus, kyng
 of bordeloy, with iiij M men; Salomon, felow of estok;

He frees all
prisoners,

clothes the poor,

restores the
disinherited,

and raises the
esquires to
knighthood,
on condition of
joining his army.

Turpin assures
him of success.

With Charles are
Roland, Oliver,
and Aristagius
with 14,000 men.

Besides were men
from Guienne,

¹ 1 ij. col. 2.

² 1 ij. back.

Burgundy,

Lorraine, and
other provinces.

bawdewyn, brother of Rolland; Naymes, due of banyere, wyth x M fyghtyng^t men; Hoel of Nauntes, & Lambert, prynce of bourgoyn, wyth ij M fyghtars; Sanson, due of bourgoyn, with x M; Garyn, due of 4 lorayne, & many other; and Charles haſt of his owne contre moo than fyfty M men. The exerceyte of Charles, the noble emperour, and ryght puyssaunt kyng^t of Fraunce, was so grete and so ample that it hele 8 two iourneyes longe, & in brede half o iourneye & more; In suche wyse that of the bruyt that was made for the grete multytude of the freusshemmen, it was herde two myle ferre and more.

12

¶ Of the tryews of Charles & of Aigolant,
and of the deth of hys peple, & wherfore
aygolant was not baptysed': capitulo ix

The whyl that charles was a yonge chylde he 16 learned at Toulete the langage of sarasyns, and spake it whan he wold. Aigolant, thys geaunt and grete Lord, coulde not absteyne hym, and eam nygh vnto crystente, and sente to Charles to come to 20 hym vnto Pampylone, and tryews was ¹maad bytwene them. For Aigolant consydery^t the multytude of hys people and the puyssances of their persones. For by cours of nature hym semed he shold surmounte the 24 cristen peple, but he thought that the god of cristen people was more eertayn and trewe than the god of the paynyme^s; but er he wold declyne fro the worshyppynge of hys goddes, he haſt desyre to assaye yet ones the nombre 28 of paynyme^s ayenst the nombre of cristen men. And he was contente to make a paete and couenaunt wyth charles, that he that shold obteyne the vyctorye vpon others peple, that his god were holden and worshypped, 32 And that the god of hym that shold lose the bataylle

Aigolant, fright-
ened at the num-
bers of the French,proposes a con-
ference.It is agreed to
leave the question
of religion to a
trial of arms
between equal
numbers.¹ I ij. back, col. 2.

shold be of noo valure, renyed, and reputid for nought.

And vpon thys couenaunte were sente twenty cristen knyghtes ayenst xx knyghtes paynynms. And anone

²⁰ Christians engage as many Saracens, and slay them;

4 as they were assembled and meddeled to gyder, the twenty sarasyns were slayn. And after were sente fourty ayenst

and after 40 overcome 40 Saracens;

fourty, And anone the sarasyns were slayn and vayn-quysshed. And after he sent an C. ayenst an C., but

8 they were not slayne, but fledde. Aigolant thouȝt he wold do better, and sent ij hondred ayenst ij C., and

anone the sarasyns were ouercomen & slayn. [¶] Thys

12 geaunt was euyl contente of the destractyon of hys

peple, and for to make a grete descomfyte, he sente a thousand sarasyns ayenst a M cristen men, and wyt-

hout makyng grete rebellyon, the sarasyns were anone

slayn and put to deth. Thenne the kyng Aigolant, by

16 experyence for-made, afermed the fayth & the lawe of

and finally 1000 Christians slay 1000 Saracens.

erysten peple to be better, more sure, & more certeyn than the lawe of the paynynms and sarasyns, and thus he

Aigolant is con-vined, and agrees to receive baptism.

was enclyned to the crys'en fayth, & dysposed hym to

20 receyue baptym on the morne without fayntyse ; and

here vpon he demanded tryews and surete for to goo &

come to Charles, & he graunted it to hym wyth good

hert. and thus atte houre of tyerce, whan charles was

24 at dynar, Aigolant had entencyon to see charles and

He asks to see Charles at meat with his lords.

his maner at mete, for to knowe hys astate, yf it were

vayllerous and soo grete as it was in armes and in

bataylles. And also he came prynceppally for to be

28 baptysed, and he sawe Charles at hys table with grete

magnysyceunce, and after behelde the ordre of hys peple

and sawe that somme were in habyte of knyghtes and

grete prynces, Other in habyte of chamons & monkes ;

32 & asked so that he was certefyed of euery ordre, and

the cause of theyr estate, and after ²that he sawe in a parte of y^e halle sytting on the grounde, xij

poore persones, which dyned & ete as other dyd. for

He sees 13 poor men, sitting on the ground at dinner,

and asks who and what they are.

Charles tells him they are maintained in memory of our Lord and His Apostles.

Aigolant reproves Charles for treating his lords so much better than the servants of God,

and refuses to be baptised.

Charles is enraged,

charles of custom wold not take his repaste tyl he had xiij poure men in the worshypp of our lord and of his xij apostles, & he toke hede how these poure men satte on the grounde without towayl in ryght poure 4 habyte, & dyned al soroufully, & he demaundel what people they were. Charles answerel & sayd: “they be goddes peple and messagers of our lord Ihesu cryst,

whome I susteyne in thonour of hym & his xij apostles 8 that he had with hym, & gyne to them refection corporel.”

Aygolant said: “certeynlye he serneth euyl hys lord y^t receyuth his messagers in thys manere. I see wel that they that ben aboute the been in good 12 poynt & wel arayed, & wel serued of mete & drynke, & the sernauentes of thy god lyue pourelly & euyl clothed ayenst y^e colde, & ben withdrawen ferre fro the. he

dooth grete shame to his lord that receyneth his mes- 16 sagers in this manere. & more ouer, I see now wel that the lawe whyche thou hast sayd to me to be good & holy, by thy werkes thou shewest them to be fals & of no valewe.” & herof aygolant was all moeued & troubled 20 in his entendement, & he beyng put out alle fro hys purpose, toke leue of the ¹kyng & retournele to hys peple, & renouncele to be baptysed, and sente word to charles for to begynne warre agyn on y^e morne more 24 stronge than enier he had doon tofore.

¶ Of the deth of aygolant and of his peple, & how moche crysten peple were slain by concupyseunce of syluer, & of crysten men 28 founden dede by myraele : [ea.] x

WHAN charles sawe Aygolant come for to baptysse hym he was moche loyous, but whan he returned & forsoke it he was euyl contente, & 32 took aduys vpon the pour men whyche he sayd were

¹ 1 iii, bac^k.

messagers of god. For after the pouerte of them, and after that they were named, fore to holde them so, was none honour to theyr mayster, & the emperour re-
 4 membred wel that the peple of god ought to be receyued honestely, & honourably holden & serued. wherfor the poure men that he fonde in thecerecyte he dyd them to be wel clothed & honestly, and gaf to them
 8 mete largely, And took suche custome in hym self that he faylle^d not, but the pour peple were receyued with honour in his companye. vpon thys purpose on a day folowyng^t, the sarasyns put them to bataylle, and to
 12 fyght ¹ayenst the crysten men by grete fyerste, and there was soo grete destrucyon that day of the sarasyns, in which the Saracens are defeated,
 that the crysten men were empesshed^d and lette by the blood that ranne so habundantly, as it had rayned^d many
 16 dayes water and blood. wherefore² Aigolant, seyng the destrucyon of his people as he that doubted^d nothyng to dye, aduaunced³ so hym self that he was slain and put to deth, and after the cristen men entred in to the
 20 cyte of pampylone, and put to deth al the sarasyns that they fonde therin. and Aigolant himself slain.

Thenne the kyng of Cybylle & the kyng^t of cordube sauied them self with somme of their subgettis. After
 24 thys the crysten men ful of couetyse for to hauie gold and syluer of the sarasyns that were deed retorne^d. And whan they were wel charged^d & laden wyth golde, syluer, and other hauoys, the kyng^t of Cybylle and the kyng^t
 28 of Cordube took heide ther of, And wyth al their meyne came couerly vpon the crysten men, and put to deth moo than a thousand.

¶ Thus may be knownen that the ardeur of eonecupy-
 32 scence was cause of the deth of the soule wythoute vyctorye, and to god dysplaysaunte. ¶ On the morne tydynge came how so many sarasyns were slain, and

¹ I iij, back, col. 2. ² orig. wherfor.

³ orig. and aduaunced.

and has all these poor men clothed and honourably treated.

A great battle takes place,

in which the Saracens are defeated,

and Aigolant himself slain.

The kings of Seville and of Cordova fall on the Christians laden with booty, and kill more than 1000,

from which we may see the danger of covetousness.

The king of
Navarre chal-
lenges Charles.

He accepts, and
prays to God to
point out which
of the Christians
are destined to
die.

This being shown
to him,

he locks them up
in his chapel,

and goes to battle
without them.

On his return he
finds them all
dead.

specyally of aygolant, vnto the prynce ¹ of Nauarre named Furre, wherfore he sent to Charles to haue batayll ordynayre. Charles was so noble, so puyssaunt, & so trustyng^t in god, whan he faught for the crysten ⁴ fayth that he refused hym not. and after, at the day of bataylle, whyche was assygned on bothe partyes, Charles put hym self to prayer, and prayed god deuoutely that it plesed hym, to shew what crysten men shold deye in ⁸ that bataylle. and on the day folowynge whan euery man was armed for to fyght, by the wylle of our lord Charles sawe that same day the sygne of the crosse alle rede vpon the sholdres behynde vpon theyr harnoys. ¹² whan charles sawe it he thanked our lord & had compassyon of theyr deth, by cause of the valyaunce of theyr persones. Thenne he sent for all them that bare thensigne & made them to goo in to hys oratorye, and ¹⁶ after sliette them fast therin, to the ende that they shold not take deth that day ; and thenne wyth al his other hoost he went ayenst thoost of the prynce furre, but it was not longe but furre and hys people were destroyed ²⁰ and put to deth. and whan that was doon the emperour came in to hys oratorye vyctoryous vpon hys enemyes, and fonde al them that were sliette wythin dede & expyred, & thenne knewe² he wel that alle they that ²⁴ were marked with the crosse were assygned that day to be receyued in to heuen with gloriye & crowne of marterdom, & that it apperteyned not to Charles to prolonge theyr helthe. wherfore he is wel symple that wyl put ²⁸ hym in payne to eschewe the passage of whyche he is not maystre.

¶ Of feragus the merueyllous geaunt, how he
bare alwaye wyth hym the barons of fraunce ³²
wyth out daunger, & how Roulland' faught
wyth hym : capitulo xj.

¹ 1 iiiij.

² 1 iiiij, col. 2.

After that aygolant was slain, & Furre, & many kynges sarasyns as tofore is wryton, the tydynges cam to the admiral of babylone, the which had a geant moche terryble, that was of the generacion of golias, & he made hym to be accompanied with xx M turkes moche strong, and sente hym for to fyght ayenst charles thempour. For hys puyssance was redoubte^d thurgh the world, & the sayd feragus cam vnto the cyte of vagyere, nygh to saynt Iames, bytwene cristendom & hethenes, & sent to Charles that he shold come to fyght ayenst hym. This geant was moche meruayllous,

4 The Amir of Babylon sends Ferragus, a mar-vellous giant,

8 to fight against Charles.

12 For he doubted neyther spere ne swerde, ne arowe, ne other shotte. And he had the strengthe of xl¹ myghty men and stronge. Anone as Charles knewe the tydynges of hys comyng, he went to hym and was vpon his 16 watche nygh by vagyere. Whan thys was knownen this geaunte yssued^d oute of the towne, and demaunded^d syn-guler persone ayenst a persone. Charles, whiche never had^d refused^d that to persone, sente to hym Ogyer the 20 danoys. but whan the geant sawe hym allone on the felde, without makynge^d of ony semblaunte of warre, he came allone to hym, & took hym wyth one hande & put hym vnder hys arme, wythoute doyng^d to hym ony 24 harme, and bare hym vnto hys lodgys, and dyd^d do put hym in prysyon, and made nomore a-doo to bere hym, than dooth a wulf to bere a lytel lambe. The heught of thys geaunt was of twelue cubytes: he had^d the face 28 a cubyte brode, the nose a palme longe, the armes & thydes four cubytes longe. The backe of his hand was thre palmes longe. After that Ogyer was borne thus awaye, Charles sente raynold^d daulbepyn, whan Feragus 32 sawe hym, he bare hym a-waye as lyghtly as the other. Charles was abasshed^d and sent tweyne other, that is to wete, constayn of Rome, & therle hoel. This geaunt took that one wyth² the ryght honde and that other

He challenges any French knight.

Charles sends Ogier to meet him,

but Ferragus takes him under his arm and carries him off, as a wolf would a lamb.

Charles then sends Raynold, and he also is carried off.

Then Constayn and Hoel are sent,

¹ 1 iiiij, back.² orig. wyght.

but Ferragus
carries them off,
one in each hand.

Roland asks leave
to fight the giant.

Charles reluctantly gives his consent.

Ferragus lifts Roland up with one hand, and lays him on his horse before him.

Roland, by an effort, overthrows the giant.

Roland kills the Saracen's horse,

and wounds Ferragus in the arm.

in the lyft honde, and bare them ¹bothe tweyne in-to pryson in to hys lodgyng, that euyer man myght see. yet after charles sent other tweyne, and semblably they were bothe borne away wythoute ony wytstandyng or ⁴ contradyctyon. whan Charles saw the feet of this man, he was al abasshed, & durst nomore sende ony persone. For no man myght resyste hym. Roulland, whyche was prynce of al thexeersyte of Charles, was euyl contente of thys that the geaunt was vycitoryous, & came to Charles and presented hym self for to goo fyght wyth hym, but charles wold not graunte hym. At the last, by force, he was constrainyd to gyue to hym lyceene, ¹² & Roulland made hym redy, and cam tofore Feragus; but anone he was taken and reteyned wyth hys ryght hande lyke the other, and the geaunt layed hym tofore hym on hys hors. whan Rolland sawe that he was ¹⁶ taken & borne awaie soo vylaynsly he took a grete² courage in hym self, and called the name of Ihesus to help, & to be in hys ayde, and torned hym ayenst Feragus, and took hym by the chynne, and made to ²⁰ ouerthowre fro hys hors, & fyl to the grounde, and rolland also. And after anone they arose, and eueryche took hys owne hors. Roulland, whyche was moche habyle and courageous, drewe ³hys swerde durandal ²⁴ and came ayenst the geaunt, and gaf soo grete a stroke on the Paynyme hors that he earf hym a-sondre in the myddes, and the paynym fyl to the erthe. Feragus, beynge euyl contente for hys hors that was dede, took ²⁸ hys swerde for to smyte Rolland, & had slayne hym wyth the stroke yf he had attayned hym; but assone as he lyfte vp hys arme for to haue smyton Rolland, Roulland auauncyd hym self and smote the geant vpon ³² the arme, with whiche he helde hys swerde, suche a stroke, that hys swerde fyl to the grounde; wherof Feragus had grete despyte and supposed to haue smyten

¹ 1 iiiij, back, col. 2.

² orig. gtete.

³ 1 v.

hym wylth hys fyste, but he attayned rollandes hors in
suche wyse that he slew hym. Thus were they bothe
two on fote, whyche wythoute swerd begynnen to fyght
4 wylth theiร fystes and wylth stones contynuelly, tyl the
houre of none: wherfore they bothe were wary, and
took tryews to gyder by one acorde vnto the morne,
and that they shold fyght wythout spere and wylthout
8 hors: and here vpon ech of them went vn-to hys
lodgys.

Roland's horse is killed.

Being both weary,
they leave off
fighting for the
day.

¶ How on the morne rolland' and' Feragus
foughiten & dysputeden the fayth, and by
12 what ¹moyen Feragus was slain by Roul-
land': capitulo xij

The next day folowynge erly, Rolland and Feragus
came to the felde of the bataylle. The geaunt
16 brought hys swerde moche grete, but it was nothyng
worth, for rolland made prouysyon of a grete staffe or
clubbe, ryȝt longe wylth whyche he smote the geaunt;
but he myght nowher hute hym. & also he smote
20 hym with grete stones and rounde, & coude in noo
wyse hurte ne entre in-to hys flesshe. And in this
maner they cessyd not to fyght tyl the houre of myd-
day. The geaunt was wary, and demaunded tryews of
24 Rolland for to slepe and reste hym a lytel. Rolland
was contente, and was so noble and so valyaunt, that
whan the geaunt was layed he went and fette a grete
stone and layed it vnder hys heell, to the ende that he
28 myght the better slepe and reste at hys ease. And
after that he had a lytel slepte, & that he was awaked,
he satte vp. And the noble Rolland came and sat by
hym and sayd to hym: "I meruaylle moche of thy
32 feit, How thou art so stronge and so terryble that thou
mayst not be hurt ne wounded in thy body by swerd,"

Next morning the
duel is renewed.Roland takes with
him only a great
staff.At noon Ferragus
is tired, and
wishes to sleep a
while.Roland makes
him comfortable.He asks him how
it is he cannot
by any means
wound him.¹ I v. col. 2.

Ferragus tells him
that he is vulner-
able only in the
navel.

The Saracen
inquires about
the doctrines of
Christianity.

Roland tells him,

and how that all
that are baptised
shall be saved.

Ferragus proposes
to settle the ques-
tion of religion by
arms.

ne by staffe, ne by stones, ne in¹ ²noo wyse." The geant, which spake spaynyssh, sayd to hym : "I may not be slayn, but by the nauell." whan Rolland herde that he made semblaunte that he vnderstood hym not. 4 After Feragus demaunded hym what was hys name, and of what lygnage he was. Rolland sayd to hym : "I am named Rolland, and am neuew of charles, the ryght myghty Emperour." & Feragus asked of hym 8 what lawe he helde. Rolland answerd : "I holde the cristen fayth by the grace of god." Feragus sayd : "what fayth is that, and who hath gyuen it?" to whyche Roulland answerd : "It is trouthe y^t after god 12 almy^{ty} had made heuen and erthe, and our fyrist fader adam, which was dysobeyssant to hys commaundements ; the world was Judget here in erthe wythoute hauyngt of beatytude, ne of felycyte : and long tyme 16 after the sone of god, the second^d persone of the Trynyte, remembred hym of the value of the soule, the whiche is gyuen to every persone, and descended fro heuen and took our humanyte and suffred greuous passyon of 20 paynes. And he beyngt in thys world hath gyuen ensygnements and stablyssed constytucyons for to sauе vs, & pryncipally who byleneth in hym & in hys werkes parfyghtly, and that he be baptysed. After thys 24 ³mortel lyf he shal be sauēd in heuen : and, loo! thys is the fayth that I holde, in the which I wyl deye." And after that Feragus had made to hym many ques-tyons in the fayth, and that Rolland had answerd to 28 hym honourably in euery poynte, Feragus said in this manere : " thou art cristen, and wylt mayntene the fayth of whyche thou hast spoken, and I am a paynym, & holde for my god Mahoun, who of vs tweyne that 32 shal be vanquysshed & ouercome, late hys lawe be holde for nought and of noo valewe, and the fayth of hym that is vctoryous late it be holden for good &

¹ orig. im.

² 1 v. back.

³ 1 v. back, col. 2.

trewe, and that it be entyerly kepte and obserued."

The valyaunt Rolland was contente ryght wel, & accepted hys langage. thenne eche of them was redy to Roland agrees.

4 fyght. Anone Rolland came to hym, and Feragus lyft The fight is renewed.

vp hys arme for to smyte Rolland moche malyceously, and Roulland sawe the stroke come vpon hym, and for to voyde it he launced hys staffe ayenst the swerde,

8 and wyth the stroke the staffe was cutte asondre ; and there-wythal the geaunt ranne to Rolland and had hym down vnder hym. Rolland, consyderyng that he myght not flee ne escape, he called in hys hert deuoutely the

12 name of Ihesus, and yelde^d hym to god^l & ¹to the vrygyn marye : & he anon repreysed^d suche strengthe & myȝt that he aroos a lytel, & myghtly repugned^d the Roland's staff is cut in two.

geaunte, in suche manere that he brought the geaunte

16 vnder hym, and thenne moche quycly and subtylly he sete hande on hys swerde, and pryched hym in the nauyll therwyth, & anone after aroos, and fledde al that he myȝt to thoost of charles. Anone as feragus felte

20 hym self hurt in that place, he cryed so hye & lowde, and stabs him in the navel.

that alle they that were in that place were aferd & abasshed^d of hys crye, & he sayd: "O Mahommet, my god, to whom I haue gynen my fayth, come & socour

24 me, for thou seest wel that I dye, and tarye noo lenger." The Saracens bear Ferragus away.

with that hydous voys the sarasyns camen to hym and bare hym awaye in theyr armes the best wyse they counde vnto hys lodgys ; and by that tyme rolland was

28 comen alle hool and sauf vnto Charles. And forthwyth Charles assaults the town,

the crysten men went Impetuously vpon the Sarasyns that bare Feragus, and entre^d in to the cyte, and so takes it and

moche dyd^d that the geaunt was dede, and after came

32 in to the pryon valyauntly, and took out Ogyer, releases his knights.

Regnault, Constantyn, Hoel, and the other pryonners.

¹ 1 vi.

¶ How Charles went to Cor¹dube, where the
kyng of the same place and' the kyng'
of Cybylle abode, for their destractyon :
ca. xiii 4

xiii 4

The kings of Cordova and Seville defy Charles,

who marches
against them,

The Saraeens, by a stratagem,

frighten the horses of the Frenchmen, and put them to flight.

Charles devises a remedy,

and the battle is renewed next day.

Of the standard of the Saracens.

After thys aforesayd, the kyng^t Corbude and the kyng^t of Cybylle sent to Charles that he shold come to cordube for to fyght. Anone as charles knewe it, he came thyder wyth all hys puyssance. And whan they were nygh for tassemble in bataylle, the sarasyns maad^t a moche subtyl and wylde thynge. For tofore the Sarasyns that were on horsback they had ordelyned men on fote, whyche had vysieres counterfeysted all black & rede, horned, and berded lyke deuylls, for to deceyue the cristen men ; and eueryche of these foot men bare in hys honde a lytel belle. And at thentre of the bataylle they began to sowne and make suche a bruyt, that assone as the horses of the cristen men sawe them so counterfayted and sowne their bellys, so Impetuously they began to flee, disrenge & to be aferde, in suche maner that no man might holde theyr horses, but by force they must flee and wythdrawe them. Charles deuyse^d a remedye, and on the morne he blynfelde the horses and couerd^t theyr eyen wyth clothes, And stopped^t theyr eres, to the ende that they shold not see ne ²here the sarasyns dysguysed^t & cuntrayfayted. And whan they came to bataylle in this manere they spared^t not, but slewen doun ryght, & put the sarasyns to deth tyl mydday ; but yet they were not al vaynquysshed^t, For they had a carte myghty and grete for to resyste and make grete empesshemement to theyr enemyes. And this engyne was drawen wyth viij oxen in the warre, & ther-vpon³ stode on hye the standard of theyr ensygne. & theyr custome was that on payne of deth noo persone shold retorne, ne goo

¹ I vi, col. 2. ² I vi, baek. ³ orig. thre-vpon.

aback for no thyng as long as the standard stode vp-
ryght. herof Charles was enformed, wherfore moche
puyssauntly he rode thurgh the sarasyns tyl he came to
4 the standard, and with Joyouse hys swerde he smote it Charles himself cuts down the standard, and the Saracens flee.
asondre: and anone as the sarasyns sawe that they
fledde, & mony of y^e paynyme were slain and dede.
& on the morne after the towne was delyuered vnto
8 Charles by the lord of the toun,¹ whyche conde not The town is taken, and all who will not become Christians put to death.
resyste hym, & charles was content to lete hym haue
hys lyf yf he wold be baptysed, and also the toun fo-
to holde it of hym and none otherwyse. And thenne
12 charles ordeyned in spayne certayn of hys barons to
kepe it, in suche wyse, that none durst assaylle it, ne
make to it warre. For he was ²alwaye vctoryous of
his enemyes by the puyssance that he ledde, and also
16 by dyscrecyon of hys persone, and pryncepally by the
grace of god, whyche faylled not in him and in hys
subgettess.

¶ How the chyrche of Saynt Iames was
20 halowed by tharchebishop Turpyn, & the
chyrches of spayne subgettess thereto, and
of other pryncipal chyrches: capitulo xiiij

Charles the noble emperour, after that he had
24 put and sette good estate and good warde in
spayne, he went to saynt Iames wthy fewe people.
And whan he was there, suche cristen men as he there
fond he rewarded them, & dyd to them moche good,
28 and he punysshed suche as were apostates, & other
maner of peple, suche as he fonde vntryewe and dys-
obeysaunte to holy chyrche, he lete sley and put to deth,
or he sente theym in to fraunce to do penaunce, and
32 bannysched them. And thenne thorugh al the cytees appoints bishops and monasteries,
of spayne he ordeyned bysshops, relygyous, and other

¹ orig. toun.² 1 vj. back, col. 2.

and ordains that all the bishops of Spain shall be subject to the bishop of St. James.

Tarpin consecrates the Church of St. James.

Charles appoints the payment of tithes to the church,

and orders that all consecrations and coronations shall take place there.

The body of St. John is deposited on the right side, and that of St. James on the left.

peple of the chyrche, & made many constytueyons,¹ synodals, and other ordynaunces vp-on the chyrche, and vpon other peple. And in thonour of saynt ²Iames he made constytueyons, and Instytuled that al the bysshops, ⁴ prynces, and kynge dwelling in spayne, shold all be subget to the bysshop of saynt Iames, and al they shold owe to that chyrche fydelyte, wyth al the peple of the londe of galyce. And accordyng to the same the archebisshop Turpyn wryteth in thys manere : "And I, Turpyn, archebisshop of Raynes, was in the same place, where the ordenaunces aforesayd were maad. And I, accompanied wyth ix honourable bysshops & of good ¹² lyf, at the reueste and postulacyon of Charles in the moneth of Iuyl, haue halowed, dedycated, blesseyd, and consecrated the chyrche of saynt Iames, & the auiter of the same. And after themne the kynge Charles gaf al ¹⁶ the londe of spayne & of galyce to that chyrche, And after ordeyned y^t evry hous of spayn and galyce shold gyue to the chyrche of saynt Iames iiiij pens of the money corraunt for annuel³ trybute. And by the ²⁰ moyen therof they shold be franke and free of seruytude. And for the honour of saynt Iames he establisched that the chyrche of the sayd place shold be sayd apostolyque for thexaltacion of the place. And ²⁴ more ouer, that the bysshopryches and specyal dynyte of alle spayne & of galyee, ⁴ and semblably the coronacions of kynges of al the contie, shold be crowned & sacred by the bysshop of saynt James, al in lyke wyse ²⁸ as it hath been tofore doon in Asye in the place of ephesym, for the honour of holy Saynt Iohan theangelyst, brother of saynt Iames, and sone of Zebedee. & thus Saynt Iohan was lodged in the ryght syde, And ³² Saynt Iames, hys brother, in the lyfte syde. Thenne wats accomplished the peticyon of their moder and of

¹ orig. constytueyons. ² 1 viij. ³ orig. amuel.
 1 viij, col. 2.

hyr two sones, gloryouse fiendes of our lord Ihesu
 Cryst, whan she desyrel that hyr two sones shold sytte,
 one on the ryght syde, and that other on the lyfte,
 4 whyche was thenne accomlysshed and termyned. &
 therfore in the world ben thre syges an^t chyrches
 pryncipal, whyche crysten men by ryght owen texalte,
 deffende and mayntene wth all theyr myght. ¶ That
 8 is to wete, the chyrche of Rome, The chyrche of Ephesym
 of saynt Iohan the euangelyst, And the chyrche of
 Saynt Iames in galilee. And yf ony demaunded the
 cause of these thre places an^t syges pryncipal of cris-
 12 tyente, the cause is ynough apparette. These thre
 places ben honoure^d pryncipally by cause the synners
 may haue theyr recours to them for tamende theyr
 lynes, and put ¹awaye theyr synnes, & obteyne pardun
 16 and forgynenes. Fyrst these iij appostles, that is to say,
 Saynt Peter, Saynt Johan, & saynt James, haue pre-
 eeded all the other in the compayne of Jhesu Cryst
 whan he was in thys worl^d, & haue ben called to hys
 20 secrete^s, and that haue moost contynued wth hym.
 Thus by good ryght, the places in whyche they haue
 conversed and contynued theyr lynes, and where theyr
 bodyes resten, oughten to be honoure^d and to be
 24 habundaunt in grace. ¶ Pryncipally, saynt Peter was
 the fyrst and moost hye, & preached at Rome, and there
 was martred & buryed; Therfor the chyrche of Rome
 is enhaunce^d & exalte^d aboue al other chyrches. &
 28 after saynt Johan, whyche sawe the secrete^s of god in
 his souper, & in ephesym he made the gospel ‘In
 principio erat verbum & cetera.’ And by his holy
 prechynge hath conuerted thynfydellys to the holy
 32 crysten fayth. And also saynt James, whyche had
 grete Payne in spayne and in galilee, for the honour of
 god as wel for hys holy lyf, for hys myracles, as for hys
 marterdom and hys sepulture, by good ryght ought the
 memorye of them to be thorugh the vnyuersal worl^d.¹

Thus the three chief churches in the world are those of Rome, Ephesus, and St. James,

because St. Peter, St. John, and St. James were the chief of the Apostles.

The church of Rome is the head, because there St. Peter is buried.

Ephesus is next, because there St. John wrote his Gospel,

and the church of St. James is third.

¹ I vii, back.

The second' parte of the thyrd book conteyneth x chapytres, & speketh of the treason made by ganellon, and' of the deth of the pyeres of Fraunce. 4

THow the treason was comprySED' by Ganelon, and of the deth of crysten men, & how ganellon is repreuyd by thanctour: capitulo primo 8

Marsurius and Bellegandus, kings of Saragossa, pretend to be ready to submit to Charles.

Charles sends Ganelon, requiring them to be baptized and pay tribute.

The Saracens send presents to Charles, and induce Ganelon, by

bribes, to promise to betray the French army.

IN this tyme were in Cezarye two kynges sarasyns moche myghty, that one was named marfurrius, and that other bellegandus, his brother, whyche were sente by thadmyral of babylonne in to spayne, the 12 whiche were vnder kynge Charles, & made to hym synges of loue and of subgectyon, and went by hys commaundement holyly and vnder the shadowe of decepeyon. Thumperour, seyng that they were not crysten, and for 16 to gete seygnourye ouer them, he sente for ganellon, in whome he had fyaunce, that they shold doo baptysye them, or ellis that they shold sende to hym trybute in sygne of fydelite of their contre. Ganellon, the traytre, 20 went thyder and dyd to them the message, and after that he had with them many deceyuable wordes, they sente hym ageyn to charles wyth xxx hors laden with gold & syluer, wthy clothes of sylke, ²and other 24 rychesse, & iiiij hondred hors laden with swetewyn, for to gyue to the men of Warre for to drynke; & also they sente, aboue thys, to them a thousand fayr wymmen sarasyns, in grete poynte and yonge of age: And al thys 28 in sygne of loue and of obeyssance. and after they gaf to ganellon xx hors charged wthy gold and syluer, sylkes, and other preeyosytes, that by hys moyen he shold brynge in to theyr hondes the companye of 32 charles yf he myght doo it.

¹ 1 viii. back. col. 2.

² 1 viiij.

Thenne ganellon was surpryzed wylth thys fals auaryce, whych consumeth alle the swetenes of charyte that is in persones, for to haue gold or syluer & other 4 rychesses, & made a pacte an^t couenaunte wylth the sarasyns for to betraye hys lord, hys neyghbours, & crysten brethern, & sware that he wold not faylle them of thenterpryse; but I merueylle moche of ganellon, 8 which made thys treason, wythoute to haue¹ cause coloured^t ne Juste.

Ganelon bargains
to betray Charles
and his fellow-
countrymen.

¶ O wycked Ganellon, thou were comen of noblesse, & thou hast doon a werke vylaynnous: thou were ryche 12 & a grete lord, and for money thou hast betrayed thy mayster. Emonge alle other thou were chosen for to goo to y^e sarasyns for grete trust: emonge al the other, and for the fydelite that was thought in ²the, thou 16 hast consented^t to trayson, and^t allone hast commysed^t Infydelite. Fro whens cometh thyn Inquytye, but of a fals wylle plunged^t in thabysme of auaryce? Thy naturel souerayn lord, Roullan^t, Olyuer, & the other, 20 what haue they doon to the? yf thou haue a wycked hate ayenst one persone, wherfore consentest thou to destroye thynnocentes? was there noo persone that thou louedest whan to al crysten men thou hast ben traytre? 24 was there ony reason in the, whan thou hast ben capytayn ayenst the fayth? what anayleth the prowesse that thou hast made in tyme passed, whan thyn ende sheweth that thou hast doo wyckednes? O fals auaryce, and^t 28 ardeur of concupisence! he is not the fyrst that by the which had ruined is comen to myscheyf. by the Adam was to god dysobeysaunt, and^t the noble cyte of Troye the graunde put to vttre ruyne and destrucyon. Thus in thys manere 32 ganellon brought gold and^t syluer, wyn, wymmen, and other rychesses, as tofore he had enterpryseed^t. Whan charles sawe al this, he thought that al way doon in good entent and^t equyte and^t wythout barat. The grete

for which he had
no reason but
avarice,

so many.

Ganelon presents
the presents to
Charles,

who falls into the
trap.

¹ orig. hane.

² I viij, col. 2.

He takes the gold
and silver himself,
and gives the
wine to his
knights.

Charles, per-
suaded by Gane-
lon, sends his
homewards.

Marsurius and
Bellegandus lay
an ambush in
Roncesvalles,

which falls on the
French.

The fight lasts all
day.

At night the
French soldiers
get drunk on the
wine.

Then 30,000 Sar-
acens fall on them,

lordes & knyghtes toke the wyn for them, and charles took onely the gold and syluer, & the moyen people took the hethen wymmen. Themperour ¹gaf consente to the wordes of ganellon, For he spake moche wysely, ⁴ and wrought in suche wyse that charles and alle hys hoost passed the porte of Cezarye; for ganellon dyd hym to vnderstonde that the kynges aforesayd wold become crysten and be baptysed, and swere fydelyte to ⁸ the emperor; And anone sent his peple tofore, and he caine after in the ryere warde, & had sente Roulland & Olyuer & the moost speyal of hys subgettes wyth a thousand[¶] fygthyng^t men, and were in Rounceuale. ¹² Thenne the kynges Marsuryus & Bellegandus, after the councel of ganellon, wthy fyfty thousand[¶] sarasyns were hydde in a wode, abydyng & awaytyng the frenssh men, & there they abode ij dayes and two nyghtys, & ¹⁶ deuyded theyr men in two partyes. In the first they put xx M sarasynz, and in that other they put xxx thousand[¶] sarasyns. ¶ In the vaunte garde of charles were xx thousand[¶] crysten men, whyche anone were ²⁰ assayled wthy xx thousand[¶] sarasyns, and maad warre in suche wyse that they were constrainyd to withdrawe them; For fro the mornynge vnto the houre of tyerce they seaced not to fygght and smyte on them, wherfore ²⁴ the crysten men were moche very, and had nede to reste theym. Neuertheles, they ²dronken wel of the good swete wyn of the sarasyns moche largely, And after many of them that were dronke went & laye by ²⁸ the wymmen sarasynoys, & also wthy other that they had brought oute of fraunce, wherfore the wylle of god was that they shold al be dede, to thende that their martyrdom & passyon myght be the eause of theyr ³² sauoyon & purgyng of their synne. For anone after the thyrti thousand sarasyns cam that were in the second batayl vpon the frenssh men soo Impetuovsly

¹ I viij, back.

² I viij, back, col. 2.

that they were al dede and slain, Except Roulland,¹ and stay all except
bauldouyn, & Thyerry. The other were slain and dede
and Roland, Thierry,
with speres: somme slain, somme rosted, and other
and Baldwin.

4 quartred, and submyseed to many tormentes. And whan
thys dyseomfyture was doon, Ganellon was with charles,
and also tharchebysshop Turpyn, whych knewe nothyng
of this werke so sorouful, sauf onely the traytre, whyche
8 supposed that they alle had be destroyed and put to
deth. ¶ Of the languysshe that was comynge to Charles,
he wiste not, how sone it was comyng.

¶ Of the deth of kyng Marfurius, and' how
12 Roulland' was hurt wyth foure speres mor-
tally after that al his peple were slain :
capitulo : ij

¹ **T**He bataylle, as I haue sayd tofore, was moche
16 sharpe. whan Rolland, whyche was moche wary,
retorneſt he recountred in hys waye a sarasyn
moche fyers & blacke as boyllid¹ pytche, and anone he
took hym at thentre of a wode & bonde hym to a
20 tree straytely, wythoute doyng to hym ony more harme,
and after took and rode vpon an hylle for to see the
hoost of the sarasyns, And the crysten men that were
fledde : & saw grete quantyte of paynynms. Wherfore
24 anone he sowned and blewe his horne of yuorye moche
lowde. And wyth that noyse cam to hym an hundred
erysten men wel arayed and habylled¹ wythoute moo.
And whan they were come to hym he retorneſt to the
28 sarasyn that was bounde to the tree, And Roulland
helde hys swerd ouer hym, sayeng that he shold deye,
yf he shewed to hym not clerely the kyng Marfuryus,
& yf he so wold do he shold not deye. The sarasyn
32 was contente, and sware, that he shold gladly do it for
to sauе his lyf ; & soo he brought hym wyth hym vnto

Roland captures
a Saracen,
whom he ties to
a tree,

and afterwards
compels to point
out to him Mar-
surius.

The Saracen
points out Mar-
surius,

whom Roland
kills.

The Saracens fly
before him.

All the French
are killed, except
three.

Bellegandus and
his men fly.

the place where they sawe the paynyme, and shewed to Rolland Whyche was the kyng, whyche rode vpon a rede hors, & other certeyn tokenes. And in thys poynt Roulland, reconfermed in hys strengthe, trustyng ¹ veryly in the myght of god and in the name of Ihesus, as a lyon entred in to the bataylle, & emonge them he encountered a sarasyn whyche was gretter than ony of the other, & gaf to hym so grete a stroke wyth ⁸ durandal vpon the hele that he clefte hym & hys hors in two partes, that the one parte went on one syde & that other on the other syde. wherfore the sarasyns were soo troublede and abasshed of the myght and puys- ¹² saunce of Rolland, that they alle fledde tofore hym, & thenne abode the kynge Marfuryus wyth a fewe folke. Thenne rolland sawe thys kyng, And wythoute fere came to hym and put hym to deth Incontynent. And alle ¹⁶ the hondred crysten men that were wyth Roulland in thys recountre were dolorously slain & put to deth, Except onely baulduyn and Thyerry, whyche for fere fledde in to the wode. But after that Rolland had ²⁰ slain kyng Marfuryus he was sore oppressyd, & in suche wyse deteyned that wyth foure grete speres he was smyton and wounded mortally, & beten with stoones, and hurte wyth darpes and other shotte mor- ²⁴ tally. And not withstandyng these greuous hurte & woundes, yet, maulgre al the sarasyns, he sprange out of the bataylle, and sauad hym self the best wyse he myght. ² Bellegandus, broder of Marfuryus, doubtyng ²⁸ that helpe & ayde shold come to the crysten people, retorneyd in to another contreye³, wyth hys peple moche hastely. And thempour Charles had thenne passed the montayne of Roneyuale, and knewe nothyng of ³² these thynges afore sayd, ne what had be doon.

¹ in j, col. 2.

² in j, back.

³ orig. coutreye.

¶ How Rolland deyed' holyly, after many mar-
tyres & orysons made to god ful deuoutely,
& of the complaynte maad' for hys swerde
durandal : capitulo ijij

Rolland the valyant, and champyon of the crysten fayth, was moche sorouful of the crysten men, by cause they had^t noo socours ; he was moche wery, 8 gretely abasshed, & moche afflebled in hys persone, for he had lost moche of his blode by his foure mortal woundes, of whyche the leste of them was suffysaunt for hym to haue deyed, and he had^t grete payne to gete 12 hym oute fro the sarasyns for to haue a lytel com- memoracion of god^t tofore or the soule shold^t departe fro his body. so moche he enforced^t hym, that he came to the fote of a montayne, nygh to the porte of Cezarye, 16 and brought hym self nygh to a rocke ryght by Ron- cyuale, vnder a tree in a fayr medowe. whan he sat down^t on the grounde he behelde his swerde, the best that euer was, named durandal, whyche is as moche to 20 say as gynyng an hard stroke, whyche was ryght fayr & rychely made : the handle was of fyn beryle, shynynge^t meruallously ; on hye it had^t a fayre crosse of gold, in the which was wryton the name of Ihesus. It was so 24 good^t & fyn, that sonner shold^t the arm^t faylle than the swerde. he took it out of y^e shethe & sawe it shyne moche bryght, and by cause it shold^t chaunge his maister he had moche sorowe in his hert, and wepyng, he sayd 28 in thys maner pytously : ¶ “O swerd of value, the fayrest that euer was, thou were never but fayr, Ne never fonde I the but good^t : thou art long^t by mesure ; Thou hast be so moche honoure^t, that alwaye thou 32 barest with the the name of the blessey^t Ihesus, sauour of the world^t, whyche hath endowed^t the wyth the power of god^t. who may comprehend^t thy value ? Alas ! Roland, although greatly exhausted by loss of blood, struggles nearly to Saragossa, where he lies down. He looks with grief on Durandal, and weeping, bids it farewell.

1 m j, back, col. 2.

Roland laments
over his sword
Durandal.

Determined that
no Saracen shall
ever have it,

tries to break it
on a rock,

but Durandal
cleaves the rock
without harm to
itself.

Roland blows his
ivory horn so hard
that it breaks,

and the veins of
his neck burst,

Charles hears the
horn and recog-
nizes it,

who shal haue the after me? who someuer hath the
shal never be vaynqnysshed, alwaye he shal hane good
fortune. Alas! what shal I more ouer say for the,
good swerde? many sarasyns haue ben destroyed by
the; thynfydels and myscreauntes haue ben slayn by
the; the name of god is exalte^d by the; by the is
made the path of ¹sauement. O, how many tymes
haue I by the auenged^e thyniurye made to god! O, 8
how many men haue I smyton and cutte a-sondre by
the myddle! O, my swerde, whyche hast ben my com-
fort and my Joye, whych never hurtest persone that
myght escape fro deth! O, my swerde, yf ony persone 12
of yoo value shold haue the & I knewe it, I shold deye
for sorowe." After that Rolland had wepte yuongh, he
had fere that somme paynym myght fynde it after his
deth, wherfore he concluded² in hym self to breke it, 16
and toke it & smote it vpon a rocke wyth alle hys
myght iij tymes wythoute hurtyng^t ony thynge the
swerde, and clefte the rocke to therthe, and coude in no
wyse broke the swerde. Whan he sawe the facyon and 20
coude do nomore thereto, he took his horne, whyche was
of yuorye moche rychely made, and sowned & blewe it
moche strongely, to the ende that yf there were ony
erysten men hydde in the wodes or in the waye of 24
theyr retournyng, that they shold come to hym tofore
they wente ony ferther, and to fore he rendred^e hys
sowle. Thenne, seyng^t that none came, he sowned it
ageyn by soo grete force and vertu, and so impetuously, 28
that the horne roof a sondre in the myddle, and the
vaynes of hys necke braken a sondre, and the ³synewes
of his body stratchededen. And that noys or voys by the
grace of god came to the eeres of Charles, whyche was 32
eyght myle fro hym. The Emperour, heeryng the
horne, he knewe wel that Rolland had blowen it, and
wold haue returned^e ageyn, but Ganellon, the traytre,

¹ m ij.

² orig. concluded.

³ m ij. col. 2.

whyche knewe wel alle the fayt, dystourned^t hym, in
sayeng^t that Rolland^t had blowen his horne for somme
wylde beest that he chaced^t for his playsyr; For ofte
4 tymes he wold blowe hys horne for lytel thynge, and
that he shold^t not double of nothyng.^t ¶ And thus he
dyd^t the kyng to vnderstonde that he byleued^t hym,
and^t made none other semblaunte. Nenertheles, Rol-
8 land, leyng^t in thys sorowe, he peased^t hys woundes also
wel as he myght, and^t stratched^t hymself on the grasse
to the fresshenes for to forgete hys thurst, whyche was
ouer grete.

but Ganelon per-
suades him that
Roland is hunt-
ing.

12 ¶ Here vpon Baulduyn, hys brother, came vnto hym, Baldwin comes to
whyche was moche heuy and^t sorouful for hys brother
Roulland^t, whyche was in that necessyte. And^t anone
Roulland^t sayd^t to hym, "my frende and^t my brother,
16 I haue so grete thurst that I must nedes deye yf I haue Roland asks for
not drynke to aswage my thurst." water, but Baldwin
can find none,

¶ Baulduyn had^t grete Payne in goyng here and^t there,
and^t coude fynde no water, and came to hym ageyn &
20 sayde he coude fynde none; and^t in grete anguysshie he
lepte² on Roullandes hors, and^t rode for to fetche charles,
For he knewe wel that rolland^t was nyghe hys deth.
Anone after came to hym Thyerry, due of Ardayne,
24 whyche wepte vpon Rolland^t so contynuelly that he myȝt Roland confesses
not speke, but with grete Payne Rolland confessyd hym himself,
and dysposed^t hym of hys consycence. neuertheles, that
same day Rolland^t had receyued the body of our lord,
28 For the custome was that the subgettess of Charles that
day whyche they shold^t fygght were confessyd & communed
wythoute faylling by men of the chyrehe, which alway
were wyth them. Rolland, whyche knew hys ende by and knowing his
32 entyer contemplacyon, hys eyen lyfte vp to heuen, & end is near,
hys hondes Ioyne^t, al stratched^t in the medlowe, began commandes him-
to say thus: "Fayre lord god, my maker, my redemour,
sone of the gloryous moder of conforte, thou knowest self to God,

¹ m ij, back.

² orig. lefte

myn entency[^vn], thou knowest what I haue doon for
 praying for mercy the bounte that is in the. by thy grete merey of
 whiche thou art enuyronned, by the grace whyche in
 the haboundeth, by the mertye of thy passyon, holy 4
 and bytter, with a good and humble hert I requyre the
 y^t tofore the thys day my faul¹tes, synnes, and^l ygnor-
 aunces may be pardouned^l to me, and^l take noo regarde
 to the trespaes that I haue doon to the; but beholde 8
 that I deye for the, and^l in the fayth that thou hast
 ordeyned. remembre that thou hengest on the tree of
 the crosse for the synnars, and^l so as thou hast redeme^d
 me, I beseche the that I be not loste. Alas! my maker 12
 god^l omnypotent, wylle I departed^l oue of
 my contreye for to defende thy name, and^l for to mayn-
 tene crystendom. ¶ Thou knowest that I haue suffred^l
 many anguysshies of hungre, of thurst, of hete, of colde, 16
 & many mortal woundes. And day and nyght to the,
 my god, I yelde me culpable; I mystrust not thy merey.
 thou art pyetous; thou art comen for the synnars; thou
 pardonest marye magdelene and the good theef on the 20
 crosse, by cause they retorne^d vnto the; they were
 synnars as I am; lyke as they dyd^l I erye the merey,
 & better yf I coude saye it. thou byheldest how Abra-
 ham was obeyssaunt to the of hys sone ysaae, wherfor 24
 he ferde moche the better; byholde me how I am obe-
 dyent to the commanndements of the chyrche: I byleue
 in the, I loue the aboue all other, I loue my neyghbour.
 ¶ O good^l lord^l, I beseche the to pardoune & forgyue 28
 alle theym that thys day ben deed^l in ²my companye,
 & that they may be saued^l. Also, my maker, I requyre
 the to take hede of the pacyence of Job, for which he
 was moche the better, that I deye here for thurst, and^l 32
 am allone. I am wounded mortally, and may not helpe
 my self, and^l take in pacyence alle the sorowe that I
 suffre, and^l am therwyth content whan it pleaseth the.

and for the
dangers and troubles
he has gone
through for the
Christian religion.

He prays for the
souls of his com-
rades.

¹ m ij. back. col. 2.

² m ij.

as al thys is trewe, pardone me, eomforte my spryte,
receyue my soule, and bryng me to reste perdlurable."

Whan Rolland had prayed thus, he sette hys handes
4 on hys body, holdyng hys flesshe, and after sayd thre
tymes, ¶ "Et in carne mea videbo deum saluatorem
meum," and after layed his handes on hys eyen, and
sayd, "Et oculi isti conspectari sunt, In thys
8 flesshe that I holde I shal see my sauour, and these
eyen shal beholde hym ;" and after he sayd that he
sawe thynges celestyal, whyche the eyen of mankynde
myght not see, ne the eeres here, ne the hert thynke,
12 the glorye whyche god hath maa^d redy to them that
loue hym ; and in sayeng, "In manus tuas, domine,
commendo spiritum meum," he layed hys armes vpon
hys body in maner of a erosse, & gaf and rendred hys
16 soule to god the xvij kalendes of Juyl.

¶ Of the vysyon of the deth of Roulland,
and' of the sorowe of Charles, and' how
he complayned' hym pyetously, & other
20 maters: capitulo iij

"**T**He day that Roulland the marter rendred hys
soule vnto god, I, Turpyn, archebysshop of
Raynes, was in the valeye of Rounceuale, tofore
24 charles the Emperour, and sayd masse for the soules
whyche were passed oute of thys world. And as I
was in the secrete of the masse I was rauysshed, and
herde the aungellys of heuen synge and make grete
28 melodye. And I wist not what it myght be, ne wher-
fore they soo dyd. And as I sawe the aungellys mounte
in to heuen on hye, I sawe comyngt a grete legyon of
knyghtes, alle blacke, ageynst me, the whyche bere a
32 praye, wherof they maa^d grete noyse and desraye.
whan they were tofore me in passyng, I sayd to them

and I asked them
who they were,

and they told me
of the deaths of
Marsurius and
Roland.

And I told the
vision to Charles,

and, while I was
speaking, came
Baldwin, and told
us of the slaughter
of our men.

And Charles
ordered the army
to return,

and he himself in
front found
Roland dead,

and he wept and
lamented over
him bitterly.

and demaunded who they¹ were, & what they bare.
One of the deuylls ansuerde & sayd, ‘we bere the
kyng Marfuryus in to helle, for long a-goon he hath
wel deserved it. And Roulland, your trumpette, wyth 4
Mychel thaungel & many other in his companye, is
brouȝt in to Joye perdurable to heuen.’ And as the
masse was fynysshed I² recounted to charles the vysyon
whyche I had seen, how thangellys of heuen bare the 8
soule of Roulland in to paradys, & the deuylls bare
the soule of a sarasyn in to helle. Thus, as I sayd
these wordes, baldwyn, whyche rode on Rollandes hors,
cam hastedly and said to charles how the erysten men 12
were dede & bytrayed, and how Rolland was hurte,
and in what estate he had lefte hym. Assone as he
had tolde thys, the erye was made thurgh thoost that
euery man shold retorne backe, & there was a grete 16
bruȝt. But themperour Charles, to whome thys mater
touched at the hert more than to ony other, anaunceid
hym for to goo thyder; and whan he came he fonde
Rolland expyrede, hys hondes in crosse vpon hys vysage 20
al stratched. And anone Charles fyl down vpon hym,
and began to wepe moche tenderly, smytyng hym on
his vysage, rendyng his clothes, & tormented hys body,
& myght not speke a grete whyle. whan he was re- 24
torneid to hym self by ardeur of dylectyon and exerecyte
of sorowe, he sayd in thys wyse: ‘O conforte of my
body, honour of frenssh men, suerd of Iustyee, spere
that myght not bowe, hawberck that myght not be 28
broken, helme of helthe, resemblyng to Indas³ maehri-
bens in prowesse, samblant to sampson⁴ in strengthe, &
to Absalon in beaulte! O ryght dere newew, fayr &
wyse, in batayl ryal! O destroyer of the sarasyns, de- 32
fendour of erysten men, walle of cleryge, staffe to
wydowes & of poure orphelyns, Relener of chyrelies,

¹ orig. w hothey. ² m iij, back. ³ orig. Indas

⁴ m iij, back, col. 2.

tonge of trouthe, Mouthe wythout lesyng, trewe in al
 Iugement, prynce of bataylle, conduytour of the frendes
 of god, Augmentour of the crysten fayth, & byloned
4 of euyer persone! Alas! why haue I brought the in
 to a straunge contreye? wherfor am I not dede with¹
 the? O Roulland, wherfor leuest thou me heuy &
 sorouful? helas! caytyf that I am, what shal I doo?
8 Alas! sorouful, whyther shal I goo? I praye to almyghty
 god that he conserue the; I requyre thangellis of heuen
 that they be in thy compayne; I requyre the marters,
 of whom thou art of the nombre, y^et they wyl receyue
12 the in to the Ioye perdurable. alway I shal remembre
 the wepyng, alway I shal sele thy departyng, as dawyd
 dyd of natan & of absalon. Alas! Rolland, thou goost
 in to lyf & Ioye perdurable, & leuest me in thys world
16 sorouful. Thou art in heuen in consolacion, & I am in
 wepynges & tribulacions. Alle the world is enyl con-
 tent of thy deth, & thangellys hath brought the in com-
 forte.' In thys manere and otherwyse Charles bewept
20 and² sorowef his newew Roulland. And he made hys
 tentys to be sette vp there, for to lode there al that
 nyght, & dyd² doo make grete fyres and² grete lyghtes
 for to watche the body of Roulland; & after he dyd²
24 do enoynte hys body with myrre & baulme and other
 thynges aromatiques, for to conserue the body from enyl
 sauour; and his obsequyes were made, & hys entyer-
 ment with grete prayers, offrynges, & almessenys in grete
28 contemplacion."

And he lamented
over him as David
over Absalom,

and, after, caused
his body to be
embalmed.

¶ How Olyuer was founden slayn, and' of the
 deth of the sarasyns, & of the deth of
 ganellon, whyche was hydous: capitulo v

32 **T**N the morne erly, charles came where the bataylle
 had been with his peple, and there they fonde the next morning the
body of Oliver is
found,

¹ orig. thith.

² m iiiij.

fastened to four stakes,
and flayed.

whyche was fastned^t to foure stakes with iiiij cordes & sharply bounden, and fro the necke to the nayles or vngles of his feet and handles he was flayn ; he was al to-hewen, and shotte & hurte wyth speres, sharp darteres, 4 quarellys, & arowes, & beten wyth staues ; he was al to-faissched^t and broken. wherfore the crye of many of the erysten began to renewe for the hydous deth of Olyuer, and of many other. wherfore Charles ¹sware by god^t almyghty that he wold never cesse tyl that he had founden the sarasyns, & forthwyth he went wyth his hoost & noblesse. and by cause that the paynyme were moche² ferre fro them, god shewed^t a fayr myracle ; 12

Charles vows he will never cease till he has avenged the death of his men.

By a miraicle the day continues till he overtakes the Saracens, and

slays 4000 of them.

Then Charles enquires who was the traitor.

Thierry accuses Ganelon.

Charles appoints a knight to fight for Ganelon.

Thierry slays him,

For that same day was prolonged thre dayes longe wythout that the sonne remeued^t ony thyng. and they fonde the sarasyns by a ryuer named Ebra in Cezarye, whyche rested them, and ete & dranke at theyr ease, 16 wythout doubtyng of ony thyng. and charles & hys people came vpon them so Impetuously that in a litel whyle there were slain iiiij M sarasyns, and the other fledde & saued them self. Thenne thempour, seyng 20 that he myght goo no ferther, returned to rounceuale, And began tenquyre vpon the fayt of trayson, and who had doon it, & what man. Thenne he was enformed that Ganellon had made it, and that was the comune oppynyon of them alle. And emonge alle other Thyerry accused^t and appeled^t hym of the treason, and that he wold^t fyght in the quarel. ¶ For Thyerry had^t knowledge by the sarasyn that rolland had bounden to a tree. 28

The kyng^t charles ordeyned^t a kuyght for ganellon, named pynable, to fyȝt ayenst thyerry. And whan these ij champyons were in the lystes, ³anone pynalle was slayne by Thyerry ; and as wel by thys moyen as 32 by other, it appere^t clerely that ganellon had bytrayed^t them. wherfore the emperor Charles, wythoute goyng ony ferther, dyd to take iiiij grete horses, & made to sytte

¹ m iiiij, col. 2.

² orig. mocbe.

³ m iiiij, back.

on them ijij stronge men, & bonde ganellon to two horses by his ij handes, and bonde the two feet to the other ij horses, & made hym to be drawen with the one 4 hors toward y^e eest, & that other toward the weste, that other ayenst the southe, and that other toward the north. In this maner eche of the hors drewe forth his quarter of the body of the parte whyche he was 8 bounden vnto.

and Charles
has Ganelon
drawn in pieces
by horses.

¶ How after the thynges afore sayd' charles
gaf thankynge & preysynges to god &
saynt Denys, & of the constytucions that
12 he made in fraunce: capitulo vj

WHAN the execucion was doon of Ganellon and^t executed, charles & hys people cam in to the place where the frensshe men had^t be slayn, & 16 bygan to knowe theyr parents, frendes, & lordes, for to bere them in to halowed place. they caryed somme vpon theyr horses; Other salted^t them wyth salte, for to mayntene them to bryng them in to theyr contreye;

The French army
attend to their
dead comrades:

20 Other buryed^t them in the same place, & ¹somme bare theym on their sholdres. Somme emmoyned^t them wyth oylle and myrre, & somme wyth baulme the best wyse they myght. Nenertheles, there were two cemytoyres

some they bury,
others they em-
balm and take
with them.

24 or chircheyerdes, ryght deuoute & pryncypally halowed^t emonge the other, whych were saered^t and blessyd^t wyth viij bysshops. That one of the cemytoyres was in erles, and that othe[r] in burdegale. & Saynt maxymyen of

Two cemeteries
are made, one at

28 ays, Saynt Trophyn of arles, poule of nerbonne, Saynt Saturyn of Tholouse, saynt fontyn of poytyers, saynt Mareel of lymoges, and saynt Eutrope of xayntes had^t saered^t and halowed^t them. In whyche places were 32 buryed^t the moost party of the frensshe men slayn and destroyed^t in rounctynale. Themperour dyd do bere

Arles, the other
at Bordeaux,

where the French
dead are buried.

¹ m iiii. back, col. 2.

Roland is buried at Blois, at the Church of St. Roman.

Oliver and others are buried at Bordeaux.

Charles gives all the land for seven miles round to the church of St. Roman, for the

sake of Roland,

and appoints masses for the dead.

At Arles are buried Samson, Naymes, and others.

Constantine's body is taken to Rome.

rolland, the gloryous marter, vpon two mules couerd wyth clothes of sylke, honourably vnto bloye, & in the chyche of saynt Romayn, the whyche he had edefyed and founded wthy chanoones regular, he dyd rychely 4 burye hym, and wthy grete magnyfycenee ; & on hye, ouer his sepulture, he dyd do sette hys swerde, and at hys feet he dyd do sette his horne of yuorye. Not wythstondyng, after, the horne was taken aweye and 8 borne to Saynt Seueryn at bourdeaws. At bourdeaulx were buryed olyuer & gaudeboy,¹ kynge of Fryse, Ogyer, kynge of denmark ; and Crestayn, kynge of bretayne ; Garyn, due of Lorayne, and many other. As for Eafe- 12 rus, kynge of bourdeaulx ; Euglerius, kynge of guyan ; lambert, kynge of bourges, and galerus reygnaut, with v M other, charles gaf xij C vnches of siluer of money that tyme courant, & as moche of talents of gold, & 16 many robes and mete to poure peple, for sauacyon of their soules. and al the londe seuen myle aboue he gaf to the chyche of saynt Romayn, and maad it subgette to that relygyon. And al bloye, wthy thappertenantes 20 and the see ayenst the sayd territorye, he gaf semblably to the sayd chyche for charyte & loue of Rolland, and ordeyned it so for euer. and on the day of their passyon he ordeyned that in the same place shold euery 24 yere perpetually xxx poure men be fedde and clothed competently, and thyrti messys songen for them that there were buryed and entyered, and for alle them that were dede in spayne for the erysten fayth. In Arles 28 was buryed the counte of lengres ; samson, due of bourgoyne ; Naymes, due of bauyere ; Arnold de bellandus, and Albert bourgoynon, and other fyue knyglichtes, wthy ten thousand other moyen peple. Constantyn, pro- 32 uoste of ²Rome, was borne to Rome wthy many other Romayns, and for y^e remedye of theyr soules themperour gaf in arles for almessen xij C vnches of syluer

¹ in v.

² in v, col. 2.

and xij talentes of gold, whye he was worth a grete somme of gold & syluer courant in that tyme.

¶ How Charles wente in to Almayne, where
4 he deyed' holyly, And of hys deth shewed to Turpyn, and' of hys buryeng' Imperyally: capitulo vij

- 8 After the thynges afore sayd, Themperour charles Charles goes to Vienna,
and Turpyn, wyth the other, came and passed by
vyenne; & there Turpyn tharchiebysshop, a moche
holy man, abode, for he was very and moche feble^d
of the Payne that he had had for the fayth in spayne.
- 12 and Charles wente to parys, & anone after he assemale^d
al the nobles and the moost grettest lordes of hys con-
trye, for to establissh certayn ordynaunces, and for to
gyue thankynges to god & to saynt Denys of the vye-
16 torye that he had obteyned in his tyme vpon the sara-
syns, paynmys, & myscreantes. And after that he
had thanked god and saynt denys, and to his chyrche
fast by parys, lyke as saynt Poule thappostle and saynt
20 Clement the pope had ¹doon in tyme passed, he maad^d He ordains that all kings of France shall be crowned at St. Denis,
constytucion entycere that al the kynges of Fraunce
present & to come shold obeye to the pastour that shold
be for y^e tyme of that chyrche, and that neuere kyng^t
24 shold be crowned wythoute the pastour of that chyrche,
ne the bysshop of parys shold not be receyued at Rome and all bishops should be subject to the priest of that church.
wythout hys consent & comandement. And he gaf
many rychesses to y^t chirche, & in token that fraunce
28 was gyuen to that chyrche of saynt denys, he ordeyned^d Also that every person should pay to it yearly four pence,
that euery possessour in al y^e nacyon of fraunce shold
gyue & be bounden to gyue to the chyrche of saynt
denys, for to edefye & augmente it, iiiij pens of money
32 courant yerely & perpetuellly, & al they that shold gyue
it wyth a good wylle, yf they were of bonde & serue

¹ in v, back.

and any bondmen
who paid this
should be free.

He prays for the
souls of his
soldiers.

St. Denis ap-
pears to him,

and declares that
all who pay the
annual pence to
his church, shall
have forgiveness
of their sins.

And this payment
was called the
Frank of St.
Denis,

whence the coun-
try has its name
of France.

condycion, he wold they shold be franke & free of condycyon. And after amone these thynge ordeyned, he went & came tofore the body of saynt denys moche deuoutely, & there he prayed the glorious saynt that he wold praye vnto our lord Ihesu Cryst, that alle they y^t were dede of the cristen fayth in the tyme that he had regned that they myght be saued, and that the Payne that they had taken myȝt be to them the crowne of martyrdom in the glorie perdurable; & in semblable wyse he prayed for al them that wold¹ paye gladly the pens aforesayd to his chyrche. As god wold, that nyght folowyng saynt denys appyred to hym, & sayd to hym in thy manere: “O kynge, vnderstonde me, knowe thou, that I haue made prayer to god, my maker, & he hath graunted that alle they that haue been ayenst the sarasyns with the haue pardon of al theyr trespasses, & that wyllyngly shal paye the penyes for the edefyacyon of my chyrche & augmentyng the seruyce of god, they shal haue amendment of lyf and pardon of theyr synnes.” This vysyon on the morne themperour recounted to hys peple, lyke as he had herd, by cause they shold wyth a good wylle pay the penyes that he had ordeyned; & he that gaf it was called the franke of saynt denys, by cause that he was free and quyte of al seruage by the commandement of the kyng. After came the custome that that londe whyche was called Gallia loste hys name, & was called fraunce, as it is named at thys day, & Fraunce is as moche to say as free of al seruage anenst al peple; and therfore the lordes of Fraunce for this cause emonge al cristen men owen to be honoure^d & praysed.

¹ in v. back, col. 2.

¶ The recapitulacion of alle thys werke, & of
his deth at Acon, & of hys sepulture:
capitulo viij

THe kyng Charles contynued gloriously his lyf
in vertuouse operacyons, And whan he felte the
declyne of hys lyf he went vnto Acon, where he
had tofore doon moche good, & enobled a chyrshe of
our lady the rounde, the whyche he dyd do make, and
gaf thereto grete tresour of relyques of bodyes of sayntes,
of gold & syluer, of clothes of sylke, & other precyo-
sytees mernayllous, and there he deyed in the yere of
12 hys age lxxij. & for the magnyfycence of hys werkes
he was called charles the grte; & he had iij sones
thenne lyuyng, of whom the fyrist was named Charles,
the second Pepyn, & the thyrd Lowys; & also he had
16 iij daughters, that one was named Rotrudys, that other
berga, & the thyrly gylla. & whan he knewe that he
myght noo longer lyue, hys sone lowys, whome he had
ordeyned for special loue kyng of guyan, he lefte to
20 hym the mageste Imperyal. For to knowe the holynes
& the gloryous ende of Charles, & how he was sauēd in
heuen, and renomed an holyman, The deuoute Turpyn,
archebisshop of Raynes, sayth in this manere, “I Tur-
24 pyn, archbisshop of Raynes, was in vyenne in the
chyrshe tofore thaulter, & was rauysshed in sayeng the
psalm, ‘**Deus in adiutorium meum intende.**’ I sawe
a companye of blacke peple lyke Ethyopyens, whych
28 were in quantyte Innumerable, whyche went toward
lorayne; and I sawe one tofore hys felowes, & I de-
maunded hym whyther al they wente. the whyche,
beyng constrainyd to ansuere, sayd, ‘we alle goo to
32 Acon to the dethe of Charles, whyche lyeth a-dyeng.
And we wyl see yf we may haue hys soule for to bere
in to helle to perpetuel dampnacyon.’ Thenne I sayd

Charles retires to
Acon,
where he dies at
the age of 72,
leaving three sons
and three daugh-
ters.

His youngest son,
Louis, succeeds
him.

Turpin, at Vienna,
sees a vision of
devils,

who tell him of
the death of
Charles, and that
they mean to have
his soul.

¹ m vj. ² orig. adiutorium. ³ m vj, col. 2.

to hym, ‘I adiure the by the vertue of the name of our Lord Ihesu cryst that, wythoute fayllyng, after that ye haue doon, that thou retorne by me.’” Anone after, 4
The devils return, or he coude fynysshe hys psalme, the deuylls cam 4
 retournyng ageyn in the same ordre that they wente.
 “And thenne I sayd to hym that I had spoken to by-8
 fore, ‘what haue ye doon there as ye haue been?’
 that same deuyll ansuerd, that ‘James of galyce, frende 8
 to charles, hath ben moche contrarye to vs, for whan
 we were redy for to receyue hys soule, and had egally 12
 departed his good dedes and his euyl, he brought so
 many stones & tymbre of chyrches, whyche he had doo 12
 make in the name of hym, that his good dedes sur-
 mounted moche his euyl dedes, wherfore we myght
 haue noo thynge ne parte;’ & thys sayd, the deuyll 16
¹vanysshed awaye,” & soo he loste hys vysyon. Thus 16
 Charles, in the moneth of feueryere, rendred his soule 20
 to god holyly. For after that he returned fro spayn he
 dyd but languysshe & appaire in hys body toward hys 24
 deth; & in hys ende he ordeyned many almesses, &
 to say many masses & psaulters. And the vysyon that 24
 the gloryous archebysshop Turpyn sawe, is sygnys-
 cacion that he whyche maynteneth and edefyeth 28
 chyrches in thys present world, that he maketh pre-
 paracyon of hys syege in heuen. His sepulture was
 moche honourable emonge al the sepultures of the world, 32
 noble and ryche excellently, and so fayr that it myȝt
 not be amended. and ouer hys tombe was maad an 32
 arche of gold & syluer and of preeuous stones, com-
 prysed by grete scyence. & thyder came Leo the pope,
 accompanied wyth prynces Romayns, archebysshops,
 bysshops, Abbottes, Dukes, Erles, and many other 36
 lordes, and dyd do make a fayre representacion of the
 body of Charles, clad rychely and Imperially with a
 fayre crowne of gold sette on his hede, & satte vpon

Charles is buried
with great magni-
ficence,
in a tomb over

which was set a
figure of himself,
crowned and
seated on his
throne.

¹ m vj. back.

a chayer of gold moche fayre and shynyng^t, and resem-
bled wel a notable Iuge lyuyng. and they sette vpon
his knees notably the texte of the four gospelles in
4 fayre letters ¹ of gold, & wyth the ryȝt hande he helde
the lettre, & in the lyfte hande he helde the ceptre
Imperial, moche ryche; & by cause the heed^t shold not
enclyne to eyther syde, hit was vnderset wyth a chayne
8 of gold & susteyned^t. And the crowne that was on hys
heed^t caught to the arche, whiche was al aboue wel made,
& the conduytes of the sepulture were replenysshed
with al good odours aromatyques & precyous, and after
12 closed^t & shette moche subtylly, & honourably kepte,
as it was wel worthy for to be doon.

¶ Thexcusacyon of thauctour. ix

16 **H**is werke, acompllysshed to the playsyr of god^t
tofore wryton, conteyneth thre booke, by the
chapytres deuyded^t, as it appereth openly to the
reders, and I haue made them thre, after that I haue
compryse^t in the separacyon and deuydung^t of the
20 matyer. Of whyche the fyrt book speketh of the be-
gynnynge^t of fraunce, and of the fyrt crysten kyng^t of
fraunce, whyche was named^t Cloys by the moyen of his
wyf clotildys, in descendyng to kyng^t Pepyn, fader of
24 themperour Charles, In the honour of whome thys book
is composed^t for the moost parte; to the whyche Pepyn
the lygnage of ²kyng^t Cloys took an ende in successyon
of the Royalme of Fraunce. And the sayd fyrt book
28 sayth, more ouer, how Charles was nourrysshed^t, of hys
corpulence, of hys etyng^t, of hys strengthe, of hys sey-
ence, & other werkes of magnyfycenee. The second^t
book speketh of the bataylle that Olyuer dyd ayenst
32 Fyerabras, the meruayllous geaunte, sone of ballant,
Admyral of spayne, a puyssaunt kyng^t; & al the fyrt
parte of the second book is attrybuted^t to noble olyuer,

¹ m vj, back, col. 2.

² m viij.

On his knees
were placed the
Gospels,

and in his left
hand the sceptre.

This work con-
tains three books,
divided into
chapters.

The first book
tells of the begin-
ning of France,

and of the youth
of Charles.

The second book,
of the duel be-
tween Oliver and
Fierabras.

The third book
treats of the con-
quest of Spain by
Charles,

of the treason of
Ganelon,

and the death of
Charles.

and in the honour of hym. After ye shal fynde how the peres of fraunce were deteyned in Aygremore and put in surete, & after sauued fynably by florypes, the curtoys daughter of the sayd ballant; And the holy 4 relyques recouured, and other maters of grete meruaylles. The iij book speketh how, by reuelacyon of saynt Iames, charles went and conquerd spayne & galyce, where as he dyd operacions vertuous, & made 8 constytucyons of sauacyon, wyth many bataylles doon by hym and hys subgettis; and fynably of the trayson of Ganellon, by the whyche the deth of Rolland was pyetous, the deth of Olyuer dolorouse, and of the other 12 peres of crysten knyghtes slayn & dede. And fynably the deth of Charles thempour, as tofore is sayd and wryton. and ¹after that ony persone wyl here or rede of thys matere, the table made atte begynnnyng shal 16 shewe it to hym lyghtly, yf it be hys playsyr to here or rede of y^e werk in thys book composed.

¶ Thenuoye of thauctour: ca.

x

AS I hane sayd at the begynnnyng of thys present 20
werke, the escryptures and feates somme hane
ben reduced in wrytyng for to be in memorie,
to the ende that they that hau doon wel, be to vs
ensampte in ensyewyng and folowyngh them, & they 24
that hau doon euyl may be cause to rewle our lyf for
to come to the porte of helthe. For the comune vnder-
standingyng is more contente to reteyne parables and
examples for the ymagynaacion locall, than to symple 28
auctorite, the whyche is reteyne by vnderstandingyng,
and also semblably thystoryes spekyng of our lord
Ihesu cryst, of hys myracles, & of his vertuous sub-
gettis, euery man ouȝt gladly to here and retenne them. 32
& it is so, that at the requeste of the sayd venerable

This work I have
written to be a
good example to
all,
how to rule their
lives.

And I have made
it at the request

¹ m viij. col. 2.

man to fore named^t, Maister henry bolounyer, chanoone of lausanne, I haue been Incyted^t to translate & reduyse in prose in to Frengshe the mater tofore reduced^t.

of Master Bolou-
meyer,
Canon of Lau-
sanne.

4 moche as toucheth the fyrist & the thyrd ¹book I haue taken & drawen oute of a book named myrroure hystoryal for the moost parte; & the second^t book I haue onely reduced it out of an olde romauice in frensshe.

The first and third
book I have trans-
lated from the
*Speculum His-
toriale*, and the
second from an
old French
romance.

8 And without other Informacyon than of the same book, I haue reduced^t it in to prose, substancialyall wythout faylling, by ordynauice of chapytres & partyes of the sayd book, after the mater in the same conteyned.

12 And yf in al thys book I haue mesprysed or spoken otherwyse than good^t langage, substancialyall ful of good vnderstanding to al makers & clerkes, I demaunde correxyon and amendment, and^t of the defaultes par-

I pray all who
may find a fault
in it to pardon it,

16 don. For yf the penne hath wryton euyl, the heit thought it never, but entended to say wel; & also my wytte & vnderstanding, whyche is ryght lytel, can not vttre ne wryte thys matere withoute errorur. Neuer-

and attribute to
my want of learn-
ing, not my good
will.

20 theles, who so vnderstandeth wel the lettre shal wel compryse myn enteneyon, by which he shal fynde nothyng but moyen for to come to saluacion. To the whyche may fynably come alle they that wyllyngly

24 rede, or here, or do thys book to be redde. Amen.

¶ And by cause I, Wylliam Caxton, was desyred & requyred by a good^t and synguler frend of myn, Maister wylliam daubeny, one of the tresorers of the 28 Iewellys of the noble & moost crysten kyng, our naturel and sonerayn lord^t, late of noble memorie, kyng Edward the fourth, on whos soule Ihesu haue mercy. To reduce al these sayd hystoryes in to our Englyssh^t tongue, I haue put me in deuoir to translate thys sayd 32 book, as ye heretofore may se al a-longe and pl[a]yn, prayeng^t alle them that shal rede, see, or here it, to And I pray all to

And I, William
Caxton, have, at

the instance of
Sir W. Daubeny,

translated this
book into English

¹ m viij. back.

² m viij. back. col. 2.

excuse my rude
translation, and
forgive the faults
they may find.

And this work I
finished on the
18th June, in the
year of our Lord,
1483.

pardon me of thys symple & rude trans[l]acyon and
reducyngt, bysechyngt theym that shal fynde fante to
correecte it, & in so doyng they shal deserue thankynges,
& I shal praye god for them, who brynge them and me, 4
after this short and transytorie lyf, to euerlastyngt
blysse. Amen. the whyche werke was fynysshed in
the reducyng of hit in to englysshe, the xvij day of
Iuyn, the seeond yere of kyng Rychard the thyr, 8
And the yere of our lord MCCCC lxxxv, And enprynted
the fyrist day of decembre, the same of our lord, & the
fyrist yere of kyng Harry the seventh.

¶ Explicit per William Caxton.

N O T E S.

- Page 1, line 12. "hye hystoryes :" Fr. *histoires haultaines*.
- p. 1, l. 13. Fr. *l'entendement commun est mieulx content a retenir pour la ymaginacion localle, a la quelle il est subzmis*.
- p. 1, l. 15. "gladly :" Fr. *volontiers*.
- p. 2, l. 9. Fr. *peult estre que je ieusse bien este informe*.
- p. 2, l. 11. See *Introduction*.
- p. 2, l. 27. The "Book of the noble Hystoryes of Kynge Arthur and of certeyn of his Knygthes, reduced into English by Syr Thomas Malory, Kuyght, and by Mr. William Caxton, deuyded into xxi booke, chapytred and emprynted in the abbey westmestre ;" was printed also in 1485, folio. It is a book of the greatest rarity. There is a perfect copy in Earl Jersey's library, at Osterley Park, and an imperfect one, wanting four leaves, in the library of Earl Spencer. It was reprinted by Wynkyn de Worde in 1498, folio, and an unique copy of this reprint is also in Earl Spencer's library. "The last Siȝe and Conqueste of Jherusalem," which gives the account of Godfrey of Bullogne, appeared in 1481.
- p. 16, l. 22. "the peopple is boyston & furions, &c. :" Fr. *cellay peopple est austere et furieulx, et, que pis est, sans memoire de dieu*.
- p. 17, l. 16. "guarysshed and hool :" Fr. *garg*.
- p. 17, l. 33. "and wepte—sayd :" Fr. *plourer moult largement en grant pitie va dire, &c.*
- p. 18, l. 11. Fr. *Pour quoy toy comme vray dieu et seigneur ie te requiers, comme ie ne desire croire qu'en toy fermement : par ta haultaine puissance ie demande*.
- p. 19, l. 27. [he] : the prounou is unnecessarily inserted here : throughout the book the subject is constantly omitted in secondary clauses, where the person or thing spoken of is the same as in the principal sentence. See *Siȝe off Melayne*, l. 27, and note.
- p. 19, l. 31. "autentykly :" Fr. *auctentiquement*.
- p. 19, l. 32. "freutes :" clearly an error for "fontes :" the Fr. reads, *composer baptitoires couenablement*.
- p. 21, l. 23. "put hym self iu relygyon :" that is, became a recluse, devoted himself to religion : Fr. *se mist en religion*.
- p. 26, l. 11. "cont[r]ye :" Fr. *patis*.
- p. 26, l. 24. "wel a poynte :" Fr. *bien a pointe*.

- p. 27, l. 4. "as touchyng the pytance :" as regards his share at dinner : Fr. *quant a la pitance*.
- p. 27, l. 12. "ij hors shoen :" the Fr. original adds, *venans de la forge*.
- p. 29, l. 1. "to hym :" we should here insert "he doeth," according to the reading of the French original, *on fait*.
- p. 29, l. 12. "frequente \ddot{e} :" constantly studied : Fr. *frequentoit*.
- p. 29, l. 26. "moeche ample & boystous :" Fr. *moult ample et robuste*.
- p. 29, l. 30. "he ete not for the moost parte, &c. :" Fr. *ne mengoit pour le plus que de quatre metz, si non de la venoison rostie*.
- p. 32, l. 21. "be enclosed in Iustyee :" Fr. *soies enclos en iustée*.
- p. 33, l. 19. The original French runs: *ilz se vont trouuer en vng grant bois quon ne pouoit passer a mains de deux iours encors a grant paine, et charles le pensoit passer en vng iour*. The meaning evidently is that the wood was so extensive that they could not pass through it in two days, and even then with great difficulty.
- p. 34, l. 1. Psalm cxix. 35.
- p. 34, l. 15. "after in the same contreye, &c. :" Fr. *depuis sont veus ces oyceaulx*.
- p. 34, l. 24. In the original, *Constan'ynople*.
- p. 37, l. 1. "moment." The original reading is *au mouvement quon tira*. The French *mouvement* is evidently a mistake.
- p. 37, l. 30. "And it was ordeyned, &c. :" Fr. *il est ordonne que ou moy de iuing a ays la cite tous les ans on deust venir reoir, &c.*
- p. 38, l. 23. "after that I shal mowe, &c. :" Fr. *selon que ien pourray concepuoir*.
- p. 39, l. 4. "of rome :" orig. *a rome*.
- p. 39, l. 9. "adionste :" add. Fr. *adioindre*. On the word *adjust*, as representing the two Latin forms *adjuctare* and *adjustare*, see Dr. Murray's paper in the *Philological Society's Transactions*, 1880.
- p. 39, l. 10. "I have not founde in the book competent :" this, unintelligible in itself, is explained by the original French, which reads, *ou liure competent*, the last word meaning containing.
- p. 39, l. 20. See the different lists of the douzeperes, as given in the various romances in my note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 259, where the list given as that found in the *Sowdane of Babylone* should be read as that of the original French version in the Grenville copy, 10531. The names given in the *Sowdone* will be found in Dr. Hansknecht's Introduction to his edition of that romance, p. xxvii. For the names in *Roland* and *Ouel*, see my edition, note to l. 688.
- p. 40, l. 30. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 78.
- p. 41, l. 13. "as euyl and \ddot{e} olde :" Fr. *comme mauvais viellart*.
- p. 41, l. 33. "that I be fugytyf :" Fr. *je soie fugi*.
- p. 42, l. 22. "quasi hurt, &c. :" hurt almost to the death.
- p. 42, l. 27. These exploits are related in the *Sowdone of Babylone*, pp. 4 *et seq.*
- p. 46, l. 19. "cremenr :" in the original the same.

- p. 46, l. 20. “as,” read [h]as[t]: Fr. *qui as*.
- p. 48, l. 14. “At nede a man knoweth hys frende.” See the *Gesta Romanorum*, p. 131.
- p. 48, l. 20. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 988.
- p. 48, l. 28. “took to hym.” The original adds, *qui estoit estachie a dis riches clour de fin or*.
- p. 49, l. 22. “lodgyee :” Fr. *logis*.
- p. 50, l. 3. “onte of mesure :” so outrageous in his conduct and language. “At thys hour, &c. :” Fr. *de cette heure ie vous otroie*.
- p. 50, l. 18. “Andrewe :” Fr. *Andrieu*, does not appear again in the present or any other account of the treason at Roncesvalles, so far as I am aware.
- p. 50, l. 21. Compare the corresponding passages in *Sir Ferumbras*, ll. 310 *et seq.*, and the notes.
- p. 50, l. 33. “secretly :” Fr. *comme entre ses dens*. Cf. *Sir Ferumbras*, 322.
- p. 51, l. 24. “the kyng had gynen to hym hys gloue in sygne of lyeence.” The usual mode of giving permission to undertake a duel: compare *Roland and Otuvel*, l. 1366, and the *Song of Roland*, l. 482, and notes.
- p. 51, l. 31. “where shal I become :” what will become of me? See Prof. Skeat’s note to *P. Plowman*, B. v. 651.
- p. 52, l. 22. “he setted nought by hym :” took no thought or heed of him.
- p. 53, l. 9. “or :” I have corrected the reading in accordance with the original, which has *ou*.
- p. 54, l. 18. Compare *Chanson de Rolund*, 376. “*Jamais n’iert hum qui encuntere lui vuillet.*”
- p. 55, l. 26. “thou art departeſt of a lowe hous :” Fr. *tu es bien de basse main party*.
- p. 56, l. 12. “of the rounde table.” An addition of the translator.
- p. 56, l. 20. “I trowe thou be hurte.” Not in the original.
- p. 56, l. 27. “flagons ;” *barilz*; “botelles” in the *Sowdan*, l. 1185: “costrel” in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 510, on which see note and Introd., p. xii; at p. 60, l. 6, below, they are called “barylles.”
- p. 57, l. 21. “Termagaunt :” Fr. *Taluagaunt*.
- p. 57, l. 30. “goddes :” the reading has been corrected on the authority of the original, which has *dieule*.
- p. 58, l. 28. “lether of arabye :” Fr. *cuir de capadoce*.
- p. 59, l. 3. “to the regarde of hys persone :” *i. e.* in comparison with himself.
- p. 59, l. 11. “I suppose :” *i. e.* I am sure.
- p. 59, l. 18. “grabam.” The names of Ferumbras’ swords are not given in *Sir Ferumbras* or the *Sowdan*, but in the verse *Fierabras* are said to have been Plorance, Baptism, and *Garbain*.
- p. 59, l. 23. [“I wyl saye :”] omitted also in the original, but plainly needed.

- p. 59, l. 25. In the verse *Fierabras* the names appear as *Galans*, *Munificans*, and *Anvisas*.
- p. 59, l. 33. The verse *Fierabras* gives the names of the swords made by Munificans as *Durandal*, *Musagüine*, and *Courtain*.
- p. 60, l. 6. “barylles.” See p. 56, l. 27, and note.
- p. 60, l. 8. “bendede:” bound, banded; Fr. *bende*.
- p. 61, l. 12. “seen:” i. e. seeing, considering.
- p. 61, l. 35. “thou remembrest:” Fr. *tu tuises*, i. e. thou thinkest of.
- p. 62, l. 18. “utterance:” Fr. *a oultrance*.
- p. 62, l. 23. “at this stroke:” Fr. *a c' stuy cop*.
- p. 62, l. 34. “bowede and entrede:” Fr. *ploiez et entrez*.
- p. 63, l. 1. “tronchonné:” Fr. *tronconne*, i. e. broken to pieces.
- p. 63, l. 5. “in a grete whyle:” Fr. *dune grant peece*, i. e. for a great while.
- p. 63, l. 12. “made:” an instance of the omission of the subject pronoun *he* before the verb. See p. 19, l. 27, and note.
- p. 64, l. 4. “he was bowede afterward:” Fr. *par derriere*.
- p. 64, l. 14. “playe:” the regular technical term for fencing or fighting with swords. Thus the *Catholicon Anglicum* has: “a Bueler plaer, *gladiatōr*; a Bueler playnge, *gladiatūra*. *þe Swerde & ye bueler* (bukiller A.) *playuge, gladiatūra*.” In the *Ancren Riele*, p. 212, we have the expression “*þeicd mid swoordes*.” See further in my notes in the *Catholicon*.
- p. 64, l. 32. “reioye:” Fr. *resiogr*.
- p. 66, ll. 7-32. Caxton carefully distinguishes between *you* and *ye*: the former never being used for the nominative.
- p. 68, l. 21. “made a lytel course:” ran away a little distance.
- p. 68, l. 24. There is no mention of Oliver's drinking any of the balm in *Sir Fergusbras* or the *Sowdan*. See Dr. Hausknecht's note to the latter, l. 1191.
- p. 68, l. 29. “beyngt nyghe vnto a grete ryner, &c.” See note 1 in Introduction to *Sir Fergusbras*, p. xii.
- p. 69, l. 12. [“he:”] the omission of the subject pronoun frequently causes ambiguity when two persons are spoken of: the [he] here, of course, refers to Oliver's horse.
- p. 69, l. 16. “abone:” Fr. *oultre*, i. e. out of, away from.
- p. 69, l. 20. For number of chapter given as “viii” read “xiii.”
- p. 71, l. 11. “tenestre:” read “terrestre.”
- p. 71, l. 21. “Longyns.” On the legend of *Longinus*, see Prof. Skeat's notes to *P. Plowman*, C. xxi, 82—90.
- p. 71, l. 31. “thou.” Here the singular pronoun is used rightly as in a prayer addressed directly to our Lord: in the previous lines *you* and *ye* were used, as they were not of the character of a prayer.
- p. 72, l. 6. “for hys gloryous medytacyon.” In the original French, *par glorieux meditacion*. “Nenertheles:” Fr. *touttefois*.
- p. 72, l. 16. “soo coneytous in smytyng:” Fr. *convoueteulx et affoibly*.
- p. 72, l. 17. “a-slepe:” i. e. numbed. Fr. *endormie*.

- p. 72, l. 19. "at vtteraunce :" *a oultrance*: comp. p. 62, l. 18.
 p. 73, l. 8. "for to apoynte wyth the :" Fr. *te faire vne pache*.
 p. 74, l. 5. "vylete :" Fr. *vilte*.
 p. 74, l. 12. "matte." In the original the same. See *Sir Ferumbras*, ll. 2506, 2590, and Glossary.
 p. 75, l. 20. "whyche he brake and al to-frusshed enyl :" Fr. *cassa et rompi mallement*.
 p. 76, l. 5. "and ranne vpon hym :" Fr. *et se coururent*. The succeeding passage is awkwardly expressed in the translation. The original reads : *et fut premierement frappe Oliver sur son escu par telle ferte, qu'au prez le poinz de Oliver a mis en pieces son escu*, which is not much better. The *he*, of course, is Ferumbras.
 p. 78, l. 16. "enforced :" exerted. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, 782—
 "Pan Firumbras enforced hym þer to arise vp-on ys fete."
 p. 79, l. 18. "a fans dart :" Fr. *ung fauile dart*. Properly a hand-bill. See *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 966, and note—
 "*falsarz an feſſerd dart*."

The expression occurs again, p. 81, l. 28, below.

- p. 79, l. 20. "erapauld :" Fr. *erapaulc*, a toad.
 p. 80, l. 72. "a pynapple tree :" a pine or fir-tree. The *Catholicon Anglicum* gives : "a Pyne tre (A Pyne Appyltre A.) ; *pinus (pinus fructus eius A.)*." *Apple* was the ordinary word for the cones of the pine or fir. Lyte, Dodens, p. 769, speaking of the pine, says : "his fruite is great Boulleas or bawles of a browne chesnut colour, and are called *pine-apples*." See other instances in my note in the *Catholicon*.
 p. 81, l. 12. "by force of shotte and of strokes." Altered on the authority of the original, which reads : "*a force de coup et de traſis*."
 p. 81, l. 28. "fans darter." See p. 79, l. 18, and note.
 p. 82, l. 6. "it is good to wete :" this does not at all convey the meaning of the original, which runs : *sans le dire se peult entendre*.
 p. 82, l. 15. The omission of the pronoun before makyn^g makes the sentence rather awkward.
 p. 82, l. 27. "Amanedys :" Fr. *Anandis*.
 p. 82, l. 35. In the *Sowdone* it is Roland and Oliver that are captured : see Dr. Hausknecht's note to l. 1433.
 p. 83, l. 9. "wente doum of a mountayn." In *Sir Ferumbras*, 984 :
 "at aualyng of an hulle."
 p. 83, l. 20. "morfounded :" Fr. *morfondus*, lit. chilled, affected by cold.
 p. 84, l. 31. "ones :" at some time or other.
 p. 85, l. 10. "Turpyn." For an account of this celebrated Knight-Bishop, see Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 1711.
 p. 85, l. 19. "sercheden :" compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 1093-4.
 "is wounde to *enserehe* and saye.
 At is heste þey wente þer-to & softe gunne *taste* is wounde."

- p. 86, l. 3. "ballant thadmyral." Laban in the *Sowdone* throughout.

- p. 86, l. 32. "sythe." By using this word to render the original *puis*, Caxton has made the whole sentence almost unintelligible. It should run: "O brullant of monmyere, what is betyd of the noble kyng of Cordube and of my newewe bruchart, and also of my sone fyerasbras, the ledar and captayn of all?"
- p. 87, l. 6. "knyght :" Fr. *domoiseau*.
- p. 87, l. 15. In the *Sowdone* the French knights tell their true names.
- p. 87, l. 30. "yeman :" Fr. *vassal*.
- p. 88, l. 10. "brullant :" in the *Sordone*, 1512, it is Floripas who advises her father to imprison the Frenchmen, not to slay them.
- p. 89, l. 3. "strayt :" Fr. *estroite*.
- p. 89, l. 6. See note to p. 79, l. 20.
- p. 89, l. 29. "put vnder by fals fortune :" Fr. *soumis a faulx fortune*.
- p. 89, l. 31. "what I make :" Fr. *que ie fays*, i. e. what I am doing, how I fare.
- p. 90, l. 11. Compare the description of Floripas as given in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 5789, *et seq.*
- p. 90, l. 28. "whyche was made of one of the fayrye :" Fr. *faicte dune fuc*.
- p. 91, l. 1. Caxton's translation of Raoul Lefevre's *Jason* was printed in 1477 (Blades). Several copies are still in existence.
- p. 91, l. 11. "doughter :" Fr. *la fille*.
- p. 91, l. 26. "Anone florypes had enuye to here hym speke :" Fr. *eult enue les oyr parler*, i. e. had a great desire to hear them speak.
- p. 91, l. 31. "dyslioneste :" Fr. *inhonnestete*.
- p. 91, l. 32. "on that other syde :" *i. e.* on the other hand, again.
- p. 92, l. 21. "charlemayns :" evidently a misprint for "charlemayne," and not a genitive case.
- p. 92, l. 35. "for to meddle wyth :" Fr. *pour vous mesler* = to engage.
- p. 93, l. 3. "wel ferre for to be oute :" *i. e.* very far from being out. Perhaps we should read "wel ferre fro to be oute."
- p. 93, l. 18. "ye can wel playe with maydens, &c." Compare the corresponding passage in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 1303, and Dr. Hausknacht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 1723.
- p. 93, l. 29. "a corde & a staffe." In *Sir Ferumbras*, 1308, Floripas sends for "anuylt, tange, & slekke." The *Sowdan* agrees with Caxton, for in l. 1647 we are told that she
 "a rope to hem lete down goon
 That aboveyn was teyde faste."
- p. 94, l. 13. "a gardyn pretoyre :" Fr. *avoit ung pretoire*, *i. e.* an enclosed yard or space.
- p. 94, l. 27. "camuse :" flat-nosed. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, 4437, and Glossary.
- p. 94, l. 35. "varlet :" a repetition of the original French word.
- p. 95, l. 27. "ye be here in surete as ferre as no man hath herde vs." This hardly conveys the meaning of the original, which runs: *se*

- daventure quelque*, i. e. so long as, or, provided that no man hath heard us.
- p. 95, l. 28. "I am not in doubt :" Fr. *en autre double*, i. e. fear.
- p. 96, l. 5. "when my fader the admiral destroyed Rome." See my Introduction to *Sir Ferumbras*, p. xii, and Dr. Hausknecht's edition of the *Sowdone*, Introd.
- p. 96, l. 6. "lucafar :" in the French versions of the romance *Lucifer* throughout.
- p. 97, l. 1. "damage :" Fr. *dommagine*.
- p. 97, l. 4. The French reads : *et plusieurs autres terribles victoires*.
- p. 97, l. 6. "deteyned :" Fr. *d'enn*.
- p. 97, l. 30. "Rolland." In the *Sowdone*, l. 1668, it is Guy whom Charles orders first to go on the message to Balan. See *Introduction*, and Dr. Hausknecht's note to l. 1665.
- p. 98, l. 33. "cosyn." Guy was Charles's nephew : see *Sir Ferumbras*, 1922, 2041, &c., and see Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 1888.
- p. 99, l. 7. "lese :" destroy. Fr. *perdre*.
- p. 101, l. 15. "and :" if.
- p. 102, l. 5. Comparing p. 183, l. 32, it is clear that we should read "he behelde." On Durandal, see note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 988, and the *Sowdone*, l. 875.
- p. 102, l. 7. "desceerkled :" cut off the circle or band of gold worn round the helmet. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 622, and note, and the corresponding passage in the *Sowdone*, l. 1182, and Dr. Hausknecht's note.
- p. 103, l. 29. "Ogyer :" in *Sir Ferumbras* it is Richard of Normandy who gives the account of Mautible, which he was able to do, because, as we learn, "he knew all the cost."
- p. 105, l. 7. "he hath quytte his contreye of fals peple." There can be little doubt that we should read "he hath not quytte."
- p. 107, l. 14. "Naymes": in *Sir Ferumbras*, Roland : the *Sowdone* agrees with our text, see l. 1821.
- p. 108, l. 23. "with his berde florysshed." Compare *Roland and Ouel*, 82 ; where Naymes, describing Charles, says :
- "He sittes his dunders Imange,
With white berde large and lange
Faire of flesche & felle,
With a floreschede thonwange,
Oure noble kyng fat es so strange,
His doghety men incelle."
- p. 113, l. 25. "enterbraced eche other & kyssed :" Fr. *se foint baisser et accoller*.
- p. 116, l. 27. "gloutons." Cf. *Sir Ferumbras*, 1634, 3841, &c.
- p. 118, l. 26. Compare the account of the game "at the coal," given in the *Sowdone*, ll. 1999—2003. In it Lucifer burns the beard of Naymes, who at once kills him.

- p. 119, l. 8. “thou wendest to haue made me to muse in thy folyes :” Fr. *tu me cuidas il na pas gaires bon faute muser en tes folies.*
- p. 119, l. 17. “no more charge to playe :” Fr. *na plus cure de loour.*
- p. 120, l. 7. “put you in poynte :” Fr. *mis en point* = arm yourselves completely.
- p. 120, l. 28. “whyche was wel appoyned, &c. :” Fr. *trestien appareille tantost, fut par terre rvere.*
- p. 121, p. 18. Fr. *tousiours a la cue dung viel chien vous tenez.*
- p. 122, l. 23. “Marbyn :” in the *Sowdone*, Mapyne; in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 2387, Manbyn.
- p. 123, l. 23. “he came so wel to poynte, &c. :” slightly different in the French, *il vient le bien a point, car le laron.*
- p. 124, l. 29. “hyr spouse that sholdē be :” Fr. *son espouse adevenir.* Compare p. 134, l. 27.
- p. 128, l. 11. “doubted :” feared. Fr. *redoubte.*
- p. 129, l. 13. “wente in theyr repayre :” went on their way back. Fr. *alloient en leur repaire.*
- p. 130, l. 18. “leste not for to be forthwith quartred, &c. :” he did not hesitate, though he should be at once cut to pieces. In the French, *et pour estre esquartelle presentement il ne se fust tenu quil ne prist celluy sarrasin.*
- p. 130, l. 29. “whyche wyth theyr feet and handes al to-bete hym in suche wyse, &c. :” Fr. *que des pies que des mains ilz le vont tant batte* = both with hands and feet they beat him, &c. Compare the corresponding passage in *Syr Ferumbras*, p. 90, l. 2790, and note.
- p. 133, l. 19. “so hardy and onte of mesure :” Fr. *si hardis et desmesurez.*
- p. 134, l. 27. “hir lone and toomyng bushondē :” Fr. *son espouse advenir.* Compare p. 124, l. 29.
- p. 134, l. 31. “Truste ye none other, &c. :” be sure of this only, that if he die I shall leap out of the wyndowe, &c. Fr. *ne vous fiez point qui sil meurt.*
- p. 136, l. 11. “a morel of grete faeyon :” Fr. *moreau de grant fasson.*
- p. 136, l. 19. “after that he was recouredē :” as soon as he had recovered himself. Fr. *apres quil se fut recoure.*
- p. 136, l. 32. “Inconuenyents :” Fr. *inconveniens* = damage.
- p. 137, l. 31. “cryedē to hym wyth an hye voys, &c. :” Fr. *luy cria a haulte voix quil lui plust de la renir balsier, en disant que selle riuoit pour le prouesse des barons que son pere luluiral seroit rve ffoys en son danger.* The whole passage is very obscure, nor does the corresponding line in *Sir Ferumbras* help much to make it any clearer.
- p. 142, l. 3. “at vtterance :” Fr. *a oultreance* = exceedingly.
- p. 142, l. 7. “esmaye you nothyng yet :” Fr. *ne vous esmaies encore.*
- p. 142, l. 12. “beurage :” Fr. *beurage*, a draught.
- p. 142, l. 30. “For they sawe parte of the walles, &c. :” Fr. *car ilz courroient a terre ruer les murailles principales du chasteau.*

- p. 143, l. 25. "be ye . . . ne wroth ayenst Mahon :" in the *Sowdone* Balan smashes Mahound.
- p. 144, l. 15. "the frenshe men purpose to dystrouble vs at our souper :" Fr. *les francoys nous veulent faire refroidier notre soupper* = wish to make our supper cold.
- p. 145, l. 1. "wherfor of veray force the other paynyme must retorne :" Fr. *pourquoy force fut aux autres*, &c.
- p. 145, l. 25. "sythe he is a man of auetoryte :" Fr. *puis quil est homme de audience*.
- p. 147, l. 5. "abandonned hym self to goo :" offered himself, volunteered.
- p. 147, l. 26. "greued in hys persone :" wounded. Fr. *greve de sa personne*.
- p. 149, l. 5. "on a day emonge al other :" Fr. *ung iour entre les autres*.
- p. 149, l. 17. "at al aduenture :" Fr. *a son aduenture*.
- p. 149, l. 28. "he doubted entyerly :" Fr. *il doubta entierement* = feared greatly, or in his heart. See *Glossary*.
- p. 151, l. 6. "dropped :" Fr. *platz* = broad.
- p. 152, l. 6. "attayned ouerthwart the necke :" Fr. *lattaint du trauers du col*.
- p. 154, l. 4. "of thy partie :" = so far as thou art concerned. Fr. *de ta part*.
- p. 154, l. 13. Fr. *Et quant l'admiral les vit venir tout ethroclite en son entendement*. I can make nothing of "the ethroelytes."
- p. 155, l. 8. "Orages :" in *Sir Ferumbras*, 3823, Malyngras ; in the *Sowdone*, 2145, Espyard.
- p. 155, l. 29. "To whom there is none like or equal in goodness in the world :" Fr. *quil non y a point de pareil*.
- p. 158, l. 2. "in comyng, &c. :" as we should now see, *en passant*, or by the way. Fr. *en venant vous debuez scauoir*.
- p. 158, l. 5. The miracle of the water rising to a level with the banks, and afterwards subsiding, is not given in the English metrical versions of the romance. See Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 2810.
- p. 159, l. 10. "dantesyle." In the original French, *dautfuille*, evidently misread by Caxton.
- p. 161, l. 1. "how am I determyned :" Fr. *comme suis ie determiné*.
- p. 161, l. 29. "as a theef attaynt :" Fr. *comme turron prouue*.
- p. 163, l. 12. "desfende :" forbid. Fr. *ne plaise pas a dieu que iamais*.
- p. 165, l. 31. "wyth motye :" Fr. *a ce mouvement vous viendrez*.
- p. 167, l. 14. "reclame me recreante, &c. :" Fr. *reclame recreant et temu reboute*.
- p. 169, l. 3. "bowed his hede :" Fr. *baissa le manton*.
- p. 169, l. 28. "of an olde Serpente, &c. :" Fr. *dung viel serpent erote et moult endurye*.
- p. 170, l. 27. "confanon :" so in the original French.

- p. 171, l. 27. "she was departed fro her gesyne, &c. :" Fr. *qui auoit faitie sa gessine de deux filz*; that is, who had given birth to two sons.
- p. 172, l. 11. "facyon :" = state of affairs.
- p. 175, l. 24. "Thus doyng :" = while this was happening.
- p. 175, l. 32. "Amyotte." Amyote, *Sir Ferumbras*, 4663; Barrok, in the *Sowdone*, 2939.
- p. 177, l. 10. In the *Sowdone*, 3043, Richard is left as governor of Mantrible.
- p. 177, l. 35. "he swowned, &c. :" Fr. *il pasma de ducil et cria comme tout hors du sens*.
- p. 178, l. 11. "wel abuseil :" Fr. *bien abusez* = greatly deceived or mistaken. This is almost the oldest use of the word. "Abuser. To abuse, misuse . . . deceive, disappoint, gull, cozen, beguile. Sabuser. To mistake, to be in error; to wronge himselfe, &c." Cotgrave.
- p. 179, l. 7. "the olde kyng Coldroe tempesteil hym." Here Caxton has made a most curious mistake. The original runs : *et auce luy le riel roy Coldroe, tempeste, et brullant de monumere : tempeste* being really the name of one of the Saracen kings, and not a verb.
- p. 183, l. 5. "better aduysed :" Fr. *quil soit desensle(?)*.
- p. 183, l. 32. "byhelde :" Fr. *regarderent*. See note to p. 102, l. 6.
- p. 184, l. 13. "Due Naymes." In the *Sowdone* Floripa first sees the French army advancing.
- p. 187, l. 1. "in the tree of the crosse :" Fr. *en larbre*.
- p. 187, l. 14. "he was almoost in a rage of hys wordes :" Fr. *a peu de fait quil ne fut eurage de ses parolles*.
- p. 187, l. 33. "by presunyng :" Fr. *par presunacion* = by supposition.
- p. 190, l. 2. "wythoute faulfe :" Fr. *sous faulfe* = without fail.
- p. 193, l. 29. "helde them soo short, &c. :" Fr. *et les tindrent si de prez quelz ne securerent que faire*.
- p. 195, l. 11. "a grete abusyon :" Fr. *grant obusion*.
- p. 201, l. 7. "that there was non abusyon, &c. :" Fr. *quil ny auoit point dabusion en croire et adorer les distes reliques*.
- p. 202, l. 22. "al ranysshed :" Fr. *tout rong*.
- p. 204, l. 7. "omerbrew to the erthe :" Fr. *vont tomber par terre*.
- p. 208, l. 18. "he founded, rented, and releneid many and dyners chyrdes :" Fr. *il fonda, renta, et rebila plusours et diuerses eglises*.
- p. 209, l. 4. See Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdon*, l. 1888.
- p. 209, l. 23. "he wold not lene herby :" would not stop at this. Fr. *ne se voulst tenir a cecy*.
- p. 209, l. 27. "maad certeyn experyenees :" Fr. *fist aulcunes expri-
mentationis*.
- p. 213, l. 5. "took heide :" Fr. *son prist garde* = took notice.
- p. 214, l. 31. Fr. *uls qui estoient presens et leurs success urs füssent frans et libres ; les taillables füssent a leurs drois comme qu'ilz füssent condicionez*.

- p. 215, l. 35. “felow :” Fr. *compaignon de escœc*.
- p. 217, l. 13. “wythoute makynge grete rebellyon :” without showing any great fight. Fr. *sans faire grandes rébellions*.
- p. 221, l. 17. “demaunded synguler persone ayenst a persone :” Fr. *demandé à Charles bataille singulière de personne à personne*.
- p. 222, l. 17. “soo vlaynly :” Fr. *si villement*.
- p. 231, l. 1. “surprysed :” overcome, taken. Fr. *surpris*.
- p. 237, l. 1. “dystourneſſ :” turned him away, dissuaded him. Fr. *le distourba*.
- p. 237, l. 21. “lepte :” corrected on the authority of the original French, which reads *monteſſ*.
- p. 242, l. 6. “to-faишſeſſ and broken :” Fr. *il estoit naure, cassé, et tout rompu*.
- p. 251, l. 27. “daubeny.” See *Introduction*, p. 7.

G L O S S A R Y.

- Abuse, *s.* 60/30, deceit, error.
 Abuse, *v.* 206 19, deceive.
 Abylled, *pt. s.* 80/11, dressed, prepared.
 Accomplyshe, *v.* 125/34, complete, finish.
 Accumyled, *pa. par.* 198 167, accumulated, grown long and thick.
 Acoward, *v.* 173 15, show to be a coward, prove oneself a coward.
 Adiuste, *v.* 39 9, to add, append.
 Adoubed, *pa. par.* 95 22, arrayed, dressed; 55 5, dubbed.
 Affectionately, *adv.* 13 12, affectionately, with affection.
 Alowed, *pa. par.* 49 20, praised.
 Ampull, *s.* 20 31, a flask, a bottle, a jar.
 And, *conj.* 101 15, if.
 Anenst, *prep.* 246 29, towards, as regards.
 Appelled, *pt. s.* 242 26, accused, challenged, charged with.
 Araught, *pt. s.* 76 28, reached to, touched.
 Arbalastre, *s.* 101 12, a cross-bow.
 Aresonne, *pa. par.* 52 20, questioned.
 Attayne, *pt. s.* 190 19, reached, struck.
 Attones, *adv.* 56 14, at once, at the same time.
 Aualed, *pt. s.* 158 16, sank down, was lowered; 104 31, let down, lowered.
 Bacynet, *s.* 32 15, a small helmet.
 Barat, *s.* 231/35, fraud, deceit.
 Baston, *s.* 182 4, a staff.
 Batayl, *s.* 232 35, a battalion, a division of an army.
 Bayned, *pa. par.* 89 20, bathed, plunged.
 Baynes, *s. pl.* 95 20, baths.
 Beeke, *s.* 20 30, a beak, bill.
 Behoeful, *v.* 145 25, advisable, advantageous.
 Belfraye, *s.* 175 7, a tower. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* Barsepay.
 Blynfelde, *pt. pl.* 82 1, blindfolded. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* Blyndfeyld.
 Bowdraudȝ, *s.* 189 31, a bowshot.
 Boystous, *a.* 29 26, large, big; 16 22, rough, violent.
 Broched, *pt. s.* 101 35, spurred.
 Buscage, *s.* 33 19, a wood. O.Fr. *boscage*.
 Camuse, *a.* 94 27, short, thick-nosed.
 Chauffer, *pa. par.* 95 20, warmed, heated.
 Comployees, *s. pl.* 164 33, accomplices.
 Confanon, *s.* 170/27. For gonfanon = a standard.
 Confysked, *pa. par.* 24 34, confiscated.
 Conuenably, *adv.* 19 32, suitably, fittingly.
 Corobere, *v.* 24 9, to strengthen.
 Crapuȝd, *s.* 79 20, a toad.

- Cremeur, *s.* 46/19, dread.
“Cremeur, feare, dread.” — Cotgrave.
- Cresme, *s.* 20/32. The chrism or holy oil with which kings were anointed at their consecration. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* Creme.
- Dedyed, *pa. par.* 16/35, dedicated.
- Delyuer, *a.* 80/33, active, nimble. Hence the modern *clever*.
- Depeshe, *v. imp.* 53/9, hasten, hurry.
- Derked, *pt. s.* 211/12, was eclipsed.
- Deserkled, *pt. s.* 102/7, cut off the circle or ring round the helmet.
- Desconuerd, *pa. par.* 73/26, uncovered, deprived.
- Desmayled, *pa. par.* 69/10, deprived of the mails or plates.
- Disrenge, *v.* 226/19, to be thrown in disorder.
- Dyshoneste, *s.* 91/31, filth, nastiness.
- Dyssymyled, *pa. par.* 13/22, disguised.
- Dystourned, *pt. s.* 237/1, turned aside.
- Dystrouble, *v.* 151/27, trouble, disturb, interfere with.
- Egal, *s.* 59/2, equal, match.
- Empesshed, *pa. par.* 219/14, hindered, obstructed.
- Enforced, *pl. s.* 78/16, exerted.
- Engyne, *s.* 165/21, craft, art, skill.
- Enharydyed, *pt. pl.* 192/22, encouraged, took courage.
- Ensycwyng, *v.* 250/24, following.
- Enterbraced, *pt. pl.* 113/25, embraced.
- Enterprenour, *s.* 166/10, enterpriser, actor.
- Entretene, *v.* 46/32, to treat, behave towards.
- Entyer, *a.* 237/32, earnest, hearty.
- Entyered, *pt. par.* 244/27, interred.
- Entyverly, *adv.* 149/28, earnestly, very greatly. “Entyverly: *intime*.” — *Cathol. Anglicum*.
- Eserye, *v.* 77/27, to call upon, invoke.
- Faus, *a.* 79/18. See note.
- Faysble, *a.* 49/34, possible to be done, feasable.
- Felounye, *s.* 109/30, daring, recklessness.
- Fere, *v.* 140/5, to frighten.
- Ferfully, *adv.* 193/32, in fear, timidly.
- Fette, *pt. s.* 223/26, fetched.
- Fliese, *s.* 91/1, a fleece.
- Florysshe, *v.* 36/3, to bud, flower.
- Florysshed, *pa. par.* 108/23, flowing, long and wide.
- Formosyte, *s.* 198/10, beauty.
- Frequented, *pt. s.* 29/12, made frequent use of.
- Geayler, *s.* 89/1, jailer.
- Glaunes, *sb. pl.* 81/27, glaives: weapons made of a cutting blade fixed at the end of a staff.
- Gree, *s.* 96/10, pleasure, delight.
- Greued, *pa. par.* 147/26, hurt, injured.
- Guarysshed, *pa. par.* 17/16, cured, healed.
- Habylle, *a.* 169/32, active, nimble.
- Harnoys, *s.* 105/34, equipments, outfit.
- Honyng, *pr. par.* 36/16, hovering.
- Iape, *v.* 60/22, play, mock.
- Ionques, *s. pl.* 200/1, rushes. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* Ionkett.
- Journeye, *s.* 216/9, a day's journey.
- Lawhe, *v.* 53/12, to laugh.
- Lawhyng, *a.* 90/15, laughing.
- Lesynges, *s. pl.* 106/8, lies.
- Leteth, *pr. s.* 212/24, causes. *Leteth the wite* = tells you, sends notice to you.
- Lette, *pa. par.* 219/14, obstructed, hindered.

- Loange, *s.* 25/32, praise, worship, reverence. O.Fr. *louange*.
 Lodgyee, *s.* 49/22, lodgings, tent. Fr. *logis*.
 Loos, *s.* 85/5, glory, praise.
 Lyees, *s. pl.* 40/25. Lists or a tilt-yard (*Cotgrave*) here used for the lines of the camp.
 Lygnage, *s.* 192/33, clan, party.
 Maistresse, *s.* 94/19, governess.
 Matte, *a.* 74/12, conquered, thoroughly beaten. See glossary to *Sir Ferumbras*.
 Maulgre, *prep.* 234/26, in spite of.
 Meddle, *v.* 92/35, engage, contend.
 Medled, *pa. par.* 198/14, mixed, intermingled.
 Mesprysed, *pa. par.* 251/12, made a mistake, erred; 52/6, done wrong, injured.
 MoseI, *s.* 151/10, a muzzle.
 Moyen, *s.* 213/33, a means, a plan.
 Murayl, *s.* 203/25, walls, fortifications.
 Muse, *v.* 119/9, to be confounded.
 Oueral, *adv.* 30/12, everywhere.
 "Ouer alle; *passim*, *ebicunque, genus loquendi est ebique.*"—*Cath. Anglicum*.
 Ouerthrewe, *pt. s.* 141/18, fell over.
 Parents, *s. pl.* 160/3, relations.
 Pourchace, *v.* 32/6, provide, contrive. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, 2603.
 Prestly, *adv.* 94/35, readily, quickly.
 Priued, *pa. par.* 215/14, withdrawn, estranged.
 Purchaced, *pa. par.* 131/8, obtained, procured.
 Putayne, *s.* 180/1, a harlot.
 Puterye, *s.* 181/35, harlotry. Fr. *puterie*.
 Pynapple, *s.* 80/22, a fir. See note.
 Raught, *pt. s.* 81/18, reached to, touched.
 Reioye, *v.* 64/32, renew.
 Relene, *pt. s.* 130/24, lifted up, raised.
 Remysed, *pt. s.* 208/28, placed again, brought back.
 Rented, *pt. s.* 206/18, endowed.
 Repayre, *s.* 129/13, retreat, return.
 Rescowed, *pa. par.* 72/35, rescued.
 Retcheth, 3 *pr. s.* 22/3, cares, reckts.
 Ryuage, *s.* 158/3, shore, bank.
 Salewed, *pt. s.* 49/23, saluted, made obeisance to.
 Setted, *pt. s.* 52/22, set, thought.
 Share, *pt. s.* 76/28, cut.
 Somnyers, *s. pl.* 105/23, pack-horses.
 Soulded, *pa. par.* 103/33, soldered, fastened, jointed.
 Sperhawk, *s.* 193/32, a sparrow-hawk.
 Stratcheden, *pt. pl.* 236/31, were stretched or strained.
 Sudarye, *s.* 37/14, a handkerchief: commonly applied to the napkin which wrapped about our Lord's head. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* and note.
 Surquydrous, *a.* 74/10, proud, haughty.
 Swolowe, *s.* 205/32, a whirlpool or quicksand. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* a Swalle of y^e See.
 Symylacres, *s. pl.* 206/11, images.
 Syges, *s. pl.* 229/5, seats, places.
 Tabellyons, *s. pl.* 214/32. See note.
 Tabouryns, *s. pl.* 22/27, tabourers.
 Thwarte, *prep.* 44/6, across.
 To-frusshed, *pa. par.* 75/20, broken to pieces.
 Trauaylled, *pa. par.* 103/7, worn out with labour.
 Tronchonne~~d~~, *pa. par.* 63/1, broken to pieces.
 Truffed, *pt. s.* 119/15, played, mocked.

Tyeree, <i>s.</i> 232/23, terce, or the third of the canonical hours.	Wende, <i>pt. s.</i> 36/13, thought, in- tended.
Underset, <i>pa. par.</i> 249/7, propped up, supported.	Wesshe, <i>pt. s.</i> 66/21, washed.
Vnnethe, <i>adv.</i> 31/6, scarcely, with difficulty.	Wynbrowes, <i>s. pl.</i> 26/33, eyebrows. Evidently a corruption of <i>eyen-</i> <i>browes</i> .
Vylaynsly, <i>adv.</i> 222/17, shamefully, disgracefully.	Ymbre, <i>s.</i> 37/35, ember.

S.R. 24/11/44

PR Early English Text
1119 Society
E5 [Publications]
no. 36-37 Extra series

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH

